
Table of Contents

ProSolutions Management xix

Software Introduction xix

Before You Begin xix

Technical Note xix

Suggestions xix

Product Support..... xix

Sample Dataxx

Using the Mouse xxi

 Pointing:..... xxi

 Clicking:..... xxi

 Right Clicking:..... xxi

 Double-clicking: xxi

Setting up a barcode scanner xxi

Sending Messages xxii

 To send a message: xxii

 To Retrieve Messages:..... xxiii

Importing CLIENT files into ProSolutions..... xxiv

 To import ASCII comma delimited or Excel client records xxiv

A Note About The User Manualxxv

 Placing the Users Manual On Your Desktop.....xxv

Chapter 1 Getting Started.....27

Installing Prosolutions Management Software27

For The First Time27

 Installing Prosolutions from Windows:27

Starting Prosolutions29

Sample Data35

 To switch to sample data:35

 To go back to your salon data:.....35

Exiting ProSolutions36

Program Registration36

 To Register ProSolutions and get the User Code:36

Technical Support36

 There are two ways to get help:36

Networking ProSolutions	37
What is a Workstation?	37
Installing a Workstation Version of ProSolutions	37
ProSolutions Workstation Installation	37
"Update existing ProSolutions"	41
Suggestions on Implementing ProSolutions	42
Common Challenges	42
Electing someone to be in charge	42
Trying to do too much, too soon	42
Knowing where to begin	43
Chapter 2 Setup	45
What you'll do in this chapter	45
Operator Files	45
To add an Operator/Room/Equipment:	45
About Adding Operators	46
Setting an Operators Daily Schedule	48
Setting an operators hourly work schedule:	48
To set an operator's daily hours:	49
To set an Alternate Schedule	49
Modifying an Operators ID	50
To modify or replace an operator's ID:	50
Deleting an Operator	50
To delete an operator:	50
Adding Your Salon's or Spa's Services.....	51
Overview:	51
To add a Group:	51
To delete or modify a Group:	51
Adding Services to Groups	52
To add a service to a group:	52
To modify a service name:	52
To Delete a service:	52
To Add Color to a Service or Group:	52
Service Formulas.....	53
Setting Service Prices & Times	53
To add prices and times for a service:	53
To change prices with the scroll bar:	54
Value Added Tax for Services "VAT"	54
To set a time for a service:	55
Booking Types	55

About Twin Book Type	55
About Double Book Type	55
To set a Double Book Type:	56
Assigning Operators to Groups	57
Two Ways to Assign Operators to Groups	57
Services With Rooms.....	59
Services With Equipment.....	60
Operator Service Prices and Times.....	60
To setup an individual operator's service prices and times:	60
Now for the Time.....	61
Gift Certificates	62
To set up Gift Certificate:	62
Important Note:	63
To Customize Gift Certificate Packages:.....	63
Setting up a Series.....	64
To add or modify a Series:.....	64
To Modify a Series:	65
Coupons	65
To set up a coupon code to be associated with a discount:.....	65
Modifying General Configuration Settings.....	66
<i>Changing</i> Screen Colors.....	67
To change a color setting:	68
To choose a new color:	68
Modifying your salon & spa name.....	68
To modify your Salon & Spa name:	68
Default Area Code	69
To add or modify your default area code:.....	69
To select the Hours of Operation:	69
Receipt Layout	70
To change your Receipt Layout:.....	70
Entering Credit Card Types	71
To enter a Credit Card name:.....	71
Sales Tax Rates	72
To set and/or modify sales tax rates:	72
Value Added Tax VAT	73
Units of Measure	74
To add or delete a Unit of Measure:	75
Changing Part Name	75
To Change a Part Name:	75
Zip Codes	76

To save a zip code or modify a zip code:	76
Advanced Configuration Settings.....	76
Set Appointment Operator Order	77
To set the appointment operator order:	77
Category Groups	77
To departmentalize product categories with service groups:	77
To departmentalize product categories with retail groups	78
Setting Block-Out Names	79
Expanded Service Descriptions	80
Modifying the Modem Settings	81
To choose a COM port for your Modem:	81
Modifying the Cash Register Settings	82
To choose a COM port for your cash register:	82
Changing the Number of Drawers	83
To change the number of drawers:	83
Default PO Info	83
To set the default purchase order information:	83
POS Type	84
To set the POS Type:	84
System Preference Settings(General).....	84
The Appointment Preferences window:.....	85
The Inventory Preferences Window:	86
The Sales Register Preferences Window:	87
The Printer/Cash Drawer Preferences:.....	88
The Clients Preferences Window:.....	89
The Gift Certificates Preferences Window:	90
The 40 Column Report Preferences Window:	91
Client Tracking Names & Items	91
To create a Tracking name:	91
To delete a Tracking Item:	93
Adding Referred By Types	93
To add or delete Referral Types:	93
To delete a Referral Type:	94
Exiting the ProSolutions Setup Menu	94
Time To Start Backing Up Your Data!.....	94
Appointment Logging Feature	96
To use the Appointment Logging feature:	96
Chapter 3 - Clients	97
What you'll do in this chapter	97

Creating Client Attributes	97
Adding A New Client	98
To add a new client:	98
Main Operator	100
To assign a Main Operator:	100
Referred By	100
To choose a Referral Type:.....	100
The Friend Referral Type.....	101
The following steps illustrate how to use this feature:	101
If you do have existing clients:	101
No Checks and Inactive Settings	102
No Checks:.....	102
Inactive:	102
The AutoDial Feature.....	102
To use the Auto-Dial Phone feature:	102
Selecting Tracking Items	103
To use the Client Tracking window:.....	103
Client History	104
To Add & Modify Client Service Formulas	104
To add client service Formulas:.....	104
To delete a formula:.....	105
Adding Notes for a Client	105
To add both general notes or individual operator notes:	105
To add general notes:	105
To delete notes:	106
To add an operator's notes:.....	106
To use the Quick Look-Up:	106
Client Waiting List.....	107
To check in a client for the waiting list:	107
To view the Waiting List:	108
Viewing and Modifying a Client's File	109
To look up a client:	109
About the sort settings.....	111
To sort by first name:.....	111
To lookup clients by phone number:	111
Viewing a Client's Service and Retail History	112
To view a client's history:	112
To view a transaction:	114
To view a highlighted transaction:.....	114
Printing A Client TravelCard.....	115
To print a client TravelCard:	115

Printing Client Formulas	116
To print a client's formula:	116
Setting Client Pop-up Messages.....	116
To set and clear a Popup message:	116
Resetting a Client's Referral Count	117
To reset a client's referral count:	117
Referred By	117
To choose a Referral Type:.....	117
Adjusting a Clients Referral Count	118
Deleting Clients	118
To delete a single client:	118
Multi-Client Delete	119
To delete multiple clients:.....	119
Marketing	120
Client Marketing Reports.....	120
Creating Client Lists For Printing.....	120
To Create A List:	121
Creation Criteria:.....	121
To select criteria:	122
Tracking Zip Codes at POS	123
List Templates.....	124
To create and save a list template:	124
Edit List Files	124
To edit a list file:	124
To delete a client from a list file:	125
Special Sorts.....	125
Client Marketing Print Options.....	126
To print a Listfile:	126
Mailing Labels	126
To print either both Standard or Return mailing labels:	126
To Setup Standard mailing labels:	127
To change fonts:.....	128
To setup Return mailing labels:	128
Post Cards	129
An overview of how to create and print Birthday cards:	129
To create and print a Birthday card:	129
Phone Listing	131
To print a phone listing:.....	131
Marketing Reports.....	132
To print the Client Retention report:.....	132

To print the Client Zipcode Count Reports	133
To print or view On Account Status	133
To print Client Referral Detail.....	133
Adjustments to Client Referrals	133
Export Name and Address	133
To Export a file:	133
Setting Up the Membership Program	134
Setting up the Loyalty "Rewards" Program.....	135
Configuring Prosolutions for Foto-File.....	136
To configure Prosolutions 8.0 for the Foto-File options:	136
To set up a client's picture paths:	138
Using the Skin Care In-Take Options.....	138
To enable the Skin Care In-Take options:	138
To view/modify the Conditions window:	139
To view/modify the Contours window:	140
To view/modify Treatments:	141
To view/modify Products:	142
To view/modify Annotations:	143
To add an annotation:	145
To view/modify Recommendations:.....	146
To view/modify Miscellaneous skin care information:	147
To print a report of the Skin Care In-Take information:	147
Chapter 4 - Inventory	149
What you'll do in this chapter.....	149
About Inventory Indexes.....	149
To go to the Inventory section of Prosolutions 8.0:.....	150
Setting Up Inventory Indexes	150
Adding a Vendor:.....	150
To add a vendor's address and phone number:.....	151
Adding Manufacturers	151
To add a new Manufacturer:	151
Adding Product Categories	152
To add a new product category:.....	152
Adding Products	153
To add a new product:	153
Making Kits/Gift Baskets.....	156
Value Added Tax VAT for Inventory	157
Setting a Global VAT Rate for Inventory.....	158
Modifying Your Products	159

To view a product:	159
To search for a product:	159
To view other products that have the same indexes:	160
To view other categories:	160
When Done:	161
Deleting Products	161
To delete an item:	161
Inventory Physical Count.....	161
Create a Batch File:.....	162
To create a physical count batch file:	162
Print Shrinkage Report:	163
To print the shrinkage report:	163
Modify Batch File:	163
To modify a Batch File:	163
Process Batch File:.....	163
To Process a Batch File:	164
Set Starting Quantity On Hand to Current Values.....	164
Viewing Your Inventory	164
To view all products:	164
To see all your retail products:	165
Viewing Selected Inventory Items	165
To look up selected inventory items:	165
Printing Standard And Activity Reports	166
Purchase Orders	167
To create a purchase order:	167
To create a purchase order using Auto Order:	169
To add a new product to the inventory from the PO field:	169
To modify and/or delete a product from the PO:.....	169
To add sales tax and shipping costs:	169
To view products at or below the minimum or maximum:	169
Viewing Purchase Orders.....	170
To view a purchase order:.....	170
Printing Purchase Orders and Back Orders.....	170
To print selected purchase orders:	171
Voiding a Purchase Order	171
To void a purchase order:	171
Receiving Orders.....	172
To receive an order:	172
Setting Up Standard Product Labels	174
To change fonts:.....	176
To setup and print labels:	176

Setting Up and Printing Barcode Labels	176
To setup and print barcodes:	176
STANDARD SETTING FOR LABELS	177
AVERY 5167 for Laser / AVERY 8167 for Ink	177
Chapter 5 - Appointments.....	179
What you'll do in this chapter	179
Booking Appointments	179
About Operator/Time Cells.....	181
Setting the Appointment	182
Booking Appointments And Assigning Rooms.....	183
To book an appointment for both a room and an operator:	184
To see more info or make changes to a client's appointment:.....	185
Checking In A Client	185
To check-in a client:	185
Twin Book Appointments.....	186
Twin Bookings at the same time cell:.....	186
Multiple Service Appointment/ Packages.....	186
To Book Multiple Services or Packages.....	187
What if it's not a Package?	187
Package Manager.....	189
Use the Package Manager to book a Package.....	189
Editing the Package Manager	190
Current Appointment Options	191
Appointment Info.....	192
Client Information.....	192
Client Appointments	193
Check In.....	193
Check In All.....	193
Print Travel Card	193
Confirm Appointment.....	193
Confirm Appointments using Televox.....	194
In order to use the Televox Appointment Confirmation:	194
Mark as No Show	194
Set Attribute	194
Select as Client.....	195
Change Service Name.....	195
Change Appointment Duration	195
Change Client Type	196
Mark as Package	196
Mark as Standing	197

Mark as Series	197
Reschedule	197
Copy Appointment.....	197
Unbook.....	197
Unbook All This Day.....	198
Appointment Main Menu Options:	198
Calendar	198
Scale.....	199
Options.....	199
Settings.....	200
Wait List	202
Forward	204
Month View	204
Week View	205
Multi-Book.....	205
Standing Appointments.....	206
Package Manager	207
Clients	208
Chapter 6 - Sales	209
What you'll do in this chapter	209
About The Sales Window	209
To enter the Sales window:.....	209
Opening the Cash Register.....	210
Opening the cash drawer for the first time:	210
Processing Sales.....	211
The four categories are:	211
To process a client with an appointment:	212
To process existing clients with no appointment:.....	212
To process a New client:.....	213
To process a One Time client:	214
Placing a Transaction on Hold	214
Placing Client on Hold.....	214
Selling Retail Products.....	215
Selling a retail product:.....	215
Charge if Attribute Present at POS	216
Processing Professional Products.....	217
To add a professional product to a transaction:	217
Adding Tips.....	217
To add a tip:	217
Adding a Note To A Service Transaction	218
To add a note to a service:	218

Series	218
About Series	218
To Sell a Series:	218
Viewing a Client's Series Status	219
To view Series status for a client:	219
Redeeming a Series	220
To redeem a Series:.....	220
Gift Certificates	221
About Gift Certificates	221
To sell a gift certificate:	222
To add a Message to the gift certificate:	223
To check a gift certificate status:	223
Modifying a gift certificate:	223
Modifying a gift certificate's balance:	224
Redeeming a gift certificate:	224
Redeeming a prior gift certificate:	225
Modifying Sales Items	225
To modify the price of an item:	225
To Modify an Operator and/or Service:	225
To bring up a client's file directly from the Sales window:	226
To remove an item from the Sales window:	226
To unselect an item:	226
To Discount items:	226
To Clear all items:	226
To Set a Pop message for a client:	227
Reversing A Service Sale	227
To reverse a service sale:	227
Updating a Client's Service Formula History	227
To update a client's Service Formula history file:	228
Accepting a Sale	228
An overview of processing and accepting a sale:	229
To receive and select a payment type:	229
Cash Type	229
Check Type	230
To receive checks:	230
Credit Card Type	230
To receive credit cards:	230
Series	230
Gift Certificates	230
The On Account type	230
The Hotel charge	230

The Travellers Checks Type	231
Other.....	231
Gift Card	231
To change a Payee:	231
Printing Sales Receipts.....	232
To print a sales receipt:	232
Register Options.....	232
Register Roll Back	232
End-of-Day Report.....	232
Service Sales	232
Retail Sales.....	232
Bank Deposits	232
In-Salon Use.....	233
To record a product as In-Salon Use:	233
Merchandise Return and Exchange.....	234
Paid Outs	235
To record a Paid Out transaction:	235
Paid Ins.....	235
To record a Paid In transaction:	235
On Account	236
To view a client's Account status:	236
To adjust a client's balance:.....	237
To post a payment against a client's balance:.....	237
Deleting a client's on account balance:	238
Voiding a Transaction	238
To void a transaction:	238
Printing Duplicate Receipts	238
To print a duplicate receipt:	238
No Sale	239
To open the drawer without recording a transaction:	239
Clear File Busy.....	239
Voiding a Gift Certificate	239
To Void a Gift Certificate:.....	239
Closing the Register	240
To close the register:	241
View Options	242
Transaction.....	242
To View a Transaction:.....	242
To view a transaction by operator:	244
Prior Closings.....	244

To view a Prior Closing:	244
Client History	244
To view a Clients History:	244
Cash Register Prompt Options	245
Book Next Appointment Reminder	245
Prompt For Client Type Option	245
Change Due Reminder	246
BookAppts from the Sales Window	246
Partnership Program.....	246
Using Gift Cards	247
Selling a Gift Card	247
Chapter 7 - Reports	249
About Prosolutions Reports	249
List of Reports	249
Report Numbering	249
Sales Reports.....	249
Inventory Reports.....	252
Marketing Reports.....	254
Client	255
Goals	255
Day Runner	255
Graphs	255
Miscellaneous.....	256
Sales Reports	256
Service Sales	256
To print Service Sales reports:	257
Retail Sales.....	257
Weekly Reports.....	257
Operator Sales Reports.....	258
Productivity Reports	259
Operator Prices and Times Report.....	259
Commission Reports.....	259
Transaction Detail Reports.....	259
By Date Range transaction reports:	261
Special Sales	262
Sales Tax Report.....	262
Coupon Reports.....	262

Series Sales Reports	263
Gift Certificate Reports	263
Gift Card	263
Gift Card Sales	263
Point of Sale Reports	263
Inventory Reports	263
Printing Client Lists.....	265
See "Marketing" in Chapter 3.	265
Goals.....	265
Dayrunner.....	265
Printing an operator's appointment listings:	265
To print an appointment list for all operators:	266
Client Phone Book	266
To print a phone book listing:	266
Client History	267
To print out a client's history:	267
Dayrunner Forms Layout Options	267
To see the Forms Layout menu options:	267
To setup an appointment form layout:	267
To select fonts and font sizes:	268
To setup a phone book form layout:	269
To select from different fonts and font sizes:	269
To setup the Client History form layout:	269
Prosolutions Graphs	270
To enter the Graphs window:	270
To view a graph:	270
The Following is a list of each graph:	270
Sales:	270
Service Sales	271
Operators:	271
Miscellaneous Reports	271
Miscellaneous.....	271
To print out the Appointment Listing report:	271
To create and print out business cards:	272
Create "The Club @" files	273
Batch Reports	273
Batch Reports - Making	273
Batch Reports - Using	274
Chapter 8 - Utilities.....	275

About Prosolutions Utilities.....	275
To enter the Utilities main menu:	275
List of Utility Functions and their meanings	276
View Directories	276
Appointments Inquiry	276
Database Repairs.....	277
Groups and Services.....	280
File Modify	280
File Deletions	281
File Import.....	282
To import ASCII client files:	282
To import a typical exported client file:	283
Inventory Import	283
File Export.....	284
Inventory Export	284
Offload Inventory	284
Create Load File.....	284
Transactions	285
Client Files	285
Appointments.....	285
Mailing Salutation Field	285
Manual History Input.....	285
For Services	285
For Products	285
Miscellaneous.....	285
Set Logo Name	285
Changing the Logo Path.....	285
To Change the logo path:.....	285
Client File to Lower Case	286
Set Sales Tax Flag:	286
Clear All Passwords.....	286
Process Appointment Log File.....	286
To Process Appointments using the Appointment Logging feature:.....	287
If you are on a network:	287
Quick Back-up.....	288
To do a Back-up to a Separate Media:	288
Restoring from Flash Drive.....	289
HD, Zip, CD or Other Media	289
Chapter 9 - Payroll	291
Accessing Payroll from within ProSolutions	291
To access Payroll from within ProSolutions:	291

Setup.....	291
Set Tax Year.....	291
Define Standard Hours.....	291
Time Clock Setup.....	292
To Set up the Time Clock:	292
Pay Rate Descriptions	293
To set your pay rate description:.....	293
Tax Tables.....	293
To set up your tax descriptions:	293
To setup your tax calculations	294
Deduction Descriptions.....	296
To set up your deduction descriptions:	296
Expense Reimburse Descriptions.....	296
To set up expense reimbursement descriptions:	296
Check Format.....	297
Check Layout	297
Setup for New Year.....	298
Printer Setup.....	298
Employees	298
Add A New Employee	298
To add a new employee:	298
Deleting an Employee from Payroll.....	300
View/Modify An Employee.....	301
To view and modify an employee's file:	301
Clear Operator XRefs.....	302
Employee Year to Date Earnings.....	302
History Input	303
To enter an employee's payroll history:	303
Commission Schedules	304
To set up sliding commission:	304
Deleting Commission Tables:.....	305
To delete an employee's commission table:	305
Percent of Retail to Service Sales	305
Commission Rates.....	306
To set service commission rates:	306
To set retail commission rates:	307
To set cashier commissions	307
.....	308
Time Clock.....	308
To Clock In:	308

To Clock Out:	309
Adjust Employee.....	309
To adjust or void an employee's hours for a day:.....	309
To print the Time Clock report:	310
Payroll	310
Make Payroll	310
To make a payroll:	310
Process Payroll.....	312
Align Checks.....	313
Federal Tax Deposits	313
To Post Federal Tax Deposits:	313
Reports	314
Payroll Register report	314
Employee List	314
Employee Name and Address	314
Employee Phone List	314
Employee Earnings report	314
Employee Detail Earnings	314
Detail Pay Register	314
Commission reports	314
About the Federal Tax Deposit report	314
Quarterly Reports.....	315
State Quarterly Reports.....	315
Utilities	315
Chapter 10 - Passwords	317
What you'll do in this chapter	317
Setting Program Passwords.....	317
First Things First:.....	317
To set up a master password.	318
To set general password settings in ProSolutions:.....	319
To set sales password settings in ProSolutions:.....	319
Appointment book password settings in ProSolutions:	320
Client information password settings in ProSolutions:.....	321
Inventory password settings in ProSolutions:.....	322
Reports password settings in ProSolutions:	323
Other menu password settings in ProSolutions:	324
To set Setup password settings in ProSolutions:	325
To setup passwords for operators and employees:	326
Assigning areas of the program an operator/employee has access to:.....	327
To turn on the password protect preference setting:	327
Setting up Biometric Fingerprint Scanning.	327

Index.....329

ProSolutions Management

Software Introduction

Before You Begin

Before you can install ProSolutions Management Software, you must first be sure that you are running Microsoft Windows XP or Vista / 2003 as your operating system.

Technical Note

You may experience problems when attempting to install *ProSolutions Management Software* on a hard disk drive that has been compressed.

Training

Before you begin, have you considered training? Don't forget that all new purchases include one hour of free training. An hour or two purchased from a ProSolutions Trainer may be the best investment you make in speeding your way towards fully using this software.

Suggestions

Schedule your one hour training with one of our specialists. The first hour of training will take you through "operator setup, room setup, groups and services, inventory, and clients." This will get you started! During the setup period, which includes familiarizing yourself with *ProSolutions Management Software* and adding all your client and inventory data, we suggest you set up the computer in a quiet area away from the reception area. This will allow you and your staff time to setup with limited distractions.

As part of the setup period, you should take time to run some sample transactions before completely switching your operations over to the computer. This will insure that you have everything you need, and feel comfortable enough to allow *ProSolutions Management Software* to begin automating your daily operations.

Product Support

Telephone Support:

If you are a new Prosolutions customer, you may be entitled to free phone setup training. Please inquire by calling 800-710-3879.

Our support line is (800) 710-3879 and is always free as part of your monthly subscription. We do not invoice. This will allow you to ask as many questions as you want. Any customer who has an outstanding past due balance on their account cannot be rendered training and/or support until payment has been made with a major credit card.

The training manual is on your CD for you to print, peruse and or place on your desktop to refer to. It is approximately 370 pages. You can, however, print out chapter by chapter. To order a preprinted manual the fee is \$50.00 plus shipping of \$15.00.

Our Support Email address is support@prosolutionssoftware.com. Questions posted on Email will be answered within 24-48 hours of receipt. However, the standard is usually 24 hours. If you ever lose this information sheet you can find the support information from the main menu of your software at...INFO - ABOUT for all of our contact information.

You must follow procedure: ONE question per email, but you can send multiple emails. Your serial number (account number) must be present in the subject line. Your name and telephone number must be included in the body of the email. Any customer who has an outstanding past due balance on their account cannot be rendered training and/or support until payment has been made. You must be very specific as to the technical problem you are having. The more information you provide, the quicker the response. It is also helpful to inform us of your current operating system.

Monthly Classes: ProSolutions Software has 3 hour classes the last Monday of every month (barring holidays.) You can sign up for these classes through our website, www.prosolutionssoftware.com and click on the "On Line Classes" link. One free class comes with the new purchase of the software and all future classes are \$199.00 for each "log-in."

Sample Data

Included with *ProSolutions Management Software* is preloaded sample data, that you can switch back and forth to, for training or evaluation purposes. For more information and instructions on loading sample data: See "*Sample Data*" in Chapter 1, *Getting Started*.

Using the Mouse

The mouse moves the pointer on the screen. To move the pointer slide the mouse over a flat surface in the direction you want the pointer to move. Do not press the mouse button when you move the mouse. If you run out of room to move the mouse, lift it and then put it down. The pointer doesn't move while the mouse is in the air.

A standard mouse has two buttons; the left button is used for most tasks in *ProSolutions Management Software*. Moving the mouse and pressing the mouse button are the only actions involved in the basic skills of pointing and clicking.

Pointing:

Moving the mouse to place the pointer over an item is called pointing.

Clicking:

Pointing to an item on your screen and then quickly pressing and releasing the mouse button is called clicking.

Right Clicking:

Right-Clicking is used throughout Windows and is used to bring up an option menu. To Right-Click simply press the "right" mouse button over an area that has Right-Click options. After the options menu is displayed, you then use your left mouse button to select an option.

Double-clicking:

Pointing to an item and pressing the left mouse button twice in quick succession is a convenient shortcut for some tasks you'll do in *ProSolutions Management Software*.

Setting up a barcode scanner

Using a usb barcode scanner is one of the easiest functions within ProSolutions. Essentially a barcode scanner simply reads the barcode labels on inventory and ends human error upon entering those numbers into the system. To install a usb barcode scanner, follow these steps:

- 1 Plug the scanner into an available USB port. The computer may be on or off at this time.
- 2 To test, go to START/PROGRAMS/ACCESSORIES/NOTE PAD and open Note Pad. Once note pad is open on a blank screen and the cursor is blinking within notepad, scan any barcode label with your scanner and the corresponding numbers should appear on the notepad screen. If this

works, you have successfully installed your barcode scanner.

- 3 It really is that simple!

Sending Messages

ProSolutions Management Software has a messaging feature that allows messages to be left for any operator. An operator can retrieve their messages at any time and messages can be password protected. The message is time and date stamped when it is sent.

To send a message:

- 1 From the *ProSolutions Management Software* Main Menu click on **Other**.
- 2 Click on **Messages**.
- 3 Click on **Send Message**.

The **Send Message** box will appear.

SEND MESSAGE

From: Effective Dates: Send To:

Message: ☒ Returned your call ☐ Please call back ☐ Will call again

Password:

- 4 In the **From** field type in the name of the person sending the message.
- 5 From the **Send To** list box select the operator that the message is to be sent to.
- 6 Today's date will automatically appear in the first of two fields under the label **Effective Dates**.

If you want this message to be available for the recipient immediately and not expire or be deleted until the operator retrieves it, then you should not enter in a second date. If you do want this message to be available during a date range, then enter in a date range and the message will expire or be deleted at the end of the date range.

- 7 Next type in the message in the message area. If this is regarding a call you can check the appropriate tag either "**Returned your call**", "**Please**

call back” or “Will call again”

- 8 If you want this message to be private, you can add a password that you and the recipient of the message have agreed on. The password can be up to 10 characters long.
- 9 Finally, when you are ready to send the message, click the **Send** button.

To Retrieve Messages:

- 1 From the *ProSolutions Management Software* Main Menu click on **Other**.
- 2 Click on **Messages**.
- 3 Click on **Get Message**.

The **Get Message** box will appear.

MESSAGES

Messages waiting for:
 Elaine

Sender: Henry
 Dated: 09/08/96 08:43 AM

Message: ☐ Returned call ☐ Call back ☒ Will call again 1 of 2

Hi Elaine

You may modify this message by entering changes and clicking the 'UPDATE' button.

Indicates the number of messages this operator has waiting to be retrieved.

- 4 From the **Operator list** box, select the operator name or ID.
 If you have a message waiting it will be displayed along with who sent it and when.
- 5 If this is a private message you will need to enter in the agreed upon password in the password field. The password field will only display if a password is required.
- 6 If there is more than one message you'll know by the number on the right. For example if there are two messages for you the first message will be numbered 1 of 2, the second 2 of 2. In addition, the **Next** button will only be displayed if there is more than one message waiting to be retrieved.
- 7 To view additional messages you have waiting, click the **Next** button.
- 8 To modify an existing message simply type in the changes and click the **Update** button.
- 9 To print the message, click the **Print** button. Printing a message will clear

the message as well.

10 To remove a message, click the **Clear** button.

11 When you are finished click the **Exit** button.

Importing CLIENT files into ProSolutions

Only Excel and ASCII Comma Delimited format (text fields, enclosed in quotes, separated by commas) client records can be imported into ProSolutions Management Software. The maximum number of fields per record can not exceed fifteen. ProSolutions Management Software **CANNOT** import client history or formulas from other programs.

To import ASCII comma delimited or Excel client records

Start ProSolutions Management Software and select [Utilities] [File import] [Client Files] then click on [From ASCII Files]

- The network and Backup warning will appear, if you already have a current backup and the workstations are out of ProSolutions Management Software or you have no workstations, then select [**Just Continue**]
- Type in the file name to be imported. Select the field layout using the list boxes provided.

GENERAL CLIENT IMPORT

FIELD TYPES:

Field 1	
Field 2	
Field 3	
Field 4	
Field 5	
Field 6	
Field 7	
Field 8	
Field 9	
Field 10	
Field 11	
Field 12	
Field 13	
Field 14	
Field 15	

Drive
☒ A: ☐ B: ☐ C:

File Name:

Cancel

Import

If importing from your hard drive, the file **MUST** be in the C:\root directory.

ProSolutions Software, Inc. makes no guarantees that any data imported into ProSolutions Management Software will display or work properly. There are too many variables with third party software companies to make such a guarantee, but we will strive to make it work for you.

A Note About The User Manual

ProSolutions Software, Inc. is constantly in the process of refining and improving ProSolutions Management Software *for* Windows so that we can offer you the best salon and spa management program in the world. For this reason you may find that your edition of the *ProSolutions Management Software* User Manual does not include all the latest features and improvements made to the program since we last printed the User Manual. Update CDs will always contain the latest revision available.

We are currently preparing the next edition. To receive an updated User Manual, call ProSolutions's Customer Support line @ 1-800/710-3879. Updated User's Manuals sell for \$50.00 plus \$15.00 shipping and handling.

Placing the Users Manual On Your Desktop

The manual is on the CD. At the Windows Desktop, go to START/RUN/BROWSE and select your cd player with the ProSolutions Management Software cd in it. You will see a folder in the cd entitled "manualpdf" open this folder and "drag and drop" (drag and drop by "left clicking" on the file and holding the button down, then drag the file out of the window it is currently in to the window you want it to be in) the setup.exe file you find inside it onto the desktop. Once this is done you can close the BROWSE window and the RUN window. It will be on your desktop from then on and you won't have to go through this series of steps again.

Getting Started

Chapter 1 Getting Started

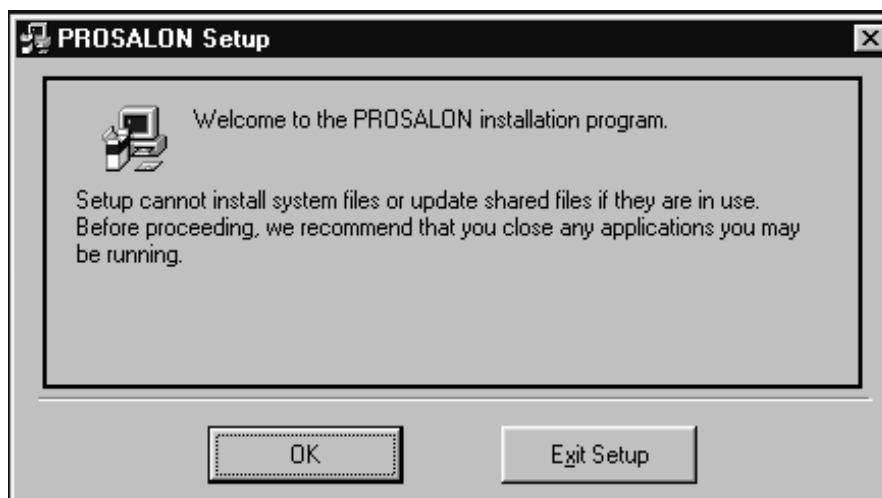
Important Note: Prosolutions Software is not certified nor intended for use with Apple's OS. Certification is only for Windows XP Home, Windows XP Pro, Windows XP Media, Windows Vista (all forms) Windows 2003 Server and Linux.

It is recommended to print out these instructions, but it is not necessary in order to install *Proolutions*.

Installing *Proolutions Management Software* For The First Time

Installing Prosolutions from Windows:

- 1 It is recommended that you close any other programs you are running before installing *Proolutions*.
- 2 Insert the *Proolutions* CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 3 After a few moments the auto-run feature should take over and installation will begin automatically. If after one minute this has not started, please go to MY COMPUTER and click on your CDROM to launch the CD manually.
- 4 A prompt appears as *Proolutions* prepares files for installation. After a few moments the *Proolutions* Setup prompt appears. It suggests you close any other programs you may be currently running.



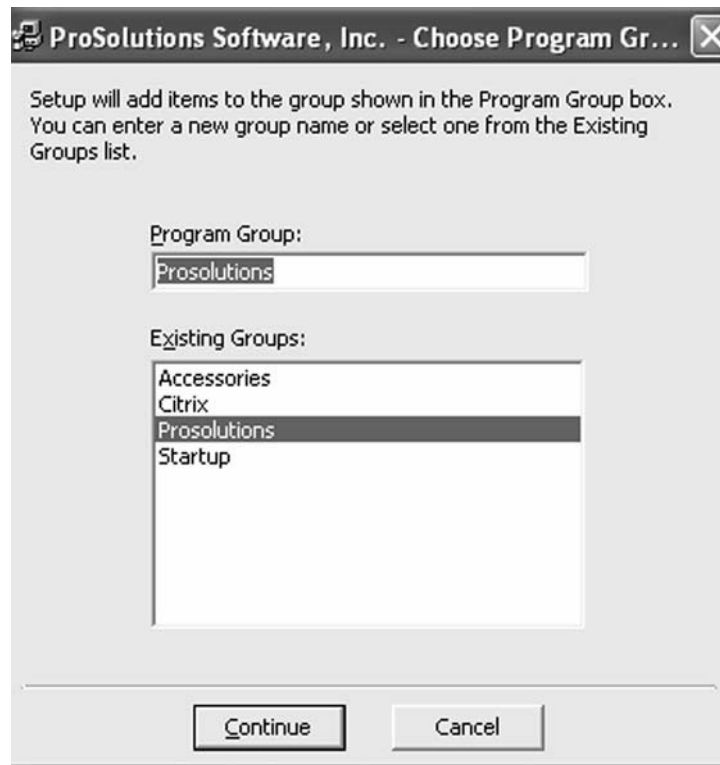
If you do have other programs running you should exit setup and then close any applications you may have running, then install *ProSolutions*

- 5 If you do not have any other programs running click **OK**.

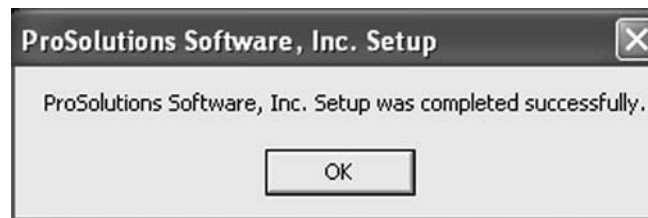
The next prompt will instruct *ProSolutions* where to install the program.



- 6 The default pathname is c:\Program Files\ProSalon. Unless you plan to install *ProSolutions* into a different directory simply click the install button. It is recommended you use the default directory. This makes it easier to install program updates.
- 7 The "Groups List" window will appear, it should look like this:



- 8 An installation progress screen is displayed as the program is being installed. Upon completion, a prompt will be displayed indicating that *Prosolutions* has been successfully installed.



- 9 Click **OK**

That's it! *Prosolutions* is now successfully installed on your computer.

Starting *Prosolutions*

- 1 You start *Prosolutions* just like any other windows applications, by clicking **Start, Programs** then the ***Prosolutions Software* folder**. Within this folder you will find the ProSolutions Icon, click on this icon to launch the software.

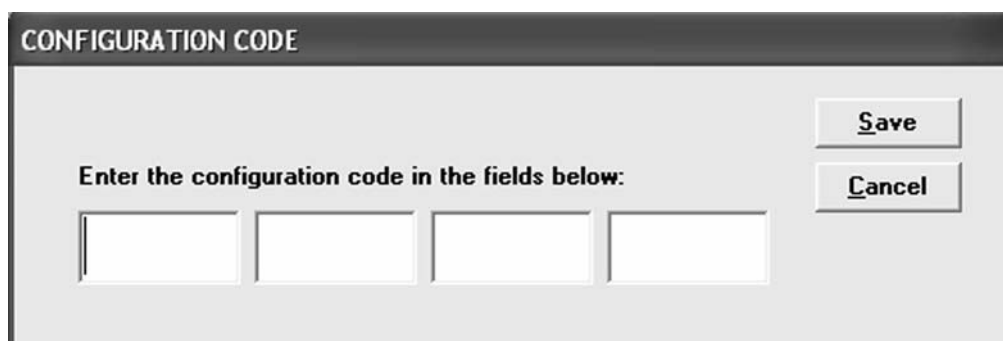
You might want to create a shortcut. To do this consult your Windows help screen for creating shortcuts.
- 2 *Prosolutions* will ask you to read the license agreement. If you agree, click **I Agree**.

- Next you will be prompted for your 5 digit account/serial number and configuration code.



A dialog box titled "SERIAL NUMBER INPUT". It contains a label "Enter Serial No." above a single-line text input field. To the right of the input field are two buttons: "Cancel" and "Accept". Below the input field is a checkbox labeled "Check here for Demo".

- Enter in your serial number. This serial number is located on the CD case. It also has your configuration code.



A dialog box titled "CONFIGURATION CODE". It contains a label "Enter the configuration code in the fields below:" above four single-line text input fields arranged horizontally. To the right of the input fields are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

- Enter in your **Configuration Code**.
- The following screen appears after you have entered your configuration code by selecting the "Save" button.



A window titled "PROFESSIONAL SALON". The main heading is "Data Initialization". Below it is the text "00-15-12345". A paragraph follows: "This system has not yet been initialized. Initialization creates the basic set of files needed for ProSolutions to run." Another paragraph: "As an alternative to initialization, if you are an existing user of ProSolutions and are currently using version 7.0 or later, you may opt to use your existing data." At the bottom, there is a section titled "Select Initialization Option" with two radio buttons: "Initialize" and "Use Existing ProSalon Data". On the right side of the window, there are two buttons: "Start" and "Cancel".

- 7 If you are installing *ProSolutions* for the first time and do not have any existing data, click the option **Initialize**.
- 8 Click the **Start** button to proceed with initialization.
- 9 *ProSolutions* will now ask if you wish to install the Sample Data.

You should install the sample data. If you do not install sample data now you can copy it over later. Click **Next**.

- 10 *ProSolutions* will ask for your company name and address.

- 11 Enter the information then click **Next**.

INITIALIZATION Step 2

Days and Times Open

Check those days that the business is open and set the time of the first appointment and the time at which the last appointment will end for each day.

		OPENED	CLOSED
Sun	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	8:00A	8:00P
Mon	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	8:00A	8:00P
Tue	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	8:00A	8:00P
Wed	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	8:00A	8:00P
Thr	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	8:00A	8:00P
Fri	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	8:00A	8:00P
Sat	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	8:00A	8:00P

Next
Back
Cancel

- 12 Click **Next**. If you later need to change your schedule you can change this information without having to reinstall or reinitialize *ProSolutions*.
- 13 Enter in your booking intervals. The most common setting is for intervals at fifteen minutes.

INITIALIZATION Step 3

Booking Interval

Select the default booking interval for which you would like to view your appointments. Although the booking interval may be changed "on-the-fly" when necessary, the appointment book will be initially displayed using the booking interval selected below.

Booking Interval
15 Minutes

Next
Back
Cancel

- 14 Click **Next**.

- 15 You can now indicate how you would like to designate the labels *ProSolutions* will use to identify your type of business, staff, clients and services you provide. Simply type in the names you would like, or choose from the drop down list provided.

INITIALIZATION Step 4

Designators

Designators are general names assigned to your type of business, to those employees that provide services to your clients, and to the name you use to refer to your clients themselves.

ProSalon gives you the option to change these designators to something that might better suit your needs. Select from the list, or enter your own designators in the fields provided below.

Business
Spa

Operator
Operator

Client
Client

Service
Service

Next
Back
Cancel

- 16 Click **Next**. Again, this information can be modified later without having to reinitialize.
- 17 Finally a prompt will appear to **Begin Initialization**.

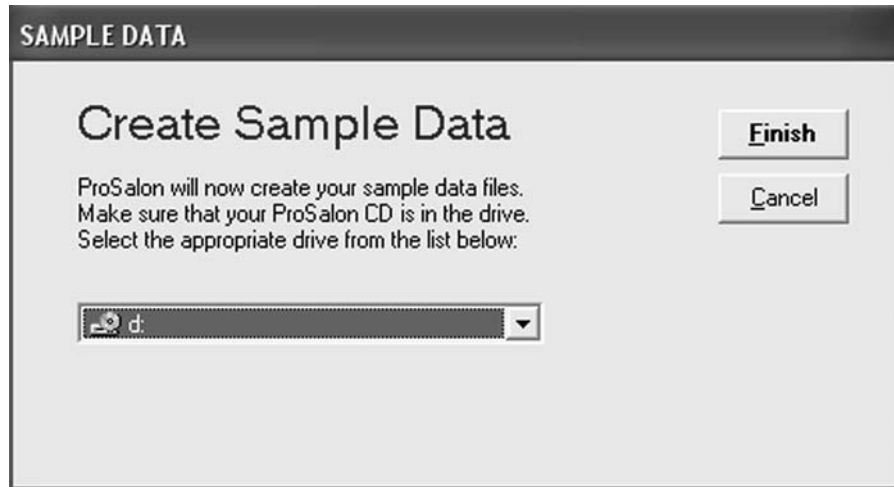
INITIALIZATION Final Step

Begin Initialization

ProSalon is now ready to initialize your system. Click "GO" to start this process.

GO
Back
Cancel

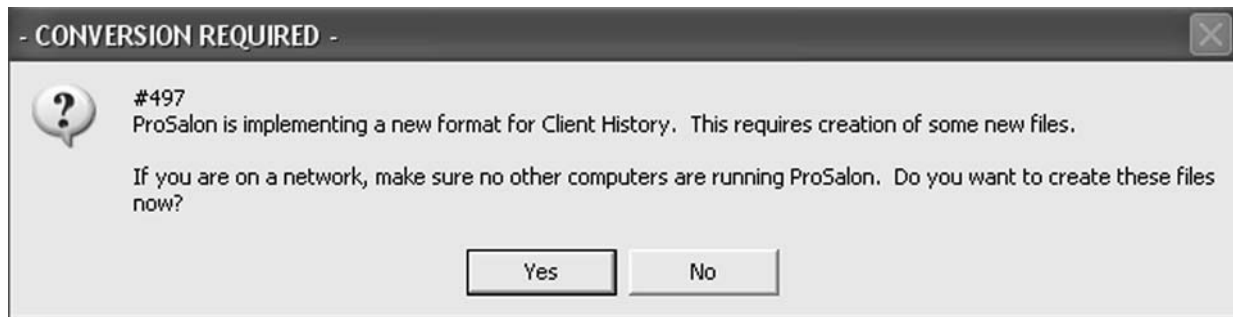
- 18 Click **Go**.
- 19 If earlier in the installation process you selected to install "sample data", the following screen will appear. To install Sample Data select your CD Drive from the list box provided to install the sample data.



- 20 Click **Finish**.
- 21 After the sample data has been copied the following prompt will appear.



- 22 File conversions may now need to be done. If the "Conversions Required" Window does not appear, do not worry, it only means that no files required updating.



- 23 Click Yes and the conversions will be done automatically
- 24 This completes the initialization process. You will not have to reinitialize unless you reinstall *ProSolutions*.
- 25 You will now be automatically taken to the main menu screen.



There are ten selections available in the menu bar. They are: Sales, Appointments, Clients, Inventory, Reports, Other, Utilities, Setup, Info and Exit. Each section is explained in this User's Manual.

Sample Data

Included with *ProSolutions* is preloaded sample data that you can switch back and forth to for training or evaluation purposes.

To switch to sample data:

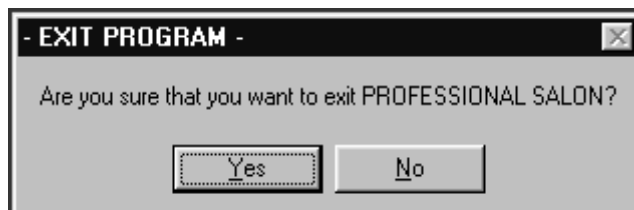
- 1 From the Main menu select **Info**.
- 2 Click **Set for Sample Data**.
- 3 Exit *ProSolutions*.
- 4 Restart *ProSolutions* and you will then have the sample data loaded.

To go back to your salon data:

- 1 From the Main menu select **Info**
- 2 Click **Set for Salon Data** and then exit the program.
- 3 Restart *ProSolutions* and you will then have your salon data reloaded.

Exiting *ProSolutions*

Click **Exit** from the main menu.



Program Registration

The registration prompt will not appear for the first 30 days of use.

To Register *ProSolutions* and get the User Code:

- 1 Start ***ProSolutions***.
- 2 When the registration screen appears, write down the large red 6 digit number on the screen
- 3 Call ProSolutions, @ 1-800-710-3879.
- 4 ProSolutions, will give you a User Code.
- 5 Enter the User Code.
- 6 Click **Accept**.

You have 90 days to register ***ProSolutions***. If you do not wish to register ***ProSolutions*** you can simply click **Do Later**. The registration screen will appear each time you start ***ProSolutions*** until you register. If after ninety days ***ProSolutions*** detects that it is not registered it will not run.

Once you have entered the user code you will no longer be prompted with the registration screen.

Technical Support

There are two ways to get help:

- 1 **Phone support.**
- 2 **Email support.**

For phone support, call our toll free technical support number, at 800-710-3879. Our free (with subscription or MSP) technical support hours are Monday through Friday 6am to 5:45pm PST.

Note: On Saturday or Sunday you will be directed to an on-call technician's cell phone, please be sure to leave your telephone number, account number and nature of the problem!

When you call, please be sitting in front of your computer with *ProSolutions* running.

When you call please try to provide the following information:

- The version number of *ProSolutions* and the Serial Number of your copy of *ProSolutions* (both are listed in the *ProSolutions*'s "About"

box or on the program CD cases.)

- The type of hardware you are using, including network hardware, if applicable.
- A description of the problem and what you were doing when the problem occurred.
- The exact wording and number of any error messages that appear on your screen.

For Email support, Email us at support@prosolutionssoftware.com any-time of day or night. We reply to all Emails from registered users, generally within 24/48 hours. Please be sure to include your account number, otherwise we can not guarantee a response. Also, please limit your Email questions/issues to no more than one question/issue per e-mail. This helps us better organize and track issues.

Networking *ProSolutions*

In order to have *ProSolutions* used in a network environment whether a Peer to Peer type, or dedicated network you will need to order a Workstation version of *ProSolutions* for each additional computer you plan to have in your network.

What is a Workstation?

A network is more than one computer sharing data. One of these computers is your Server, the server holds your *ProSolutions* data. A workstation is a computer that is also running *ProSolutions* but is accessing the data on the server over the network. You can have as many workstations running *ProSolutions* as you want, however, you must purchase a *ProSolutions* "workstation" license for each one.

Installing a Workstation Version of *ProSolutions*

It is important that you have a basic understanding of networking. We advise you to map the server's *Prosalon* folder and make note of the drive letter you assign it and set it to "Reconnect at Logon." Your workstation data path would then be **(letter):\Data**. For information on how to map a drive consult your Windows documentation. Of course you are always welcome to contact *ProSolutions*. *Your system MUST be pre-networked prior to calling ProSolutions. Our technicians can help you share ProSolutions over the network but will NOT help set the network up.*

ProSolutions Workstation Installation

- 1 Insert the *ProSolutions* CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 2 After a few moments the auto-run feature should take over and installation will begin automatically. If after one minute this has not started, please go to MY COMPUTER and click on your CDROM to launch the CD manually.

- 3 A prompt appears as *Prosolutions* prepares files for installation. After a few moments the *Prosolutions* Setup prompt appears. It suggests you close any other programs you may be currently running.

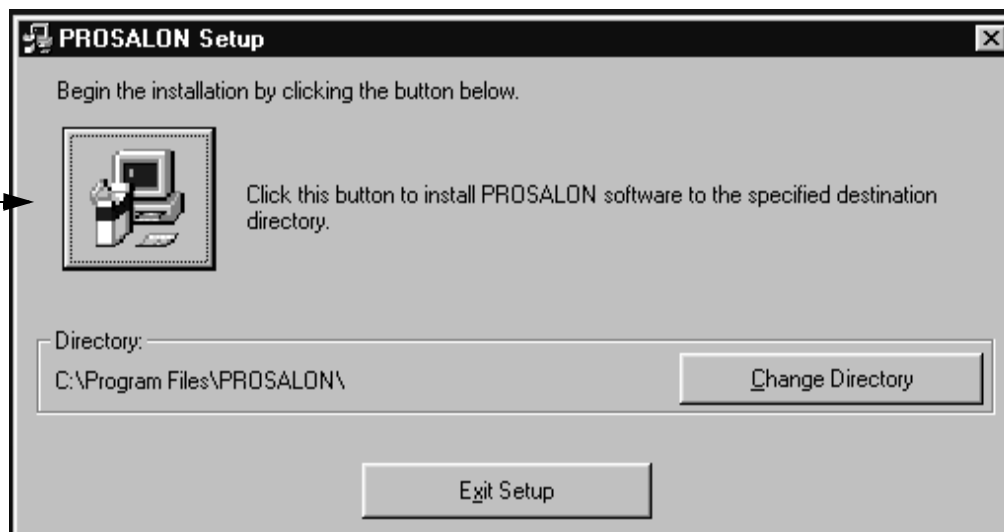


If you do have other programs running you should exit setup and then close any applications you may have running, then install *Prosolutions*

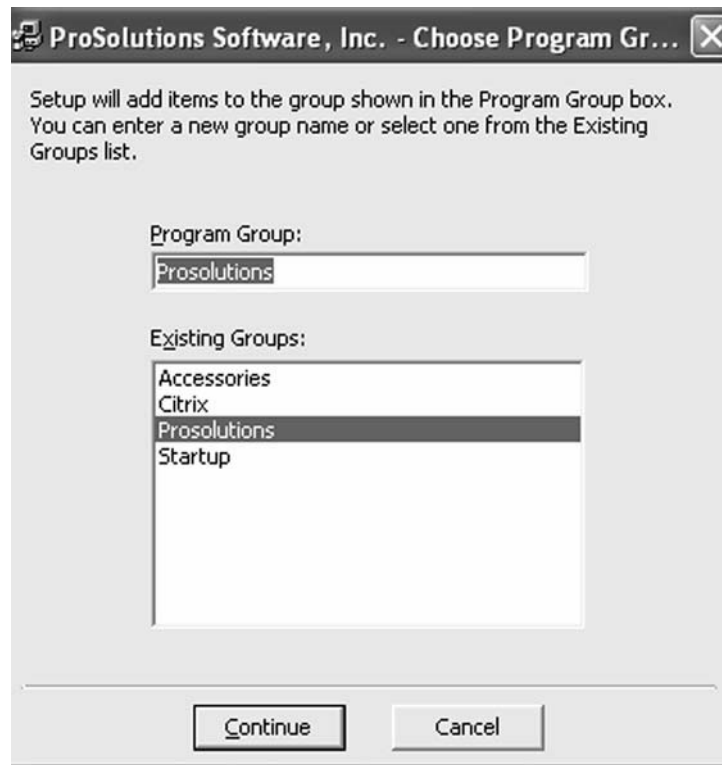
- 4 If you do not have any other programs running click **OK**.

The next prompt will instruct *Prosolutions* where to install the program.

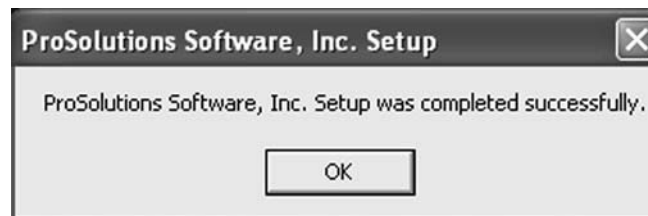
Click here to
Install
Prosolutions



- 5 The default pathname is c:\Program Files\ProSalon. Unless you plan to install *Prosolutions* into a different directory simply click the install button. It is recommended you use the default directory. This makes it easier to install program updates.
- 6 The "Groups List" window will appear, it should look like this:



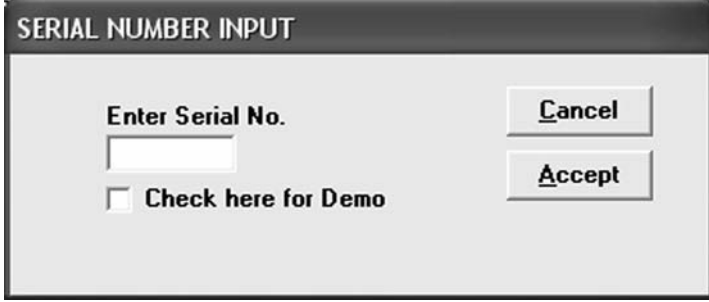
- 7 An installation progress screen is displayed as the program is being installed. Upon completion, a prompt will be displayed indicating that *ProSolutions* has been successfully installed.



- 8 Click **OK**

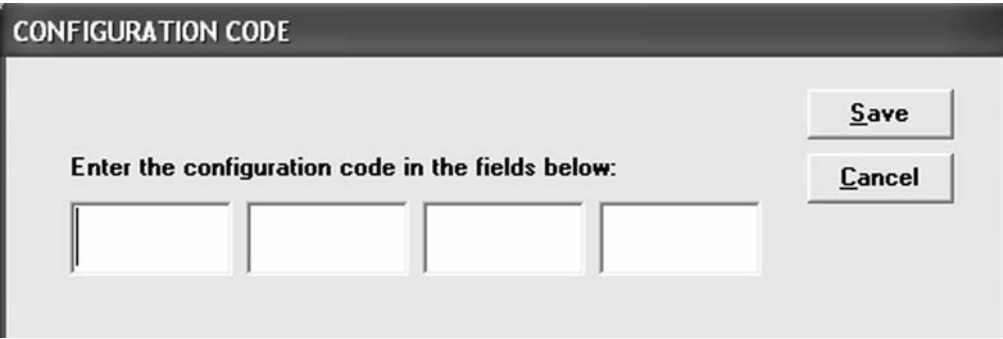
That's it! *You are now ready to set up your workstation.*

- 1 You start the *ProSolutions* Workstation just like any other windows applications, by clicking **Start, Programs** then the ***ProSolutions Software folder*** within this folder you will find the ProSolutions Icon, click on this icon to launch the software.
You might want to create a shortcut. To do this consult your Windows help screen for creating shortcuts.
- 2 *ProSolutions* will ask you to read the license agreement. If you agree, click **I Agree**.
- 3 Next you will be prompted for your 5 digit account/serial number and configuration code.



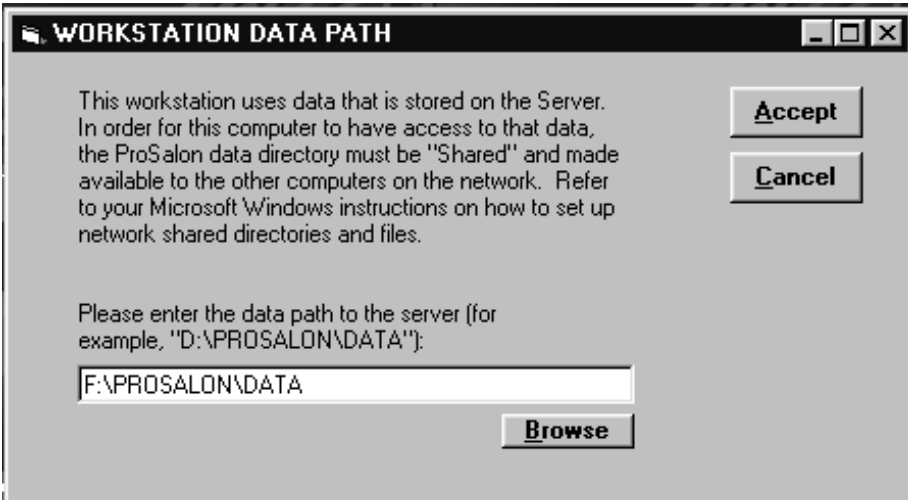
A dialog box titled "SERIAL NUMBER INPUT". It contains a label "Enter Serial No." above a single-line text input field. Below the input field is a checkbox labeled "Check here for Demo". To the right of the input field are two buttons: "Cancel" and "Accept".

- 4 Enter in your serial number. This serial number is located on the CD case. It also has your configuration code. IT IS NOT THE SAME AS YOUR SERVER CONFIGURATION CODE. You should have been given the Workstation Configuration code when you purchased your workstation license.



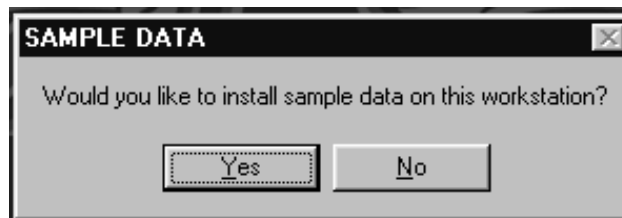
A dialog box titled "CONFIGURATION CODE". It contains a label "Enter the configuration code in the fields below:" above four single-line text input fields arranged horizontally. To the right of the input fields are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

- 5 Enter in your **Configuration Code**.
- 6 The system will now prompt you for the location of your data.



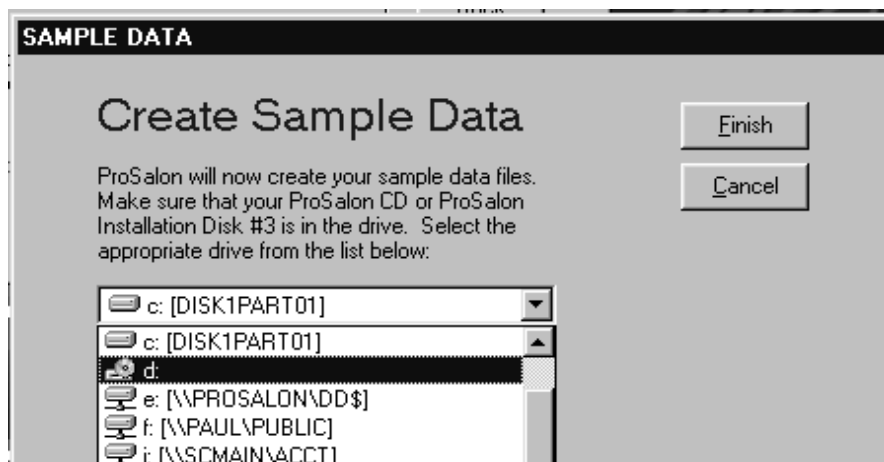
A dialog box titled "WORKSTATION DATA PATH". It contains a paragraph of text: "This workstation uses data that is stored on the Server. In order for this computer to have access to that data, the ProSalon data directory must be 'Shared' and made available to the other computers on the network. Refer to your Microsoft Windows instructions on how to set up network shared directories and files." Below this text is another paragraph: "Please enter the data path to the server (for example, 'D:\PROSALON\DATA'):". Below this is a single-line text input field containing the text "F:\PROSALON\DATA". To the right of the input field are two buttons: "Accept" and "Cancel". Below the input field is a "Browse" button.

- 7 Enter your data path by either typing in the path or use the browse button to select the path for you. (Your data may be stored anywhere, so the above example path may not apply.)
- 8 *ProSolutions* will now ask if you wish to install the Sample Data.



You should install the sample data. Select **Yes**.

- 9 To install Sample Data select your CD Drive from the list box provided to install the sample data. (Your CD Drive letter may not be the same as shown below.).

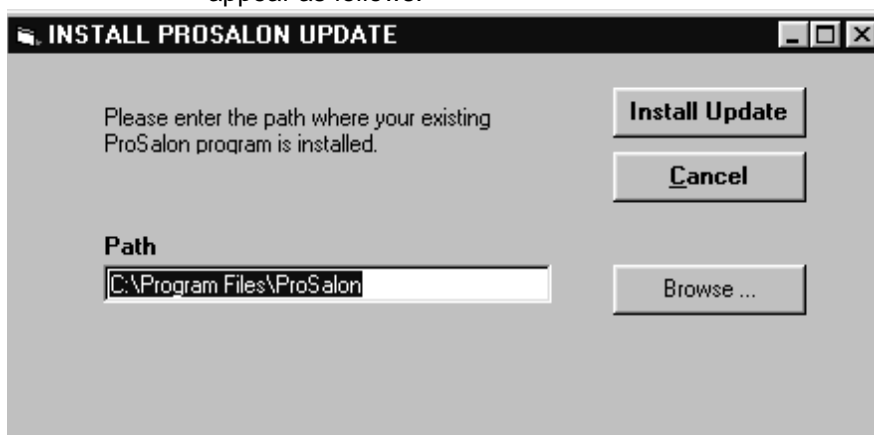


- 10 Click **Create**.
- 11 At this point *ProSolutions* should now start up and be connected to the data directory on your server. If you have followed the above steps and *ProSolutions* will not run properly, you can call the technical support department.

"Update existing ProSolutions"

- 1 The update should automatically launch. If it fails to do so, explore the ProSolutions CD and select "Update32"
- 2 A new screen will appear confirming the location of the ProSolutions files, if you have selected the default settings when installed the software originally, then you can use the current defaults as well. The screen will

appear as follows:



- 3 If you are installing a **Workstation Update**, you follow the same steps AFTER you have done the backup and the update on the Server.

Suggestions on Implementing *ProSolutions*

First, congratulations on your decision to use ProSolutions software. In order to make the transition to our program easier we've identified some obstacles, let's call them *challenges*, that you may encounter as you begin implementing *ProSolutions*.

Common Challenges

Electing someone to be in charge

We recommend that you first elect someone to be in charge of setting everything up. This includes:

- Making sure that the computer and all the peripherals are in place and working properly.
- Installing *ProSolutions* software in the computer.
- Learning the basics of *ProSolutions* i.e. reviewing the manual, getting the hour of training, etc.
- Contacting technical support to solve any problems that may arise.
- Setting up your services, inventory, client records, etc.
- Training other members of your staff.

By electing a person to be in charge of implementing *ProSolutions* you will avoid many of the common challenges.

Trying to do too much, too soon

Trying to implement all the functions at the same time can be very difficult. For instance trying to learn and implement the cash register functions, appointment functions and payroll all simultaneously is usually a recipe for disaster. *ProSolutions* is a multi-functional integrated application. In every

industry where a software application such as *ProSolutions* is installed, it is phased in systematically. This allows for a smoother transition, allowing people to become familiar with each function (ringing up sales, booking appointments, managing inventory, etc.) separately.

Knowing where to begin

Our advice is to master the cash register Point-of Sale part of the program first. To do this you will need to have a good understanding of most of the setup functions (chapter 2). Also, you should know how to add a client and select an inventory part from within the sales screen.

Booking appointments and doing payroll should be implemented after the Point-of-Sale functions are mastered.

Thank you for choosing ProSolutions.

Chapter 2 Setup

What you'll do in this chapter

- Add Operators/Employees/Rooms/Equipment
- Set up Services
- Prices & Times (Salon/Spa and Operators)
- Setting up a series
- Setting Program Passwords
- Custom Configurations for General, Appointments, Inventory, Sales Register, Operator Schedules and Client Files
- Value Added Tax (Some Non-U.S.)
- Custom Preference Settings for General, Appointments, Inventory, Sales Register, Printer/Cash Drawers, Clients, Gift Certificates, and 40 Column Reports
- Backing up your data

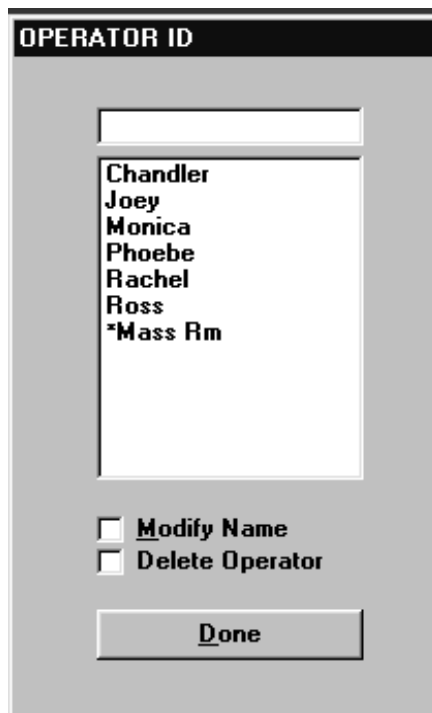
Operator Files

This section describes how to enter an operator/employee into *ProSolutions*. You'll set up a file for each operator and set their work schedule. If you are adding rooms such as a massage room or a tanning bed room you must create a file for each room. This way the room is distinguished from an operator and will only appear on the appointment book.

To add an Operator/Room/Equipment:

- 1 From the **Main Menu**, select **Setup**.
- 2 Click **Operator Files** (Stylist Files, ect. depending upon what you chose during the initialization process).

The “**Operator ID**” box appears.



OPERATOR ID

Chandler
Joey
Monica
Phoebe
Rachel
Ross
*Mass Rm

☐ Modify Name
☐ Delete Operator

Done

The top text field is for entering an operator ID. This ID will appear on the appointment screens and can be up to ten characters long. The operator's first name is a common choice. Type the first name of the operator and then press "**Enter**" on your keyboard.

About Adding Operators

Note: If you later want to rearrange the order of the operators on the appointment book *See, set Operator Display Order in Chapter 5* [Note]

For all typing, we strongly suggest using Upper and Lower case, i.e. Fred Thompson instead of FRED THOMPSON or fred thompson.

- 3 Type in an **Operator's ID** (we suggest their first name or initials) in the text box.

If entering a room you must enter an asterisk (*) before the name to distinguish the room from an actual operator. For example if you wanted to enter a massage room and wanted to call it Room 1 you would enter ***Room 1**.

Remember: A room name, operator name or Equipment name can only be 10 characters long.

If entering equipment you must enter a plus sign (+) before the name. For example if you wanted to enter a laser machine and wanted to call it Laser 1 you would enter **+Laser1**.

- 4 Press the **Enter** key.

The **Operator Information** window appears.

Operator Information

8 |Hermes| ☒ Male ☐ Female

Title
|Body Therapist|

☐ No Appointments

First Name |Hermes| Last Name |Argos|

Street Address |7 Theogony| Start Date | |

City |Olympia| State |CA| Zip Code |90000|

Phone Number |(310) 955-5512| Soc Sec Number |777-77-7777|

Cell Phone Number |310-562-9999| Driver's License |ZEUS24TB|

Cell Provider | | S M T W T F S
| | | | | | |

Select cell provider |Cell Providers| Operator Enrollment |School Schedule|

Biography
| |

Accept
Schedule
Op Groups
Room Pref
Cancel

- 5 Type a **Title** for this operator.

Titles can include senior stylist, receptionist, etc., if a room "room 1" if equipment, "laser 1" etc.

IF A ROOM OR EQUIPMENT YOU ONLY NEED THE NAME (ROOM ONE) IN THE FIRST AND LAST NAME FIELD AND THE SCHEDULE FOR THAT ROOM OR EQUIPMENT, PLUS THE GROUPS ASSIGNED TO THAT ROOM OR EQUIPMENT.

- 6 Press the **Enter** key.
- 7 Type the first name, last name and address, using the **Enter** keys to move from field to field.

Notice that after you enter the street address, the cursor skips past the City and State fields and rests on the Zip Code field.

- 8 Type in a **Zip Code**.

When you enter a zip code for the first time, the following window appears.

Here you'll type the City and State for the Zipcode. The next time you enter this zipcode the City and State will automatically be filled in for you.

- 9 Now click the **Accept** button.
- 10 This will clear the Zip code window and fill in the **City** and **State** fields for you.
- 11 Fill in the **Social Security** and **Phone Number** fields.

The Social Security and Phone Number fields do not require you to type in hyphens.

note: The "Biography" screen is for the operator as well. This is just a simple window for you to put any additional information you feel necessary to include in their Operator file.

Setting an Operators Daily Schedule

This section describes the Operator work schedule features. On the bottom right part of the window, you'll see the check boxes in the following illustration.

All the days that you previously set as open should be checked with a check mark. To set the days your salon & spa is open, refer to the **Salon & Spa Days Open** section later in this chapter.

- Click the boxes to set an operators weekly schedule.

A check mark in a box indicates that the operator is scheduled to work that day.

Setting an operators hourly work schedule:

- 1 Click the **Schedule** button.
The **Schedule** window appears.

Operator Information

8 | Hermes | ☒ Male ☐ Female

Title | Body Therapist

☐ No Appointments

First Name | Hermes | Last Name | Argos

Street Address | 7 Theogony | Start Date |

City | Olympia | State | CA | Zip Code | 90000

Phone Number | (310) 955-5512 | Soc Sec Number | 777-77-7777

Cell Phone Number | 310-562-9999 | Driver's License | ZEUS24TB

Cell Provider |

Select cell provider | Cell Providers | Operator Enrollment | School Schedule

Biography

Accept

Schedule

Op Groups

Room Pref

Cancel

This window is for setting an operator's daily schedule. You can have as many as three total schedules set up for each operator. This allows you to set up custom schedules or seasonal schedules that you can simply switch to without having to re-input a client's schedule.

To set an operator's daily hours:

- 1 Select the time on an operator's day to begin the day

Select Start Time

Sun Mon

7:00A 8:30P 7:00A 8:30P

Select Stop Time

- 2 Select the time to end the day as well (as shown above.)
- 3 When the buttons have been selected a scroll menu appears that allows you to choose any time to start and stop for this operator.
- 4 Once you have chosen start and stop times for each day of the week that your Operator works, you can select "Exit" and you will be prompted if you would like to save the changes made to your "Standard Schedule." Because this is the Standard Schedule you have just created, the answer to this question is "Yes."

To set an Alternate Schedule

You will notice four "tabs" in the schedule window. **1. Standard Sched-**

ule, 2. Blockouts, 3. Alternate 1, 4. Alternate 2.

- 1 Select Alternate 1.
- 2 Make scheduling changes the same way you did to set the original schedule in the 7 days of the week across the top.
- 3 You can then apply these changes at any time simply by selecting the "alternate" of your choice (1) or (2) and applying it to days, weeks, or months. The same way you did on the previous page.
- 4 You must now select how this alternate schedule will apply itself, and for how long, i.e. "every other week" and "till 01/01/2015." Then select "Exit." You can then save the changes made to this schedule.

Modifying an Operators ID

This section describes how to modify or replace an operator's ID.

To modify or replace an operator's ID:

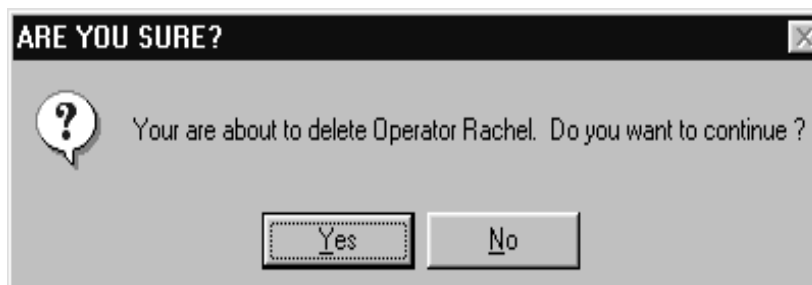
- 1 While in the Operator ID window, click the **Modify Op Name** setting.
- 2 Click to highlight the **Operator ID** you want to change.
The cursor moves to the text box.
- 3 Type in the **New Operator ID**.
- 4 Press **Enter**.

The new ID now replaces the old ID.

Deleting an Operator

To delete an operator:

- 1 While in the **Operator ID** window, click the **Delete Operator** setting.
The Delete Operator setting turns red.
- 2 Click an **Operator's Name**.
A warning message window appears.



DO NOT click **Yes** unless you are sure that you want to delete this Operator. All data associated with this Operator will be shown as "Not Current" once your data. **BE SURE YOU DO A BACKUP PRIOR TO DELETING AN OPERATOR.** Also, if you backup to a separate media that you will not copy over, you can use this backup as an archive if you ever need it.

Adding Your Salon's or Spa's Services

This section describes how to set up your salon & spa services, prices and times.

Overview:

- Create a Group(s)
- Add Services to Groups
- Add Prices & Times to Services

To add a Group:

- 1 Choose **Salon & Spa Services** from the **Setup** menu.
The **Services** window now appears.

The top text field is for entering a new group or modifying a group. As you add groups they appear in the list box.

- 2 Type in a **Group Name** and press the **Enter** key.
The cursor then moves to the **Service Name** window.

To delete or modify a Group:

Note: If you are deleting a group be sure to first delete all the services for that group.

- 1 Click the **Modify Group Name** checkbox.
- 2 Click to select the **Group** you wish to modify or delete. The **Modify Group Name** window appears.
- 3 Type in the modification in the text field.
If you are deleting the group name leave the text box blank.

- 4 Press the **Enter** key on your keyboard or click the Accept button.

Adding Services to Groups

This section describes how to add services to groups. If you are continuing from the previous section, go to step 1. If you are starting from the *ProSolutions* main menu, you need to select **Salon & Spa Services** from the **Setup** menu.

To add a service to a group:

- 1 Choose a group from the **Group Name** list box.
The cursor will appear in the **Service Name** field and any services you had previously added (if any) will appear below it.
- 2 Service names should include a short code detailing what Group they are in, i.e. H for Hair. Services under this group could be H-Men's hair cut; H-Women's haircut, H-Child's haircut. This way the services will be alphabetized together even though the service names are different.
- 3 Type a service name into the field, then press **Enter**.
You can continue adding services to this group, modify a service by selecting the **Modify Name** setting, or proceed to the next section.

Sales tax note: Some states require sales tax to be charged to certain types of services. If you need to charge tax on a particular service but not all of your services the services you wish to NOT have tax on must contain an asterisk (i.e., *EuroFacial, etc.). This way when processing a sale the appropriate service tax rate will be added whenever you sell this service. To set a service tax rate: See 'Sales Tax Rates' in this Chapter.

To modify a service name:

- 1 Click the **Modify Service Name** checkbox.
- 2 Click to select the **Service** you wish to modify.
- 3 Type in the new service name
- 4 Press the **Enter** key on your keyboard.

To Delete a service:

- 1 In the Salon/Spa Services window you will see a "Delete" button on the lower right.
- 2 This button will not be activated until you have chosen a group and highlighted (left clicked on) a service you wish to delete.
- 3 Once the service is highlighted (by left clicking) you will be able to use the Delete button to remove this service from your services list and history.

To Add Color to a Service or Group:

- 1 For a Group, choose the group you wish to colorize
- 2 Click on the large square below the group entitled GROUP COLOR
- 3 A color template will appear. Choose the color you wish for this group. All services within this group that do not have their own individual color will default to this color.

- 4 For a Service, choose the group the service is in that you wish to colorize.
- 5 Highlight the service by "left" clicking on it.
- 6 Click the large box below that says "Service Color"
- 7 A color template will appear. Choose the color you wish for this service. Each time this service is booked, it will have this color as its default.

Service Formulas

Assign the services that require formula information by placing a check mark in the "**Uses Formula**" check box under the Service Price. Then select the button on the right that says "**Standard Formulas**"

The **Service Formulas** window appears.

- 8 The cursor will automatically be in the "**Instructions**" window and you can list any detailed instructions for the formula here
- 9 Next you will select the first item of professional use inventory for this formula and put in the SKU number, the Quantity, the units of measurement, and a brief description. You will do this for each item of inventory that is used for the formula. Simply press the button "Add Line" each time you need to add additional items. If you make a mistake, simply highlight the line and select "Del Line".

Setting Service Prices & Times

This section covers how to set the pricing and length of time for a service. If you are continuing from the previous section, go to step 1. If you are starting from the main menu you need to select **Salon & Spa Services** from the **Setup** menu, select a **Group**, and then choose a **Service**.

To add prices and times for a service:

- 1 Choose a **Service**.

You will see four tabs, "Prices", "Times", "Rooms" and Equipment.

The screenshot shows the 'SERVICES' window with the 'Prices' tab selected. On the left, under 'Group Name', 'Face' is selected. Under 'Service Name', 'Fcollagen' is selected from a list. The main area shows 'Fcollagen' with a 'Spa Price' of 20.00. There are checkboxes for 'Uses a Formula' and 'Do not discount'. Below that is 'Esthetician Price' with a dropdown menu. At the bottom, there is a 'Price' field with a scroll bar and a checkbox for 'Esthetician does not do this Service'. On the right side of the window are buttons: 'Cancel', 'Std Formulas', 'Price List', 'Group Mem.', 'New', 'Delete', and 'Save'.

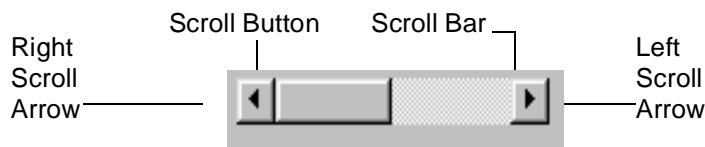
At the top is the Group heading, below is the service you selected.

The **Price** tab should be selected and the name of the service you have hi-lited will be in blue letters above the "**Salon/Spa Price.**" You should then type in the exact cost of the service including decimal point. However, if you wish you can use the scroll bar to set the price as well. Then you can select the "**Time**" tab.

To change prices with the scroll bar:

- 1 Clicking either of the scroll arrows will add to or subtract from the price in dollar increments.

Clicking inside of the scroll bar on either side of the scroll button adds or subtracts in ten dollar increments. See illustration.



Experiment now with the scroll bar to get a feel for it.

Value Added Tax for Services "VAT"

The Value Added Tax, for Nations that require it, must be enabled in order to set the VAT for individual services. To enable, go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [General]** and place a check in the box next to **Enable VAT**.

- In the above Groups and Services window, simply select the **VAT RATES** button found in the lower left hand corner of the Services Window. Another VAT RATE WINDOW will appear. See below:

- Choose the Group, or "ALL GROUPS"
- Check the services that will have the VAT applied.
- Enter the VAT Rate for these services.

SET SERVICE VAT RATES

Group: Massage

Service:

- ☒ M-25 In Room M
- ☒ M-50 In Room M
- ☐ M-50 Soothing S
- ☒ M-50 Tandem M
- ☐ M-50Aqua Signa
- ☒ M-50Maternity
- ☒ M-50Therapeutic
- ☐ M-80 In Room M

VAT: 17.5

Set Rate Cancel

- Press **SET RATE**.
- Services can also have Global VAT meaning every one has the same rather than individual VAT's. To do this, simply choose "All Groups" and check every service listed. Then enter the VAT Rate and press **SET RATE**.

To set a time for a service:

- 2 Clicking either of the scroll arrows will add or subtract fifteen minutes to the Time for Appointment, unless the default time spacing was changed during initialization. Click inside the scroll bar to add or subtract in one hour intervals. Unlike the price field, times can only be set by using the time scroll bar. You can now "Save" if this service does not require a room or equipment. If it does, do not "Save" until the service is fully set up.

Booking Types

The bottom of the times window is where you designate a booking type. **Single Only** is the default booking-type.

About Twin Book Type

If you select Twin Book, you are designating that this particular service can have other services overlapping it or even booked at the same starting time.

About Double Book Type

A *Tint* is good example of a double book type of service. Since a *Tint* starts

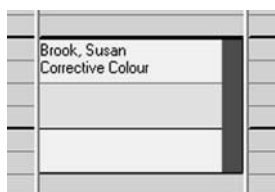
out with the application of chemicals, *Prosolutions* refers to this period as the double book delay time. The time left open during the *Tint* while the client sits with chemicals applied to their hair is the open time. During this time, the operator has a time slot open to see another client. The client could also have another service done such as a manicure.

To set a Double Book Type:

- 3 Click the **Double** setting.

The screenshot shows the 'SERVICES' window with the 'Times' tab selected. The 'Group Name' is 'Hair' and the 'Service Name' is 'Cut'. The 'Spa/Esthetician' is 'Spa Time'. The 'Total Time' is set to '1:00'. The 'Double' radio button is selected under the 'Single', 'Twin', and 'Double' options. The 'Service Color' is a grey swatch. The 'Prices' tab is also visible, showing a vertical bar chart for the 'Cut' service.

- There are three scroll bars listed when **Double** is selected. The first is "**Total Time**", this is the total amount of time that the client will be receiving this service, i.e. 1 hour for a Tint.
- The second is "**Delay Time**" this is the time that the Operator is actually putting the chemicals into the clients hair. In the above illustration, this takes 15 minutes. In a spa environment, this time may be used for client prep.
- The third is the "**Open Time**", this is the amount of time that the client is processing the chemical (hair drier time, etc.) This time is available for the Operator to see another client and perform another service. Or perform another service on the same client, for example a manicure.
- Finally, there is a bar to the left of the three scroll bars that shows the "**booked**" time in blue for the chemical and finishing time, and the "**open**" time in yellow where another service can be booked. This is how it will appear on the appointment book.
- When set properly, the appointment on the appointment book will look something like this:



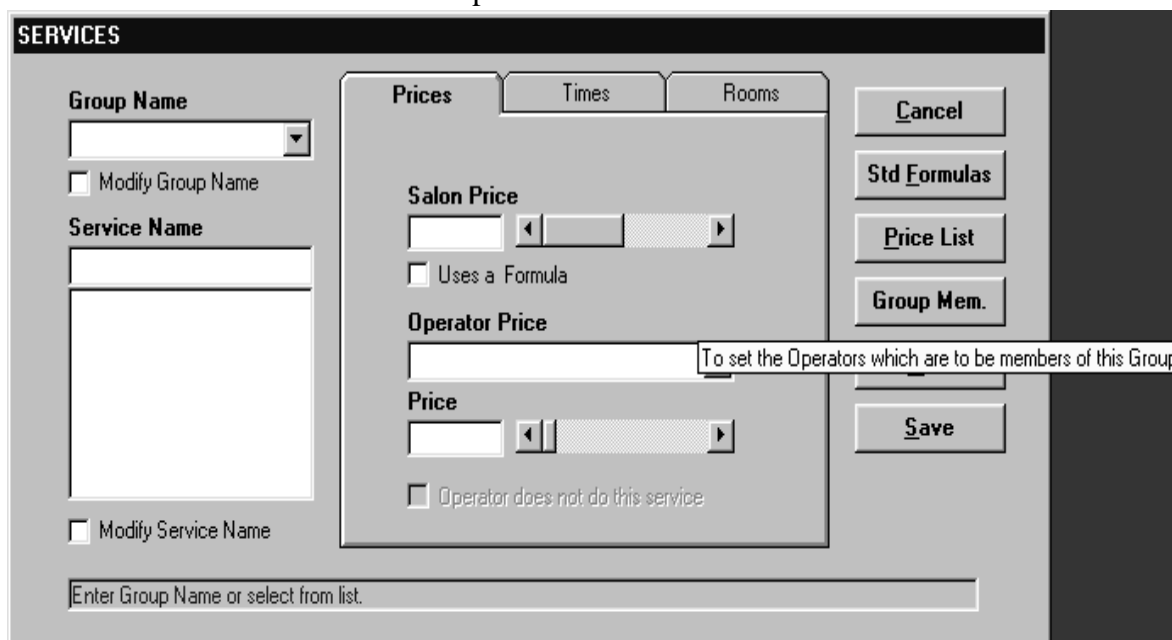
ProSolutions has many powerful features and allows flexibility for fine-tuning the system. We suggest you go through the Appointments Chapter to get a thorough understanding of the appointment features before investing anymore time setting up service times and booking types. Experiment to find what works best for your salon or spa. All the settings made during this section can be easily modified by following the steps outlined. To learn more about the appointment features, see **Chapter 5, Appointments**.

Assigning Operators to Groups

This section covers how to assign your operators to service groups. All operators who provide services (i.e. not receptionists) must be assigned to at least one group. If you are going to book out rooms such as a massage room you also need to assign the room to the service group.

Two Ways to Assign Operators to Groups

There are two ways to assign operators to groups. The first is during the setup of Groups and Services in the **Salon & Spa Services** window. On the right side of the window you will notice an option entitled "**Group Mem**" as in the picture below.

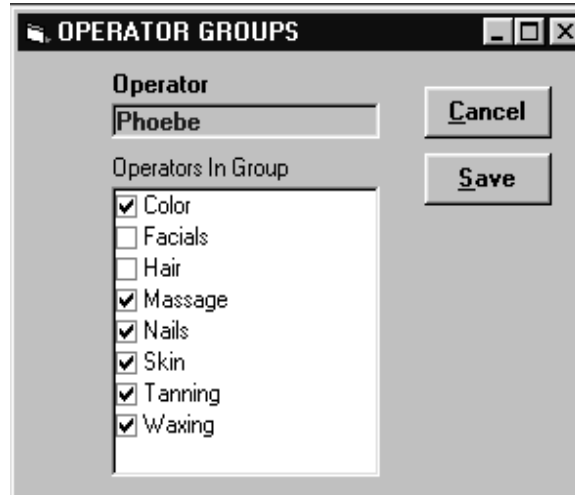


Once "**Group Mem**" is selected, the following window will appear:

In this window, you place a check mark (by left clicking with the mouse) into the box to the left of each Operator's name (including rooms and equipment) that will be accepting appointments in the group that you have selected. You will do this for each group until all Operators and rooms have been assigned.

The second way to assign Operators to a group is within the "**Operator Information**" window. From the main menu select [**Setup**] [**Operator Files**] and the "Operator Files" window will appear. Simply highlight the Operator's name or the room that you wish to assign and you will be taken to the "Operator Information" window, note the button that says "**Op Groups**" on the right hand side of the window below:

When you select the "Op Groups" button, a list of the groups that you have input will appear and you must put a check (by left clicking with the mouse) into each box that corresponds to the group that you wish to assign this Operator. The "Op Groups" window appears as follows:



That's all there is to it. You are now ready to book appointments for this Operator or room.

Services With Rooms

This setting is for assigning rooms to services that are performed in that room. For instance, if you had a massage room and you wanted to assign a room whenever booking a massage appointment, then you would need to assign all your massage services to that room. The following illustrates how to assign services to rooms.

Note: Before you can assign a room you must first add a room. Rooms are added in the same way that an operator is added. For more information on adding rooms: See *"Adding Operators/Rooms"* earlier in this Chapter.

In addition you need to assign the room to the group of services that the room is used for. This is done the same way that an operator is assigned to a group of services that they offer. To see how to assign a room to a group of services: See *"Assigning Operators to Groups"* earlier in this Chapter.

- 1 In the same **"Salon & Spa Services"** window, you must select a Group and a service that you wish to assign to a room.
- 2 Click on the **"Rooms"** tab and check each room that this service can be performed in. If no rooms show up, you either have not created rooms (See *"Adding Operators/Rooms"* in this Chapter) Or you have not assigned rooms to the group that this service is part of. (See *"Assigning Operators/Rooms, earlier in this Chapter"*)
- 3 Click **"Save"** once all of the applicable rooms have been checked

Services With Equipment

This setting is for assigning equipment to services such as a "microderm machine" or a "laser" that are limited in quantity so must be tracked. For instance, if you had a laser tech and a room available but no more laser hair removal machines available you would need to know that. Four Laser Technicians and three rooms but only one or two lasers can really hamper your ability to book meaningful appointments. The following illustrates how to assign services to equipment.

Note: Before you can assign equipment you must first add equipment into the system. Equipment is added in the same way that an operator is added. For more information on adding equipment: *See "Adding Operators/Rooms/Equipment" earlier in this Chapter.*

In addition you need to assign the equipment to the group of services that the equipment is used for. This is done the same way that an operator is assigned to a group of services that they offer. To see how to assign equipment to a group of services: *See "Assigning Operators to Groups" earlier in this Chapter.*

- 1 In the same "**Salon & Spa Services**" window, you must select a Group and a service that you wish to assign to equipment.
- 2 Click on the "**Equipment**" tab and check each item that this service must be performed with. If no equipment shows up, you either have not created equipment (*See "Adding Operators/Rooms/Equipment" in this Chapter*) Or you have not assigned equipment to the group that this service is part of. (*See "Assigning Operators/Rooms/Equipment, earlier in this Chapter*)
- 3 Click "**Save**" once all of the applicable rooms have been checked

Operator Service Prices and Times

This section describes how to set up an individual operator with their own service pricing and times. You only need to set individual operator prices and times if they differ from the standard salon & spa prices and time settings that have previously been entered.

To setup an individual operator's service prices and times:

- 1 From the **Setup** menu, select **Salon & Spa Services**.
- 2 Select the **Group** and the **Service** you wish to customize.
That service's salon & spa price and time appears to the right, with the name of the service in blue.

- 3 Under the **Salon & Spa Price** you will see "**Operator Price**". By using the scroll bar, you can choose your operator from a list of all operators that perform this service. Once the Operator has been selected, you simply put in the modified price in the "**Price**" box directly under the Operator's name. Once this is done, select the "**Save**" button in the lower right hand corner. That's all there is! This Operator now has his/her own price for this service that is separate from the standard salon & spa price!

Now for the Time

- 4 If you are still in the **Services** window with the Service selected, go to step 6. From the **Setup** menu, select **Salon & Spa Services**.
- 5 Select the **Group** and the **Service** you wish to customize.
That service's salon & spa price and time appears to the right, with the name of the service in blue. You will notice four tabs, **Price**, **Times**, **Rooms** and **Equipment**
- 6 Select the **Times** tab. This will bring up the following screen:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "SERVICES". It has four tabs: "Prices", "Times", "Rooms", and "Equipment". The "Times" tab is selected. On the left side, there's a "Group Name" dropdown set to "1 Hair" and a "Service Name" list with "Cut" selected. The main area displays "Cut" as the service, with a "Spa/Esthetician" dropdown and a "Spa Time" dropdown. Below these is a "Total Time" field showing "1:00" and radio buttons for "Single", "Twin", and "Double". On the right side, there are several buttons: "Cancel", "Std Formulas", "Price List", "Group Mem.", "New", "Delete", and "Save".

- 7 By using the scroll bar, you can choose your operator from a list of all operators that perform this service. Once the Operator has been selected, you simply put in the modified time directly under the Operator's name. Once this is done, select the **"Save"** button in the lower right hand corner. That's all there is! This Operator now has his/her own time for this service that is separate from the standard salon & spa time!

Be sure that the correct booking type was selected as well, i.e. **Single, Twin, Double**. See *"Booking Types"* earlier in this Chapter.

Gift Certificates

To set up Gift Certificate:

- From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Gift Certificates] [Setup]**

The **Gift Certificate Setup** window appears as follows:

GIFT CERTIFICATE SETUP

Code Branch Name
A Rachel & Co.

Next Cert # Starting Number
000136 000001

Expire Months
12

Return Envelope Position
X Y
1.50 6.00

Cancel
ACCEPT

The Code field refers to the location. This is only significant if you have more than one location. Main location appears as the default. If you have other locations enter the appropriate name.

The Next Certificate # field refers to the next certificate # to be sold. The Starting Number refers to the first certificate sold. You can update to a new starting number.

Important Note:

The Next Certificate number and the Starting Certificate number must be the same the first time you save the Gift Certificate file.

The expire Months field can be set to expire based on the number of months you enter, 12 months is the default.

The return Envelope Position field gives the X Y position that either the purchaser or recipients address will print to accommodate your type of envelopes.

To Customize Gift Certificate Packages:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Gift Certificates] [Packages]**.

The **Gift Certificates Package** window appears.

GIFT CERTIFICATE PACKAGES

Package Name: Code:

Package Description:

Price:

- 2 Type in the Package Name you want to appear on the Gift Certificate.
- 3 Enter a **one** letter or digit code, (you can have up to 36 total packages)
- 4 Type in a description of the package, this is optional.
- 5 Enter the Price.
- 6 Press Accept

Setting up a Series

A "SERIES" is a set of a single service to be sold all at once. For example, 5 European Facials or 10 Tanning Bed Sessions, etc. This section describes how to set up a Series. You will name the series, select the services to be included, and choose the quantity of services to be included in the series. After setting up a series, you can sell and redeem the Series at the **Point of Sale** window.

To add or modify a Series:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [General] [Series]**. The **Series window** appears.

SERIES

Series Name: For Service:

Quantity: Total Price: Value Each:

☐ Modify

In this window, you can either add a new Series or modify an existing Series. The **Value Each** field represents the standard salon & spa price with or without a discount so that the value of each service can be referenced.

- 2 Type in the name of the New Series in the **Series Name** field.
- 3 Select the Service you want to be included in the Series.
- 4 Select the Quantity of services this Series will represent.
- 5 Apply the Discount percentage (if any).
- 6 Click the **Accept** button.

To Modify a Series:

- 1 Check the **Modify** check box.
- 2 Choose the series you would like to modify.
- 3 Make the necessary changes.
- 4 Click the **Accept** button.

The changes will then be saved.

Coupons

Coupon Codes will allow you to set up a percentage or dollar amount to discount a particular coupon. For example you may want to offer a coupon worth 10% off any purchase. You may also want to place the coupon in a local newspaper and track the results. Both can be done with *ProSolutions*.

To set up a coupon code to be associated with a discount:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Sales Register] [**
- 2 Select **Coupon Codes**.

The **Coupon Codes** window appears.

Choose one of the buttons either Amt. for a dollar amount discount, or % for a percentage discount.

- 3 Enter a coupon code.

The code can be a single letter or number. This code will be used at the sales screen to apply whatever discount you set for this coupon. The cou-

pon description could be the same as one of your coupon types or not.

- 4 Select the discount type: Dollar Amount or Percentage.
- 5 Click **Accept** when you are finished entering the coupon.

The following is an overview of how the coupon codes are entered at the sales screen. There is an advanced preference setting “**Enter coupon code on discount**” that must be turned on if you want to use this feature: See “*Advanced Settings Preferences*” in this Chapter

To apply a discount at the Point of Sale, you simply highlight the transaction and several options will appear, one of these options will be “**Discounts**” click on this button. When applying a discount at the point of sale the **Discounts** window appears.

Enter the coupon code here: For example the letter S could refer to your “Super Saver” coupon type and be worth a 10% discount. You can use the “list box” to select the coupon if you don’t know the code.

After applying the discount the service in this case would appear as follows:

CLIENT NAME	OPERATOR	SERVICE	PRICE
Franco Deanne	Chandler	HC-Men	20.00
Franco Deanne	Chandler	HC-Men	Dsc {M2} -2.00

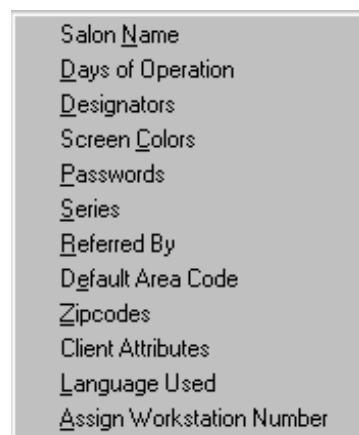
This line represents the discount.

The code (M2) is displayed.

Modifying General Configuration Settings

- Choose [Setup] [Configuration] [General].

The **General Configuration** menu appears.



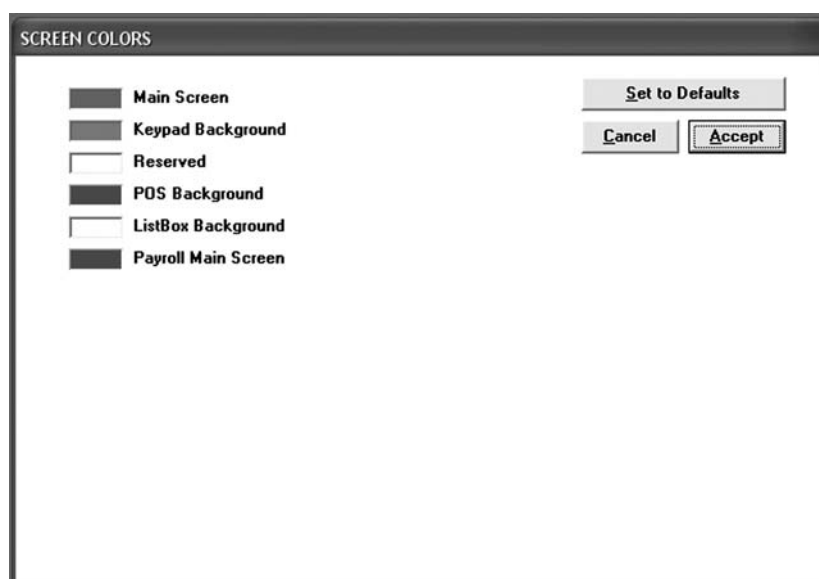
The next section describes the various General configuration options.

Changing Screen Colors

To change the colors for the main screen background, listbox background and payroll screen you use the Screen Colors option from the Setup menu. You can customize most of the screen colors you see throughout *ProSolutions*. The screen colors for services can be changed in the "Add Service field window" and to change the various colors used by the appointment book you can select these colors through the Appointment Book itself (Chapter 5 Appointments.) *ProSolutions* is set to show the default color settings. You can modify screen color settings or reset the colors back to the default color setting at anytime, so feel free to experiment.

- 1 From the **General Configuration** menu select **Screen Colors**.

The **Screen Color Settings** window now appears.

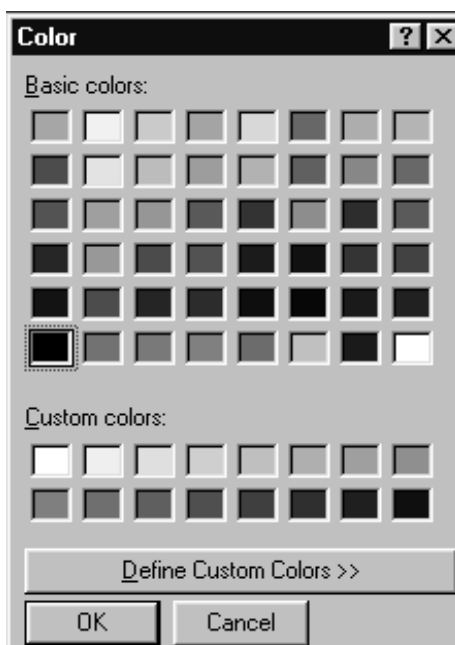


The screen color settings window contains a column of color settings. The reserved space is for future upgrades and modifications to *ProSolutions*.

To change a color setting:

- 1 Click a **Color Box**. Reserved boxes can be changed but will have no effect on the program.

The **color** box appears.



The color window is a palette of colors. The top group of colors is labeled “Basic Colors”, the bottom group are “Custom Colors”. Pick a color from either group.

Notice that the black color setting has a dotted line around it.

Once you enter the color window you must select a color or *ProSolutions* will change that screen color to black by default.

To choose a new color:

- 1 Click one of the **Colors** in the **Basic Colors** area.
- 2 That color now has the dotted line around it, Click **OK**.
- 3 If you would like to save your changes, click **Accept**. If you do not want to save, click **Cancel**.
- 4 To reset the settings back to there default settings click **Set to Defaults**.

Modifying your salon & spa name

To modify your Salon & Spa name:

- 1 From the main menu select **[Setup] [Configuration] [General] [Salon & Spa Name]**.

The **Salon & Spa Name & Address** window appears.

SALON NAME AND ADDRESS

Salon Name
Manual Salon

Street Address
3375 Motor Ave.

City State Zipcode
Los Angeles CA 90034

Area Phone No.
310 837-2091

Cancel
Accept

- 2 Make any changes you wish at this screen for your Salon & Spa name, address, telephone number etc..
- 3 To save, click **Accept**.

Default Area Code

To add or modify your default area code:

- 1 From the main menu select **[Setup] [Configuration] [General]** Select **"Default Area Code"**
The **Default Area Code** window appears.

DEFAULT AREA CODE

Area Code
310

Cancel
Accept

- 2 Type in your Area Code.
- 3 Click the **Accept** button.
- 4 This area code will be automatically inserted and formatted upon entering a phone number.

To select the Hours of Operation:

- 1 From the main menu select **[Setup] [Configuration] [General]** Select **Hours of Operation**
The **Hours of Operation** window appears.

	START	STOP	CLOSED
SUNDAY			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
MONDAY	8:00 AM	10:00 PM	<input type="checkbox"/>
TUESDAY	8:00 AM	10:00 PM	<input type="checkbox"/>
WEDNESDAY	8:00 AM	10:00 PM	<input type="checkbox"/>
THURSDAY	8:00 AM	10:00 PM	<input type="checkbox"/>
FRIDAY	8:00 AM	10:00 PM	<input type="checkbox"/>
SATURDAY	8:00 AM	10:00 PM	<input type="checkbox"/>

Buttons: **Accept**, **Cancel**

Use Time: 8:00 AM ▼

By default *ProSolutions* selects all days open. A check mark indicates that the salon & spa is closed on that day.

- 2 Make any necessary modifications.

To remove the check mark, click one of the boxes. When you remove a check mark, you have set that day as open.

- 3 When the check boxes have been set correctly for your salon & spa, click **Accept** to save these settings.

Receipt Layout

The first thing to determine is the width of your receipts. If you are using a Thermal receipt printer the width is 3.0, for Dot Matrix is 2.75 and for Report Printers it is 7.5

To change your Receipt Layout:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Sales Register] [Receipt Layout]**

The Receipt Layout window appears:

RECEIPT LAYOUT

Salutation (Top of Receipt)

It's wonderful to see you.

Trailer (Bottom of Receipt)

Have a brilliant week

10% off next purchase!

3.000 Receipt Width (in Inches):

0 Start number of lines from top:

- ☐ Print TravelCard No. on Receipt
- ☐ Print Spa/Client Address on Receipt
- ☐ Print blank lines after Customer Info
- ☐ Print blank lines at end of receipt
- ☐ Print "Paid On Account" as "Balance Due" on receipt
- ☐ Add Authorization line on receipt on Gift redemption
- ☐ Auto-Print Duplicate Receipt
- ☐ Print receipt on voided transaction
- ☐ Print Signature Line on receipt if Hotel Charge
- ☐ Print Duplicate Receipt if Hotel Charge

- 2 Depending on your printer and the type of receipts you'll be printing, enter in the receipt width. Most receipt printer widths are **3.000**
- 3 Type in any **Salutations** and/or **Trailer** messages you would like to appear on the receipt.
- 4 Place a check mark in the applicable preferences at the bottom of the window and be sure to check "**Print Blank Lines at End of Receipt**". This will advance your paper to be ready for the next receipt.
- 5 Click the **Accept** button to save your entries.
- 6 Next, go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Printer/Cash Drawers]** and place a check in the box that says (**Use Receipt Width as Max Width**)
- 7 Click the **Save** button.

Note: It may be necessary to set particular preference setting to get the format correct for an individual printer:

Entering Credit Card Types

This section describes how to enter the credit cards that are accepted at your business.

To enter a Credit Card name:

- 1 Go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Sales Register] [Credit Cards Accepted]**

The **Credit Cards Accepted** window appears. (First time in, it will be empty with no credit cards selected.)

A dialog box titled "Credit Cards" with a light gray background. At the top, there is a text box labeled "Card Name". Below it is a list box containing the following credit card types: MasterCard, Visa, American Express, Diners, and Discover. At the bottom left, there is a checkbox labeled "Modify Name". At the bottom right, there is a button labeled "Done".

Credit Cards

Card Name

MasterCard
Visa
American Express
Diners
Discover

☐ **Modify Name**

Done

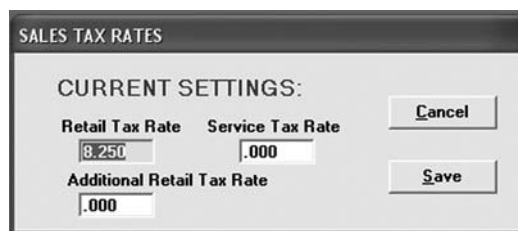
- 2 Enter the credit card name in the **Card Name** text box.
- 3 Press the **Enter** key.
- 4 Continue this process for each card you accept at your salon/spa so that these options will be available to you at the Point of Sale.

Sales Tax Rates

To set and/or modify sales tax rates:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Sales Register] [Sales Tax Rates]**

The **Sales Tax Rates** window appears.

A dialog box titled "SALES TAX RATES" with a light gray background. It contains a section labeled "CURRENT SETTINGS:" with three text boxes: "Retail Tax Rate" (containing 8.250), "Service Tax Rate" (containing .000), and "Additional Retail Tax Rate" (containing .000). To the right of these text boxes are two buttons: "Cancel" and "Save".

SALES TAX RATES

CURRENT SETTINGS:

Retail Tax Rate	Service Tax Rate
8.250	.000

Additional Retail Tax Rate

.000

Cancel **Save**

- 2 In the **Retail Tax Rate** field, enter the new tax rate.
- 3 If your state requires sales tax to be charged on services, enter the tax rate in the **Service Tax Rate** field.
- 4 The "Additional Retail Tax Rate" was originally included for New York wherein an "additional" sales tax was added to apparel sales over \$100.00.
- 5 Click the **Save** button to save your entries.

Value Added Tax VAT

After following the instructions below, go to Chapter 4 for INVENTORY or to "Value Added Tax for Services" earlier in this Chapter for SERVICES.

First, you must *enable* the VAT portion of the software:

- 1 Go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [General]**
- 2 Place a check in the box next to **ENABLE VAT**
- 3 Select Save.

Next, you will wish to set your Point of Sale Type (POS Type) to the United Kingdom and set the new currency.

- 1 Go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Sales Register] [POS Type]** and the POS type window will appear.



The screenshot shows a window titled "POS TYPE". At the top right, there are two buttons: "Currency" and "Save". Below these buttons is a list of countries, each preceded by a radio button. The countries listed are: Australia, Austria, Belgium, Canada, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Italy, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Russia, Spain, Sweden, and United Kingdom. The radio button next to "United Kingdom" is selected, indicated by a dot inside the circle.

- 2 Place a dot in the radio button next to *United Kingdom* for example.
- 3 Press *Currency*. A New Currency window will appear.

Currency Settings

UNITED KINGDOM

Cur. Symbol

Cur. Name

Cur. Name Pl.

Denomination Name	Value
<input type="text" value="1p"/>	<input type="text" value=".01"/>
<input type="text" value="2p"/>	<input type="text" value=".02"/>
<input type="text" value="5p"/>	<input type="text" value=".05"/>
<input type="text" value="10p"/>	<input type="text" value=".10"/>
<input type="text" value="20p"/>	<input type="text" value=".20"/>
<input type="text" value="50p"/>	<input type="text" value=".50"/>
<input type="text" value="Pound Sterling"/>	<input type="text" value="1.00"/>
<input type="text" value="2 Pound Coin"/>	<input type="text" value="2.00"/>
<input type="text" value="5 Pound Note"/>	<input type="text" value="5.00"/>
<input type="text" value="10 Pound Note"/>	<input type="text" value="10.00"/>
<input type="text" value="20 Pound Note"/>	<input type="text" value="20.00"/>
<input type="text" value="50 Pound Note"/>	<input type="text" value="50.00"/>
<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value=""/>
<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value=""/>

*Please note that each field will be **BLANK** the first time you enter this window.*

- 4 Enter the denominations that apply to you, i.e. Pound Sterling, Penny, etc.
- 5 Enter the Value of each in correspondence to the base monetary value, i.e. If a Pound is 1.00 then a Penny would be .01, etc.
- 6 Enter the Currency Symbol you wish, **note: if using an American English keyboard press "Alt" and "1-5-6" on the keypad to the right to get the "£" sign.**
- 7 Enter the Currency Name.
- 8 Enter the Currency Name in Plural.
- 9 Press **SAVE**

Next you must set the value of the VAT for Inventory and Services.

note: if setting for services See "Value Added Tax for Services" under "Service Prices and Times" earlier in the this Chapter. If setting for Inventory, see Chapter 4.

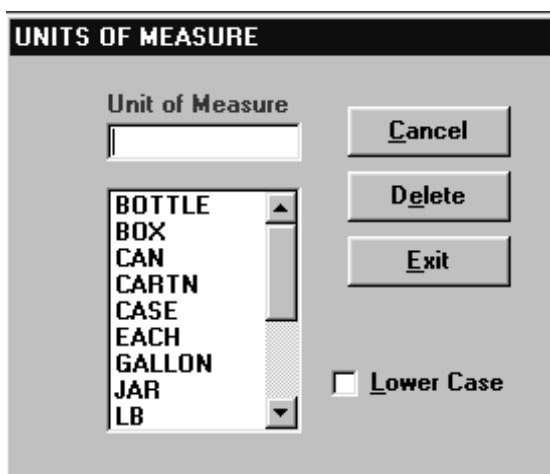
Units of Measure

You can add or delete different types of units of measure. These units are used with professional (back-bar) items.

To add or delete a Unit of Measure:

- 1 From the main menu, go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Inventory] [Units of Measure]** click.

The **Units of Measure** window appears.



- 2 In the **Units of Measure** text box, type a new Unit of Measure.
- 3 Press the **Enter** key.
- 4 To delete a unit, highlight the item you want to delete.
- 5 Click the **Delete** button.
- 6 When you are finished making changes, click "**Exit**"

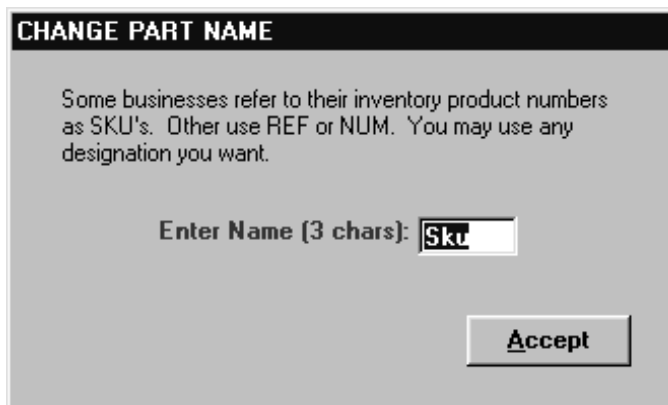
Changing Part Name

You can refer to your product part name using any three characters, for example if you refer to your parts as SKU's rather than our default NUM you should change the part name.

To Change a Part Name:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Inventory] [Change Part Name]** click.

The **Change Part Name** window appears.



CHANGE PART NAME

Some businesses refer to their inventory product numbers as SKU's. Other use REF or NUM. You may use any designation you want.

Enter Name (3 chars):

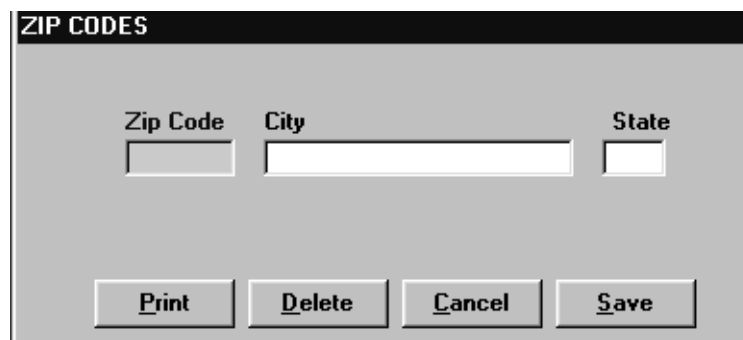
- 2 Type in any Three Characters.
- 3 Click **Accept**.

Zip Codes

As you add zip codes, *ProSolutions* will store the city and state. Zip Codes can be added in the options menu or anywhere that a zip code needs to be entered, such as the client files, the operator files, or vendor address files.

To save a zip code or modify a zip code:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [General] [Zip Codes]** click. The **Zip Codes** window will appear.



ZIP CODES

Zip Code	City	State
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

- 2 Enter the Zip Code, City and State.
- 3 Click the **Save** button.
- 4 When you are finished click the **Cancel** button.

Advanced Configuration Settings

The following settings are considered advanced. If you are just getting started these settings may or may not be significant until later on when you've had a chance to familiarize yourself with *ProSolutions's* basic functions. We do recommend you go through this section for future reference.

Set Appointment Operator Order

As you enter in your Operators (See "About Adding Operators" earlier in this Chapter) the order that they appear on the appointment book will be in the same order as you had entered them originally. You can configure a different order by using this feature.

To set the appointment operator order:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Appointments] [Day View] [Settings] [Set Operator Order]** click:

The **Operator Appointment Display Order** window appears.



- 2 Select the operator you would like to appear first on the appointment book.
- 3 The operator will automatically be shifted over to the next window.
- 4 Continue clicking on the operators in the order you would like.
- 5 Click **Save**.

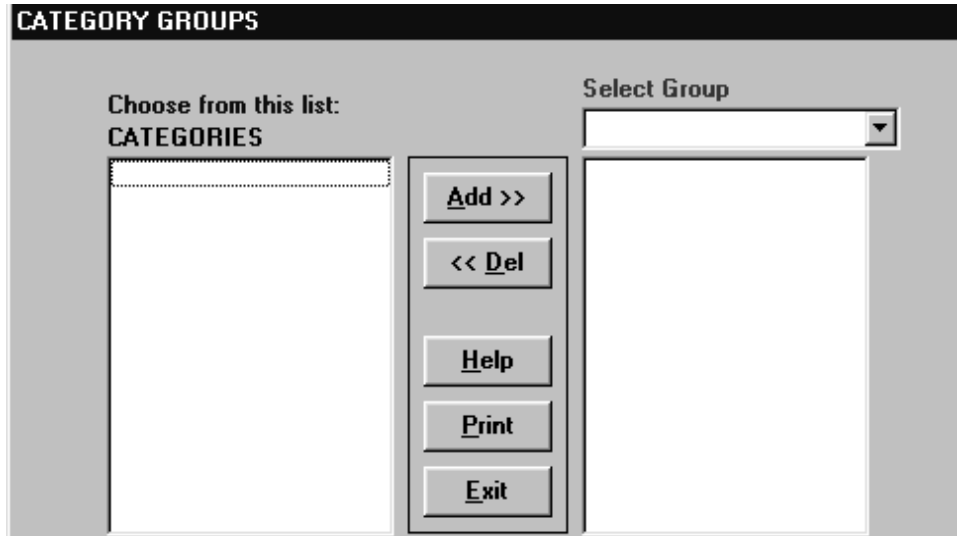
Category Groups

This feature allow you to departmentalize your product categories with your service groupings. This allows you to report on products as they relate to your service groups.

To departmentalize product categories with service groups:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Inventory] [Cat-**

Category Service Groups] click:



- 2 Select a service group from the **Select Group** list box.
- 3 After selecting a service group, a list of product categories will appear on the left side of the box. Click the product categories that you want to departmentalize with the selected service group.
As you select product categories they will be moved to the right.
- 4 After you have finished click the **Print** button to see how the category groups are set up.
- 5 To Print this report go to **[Reports] [Sales] [Retail Sales] [Product Sales by Department #101]**

To departmentalize product categories with retail groups

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Inventory] [Category Retail Groups]** click:
- 2 The Category Retail Groups window appears:

CATEGORY RETAIL GROUPS

Retail Category Group Name

Check all Categories that you want in this group

- ☐ accessories
- ☐ Brushes
- ☐ chakra
- ☐ Conditioner
- ☐ Fixative
- ☐ Hair Back Bar
- ☐ holiday promotions
- ☐ Intellect Nutrients
- ☐ Make-up
- ☐ Miscellaneous
- ☐ Nails
- ☐ Nails Back Bar
- ☐ Shampoo
- ☐ Singular Notes
- ☐ Skincare
- ☐ Styling Agent

Save
Delete
Show Selected
Exit

- 3 In this field, type the name of the group you wish to create.
- 4 Then place a check mark in the different Inventory categories you wish to add to this group.
- 5 Press Save. You may either create another or simply EXIT.

Setting Block-Out Names

- 1 From the main menu go to **[[Appointments] [Day View] [Settings] [Blockout Names]** click.

The **Blockout Names** window appears.

BLOCKOUT NAMES

Blockout Names

Add
Delete
Modify
Exit

- 2 To add a name type in a name then click the **Add** button.

- 3 To delete a name, highlight the name from the list box and then click the **Delete** button.
- 4 To modify a name, highlight the name from the list box and then click the **Modify** button and type in the new name. The new name will then appear in the list box and the old name will be gone.

Expanded Service Descriptions

Go to [Appointments] [Day View] [Settings] [Expanded Service Descriptions].

- The Expanded Service Descriptions window will appear:

- Use the scroll down bar to choose the service. Then in the description field, enter your Expanded Service Description. Press SAVE.
- In the Appointment DAY VIEW section, you can now press the EXPANDED SERVICE DESCRIPTION button for any service that has a description.

Expanded Service Description Button: _____

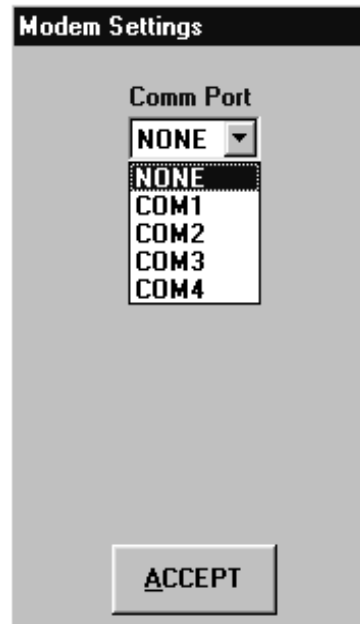
Modifying the Modem Settings

This section describes how to select the serial port your modem uses.

To choose a COM port for your Modem:

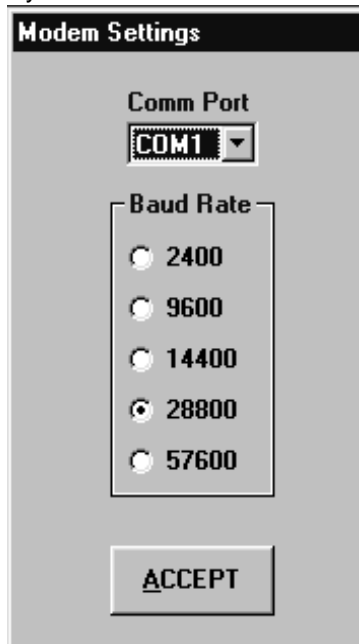
- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Sales Register] [Modem Port]** click.

The **Modem Settings** window appears.



- 2 Choose a Com Port.
A COM or serial port refers to the port that your modem is configured for. After choosing a COM port the list box will collapse, and the setting you chose will appear at the top.
- 3 Next, select the baud rate setting.
- 4 Different modems have different BAUD rates or speeds, you need to

determine your modems BAUD rate and enter it.



- 5 Click **Accept** after making your selections.

Modifying the Cash Register Settings

This section describes how to select the serial port your cash register uses. If you are not installing a serial cash drawer you want to leave this setting as None.

To choose a COM port for your cash register:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Sales Register] [Cash Drawer Port]** click.

The **Cash Register Port** window appears



- 2 Choose a com port.
A COM Port refers to the location of the serial port your cash drawer uses.

After choosing a COM port the list box will collapse, and the setting you chose will appear at the top.

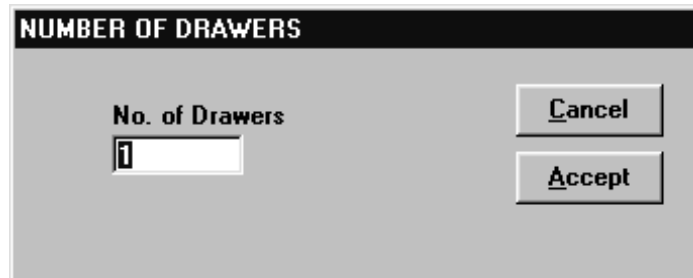
- 3 Click **Accept**.

Changing the Number of Drawers

To change the number of drawers:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Sales Register] [Number of Cash Drawers]** click.

The **Number of Drawers** window appears.



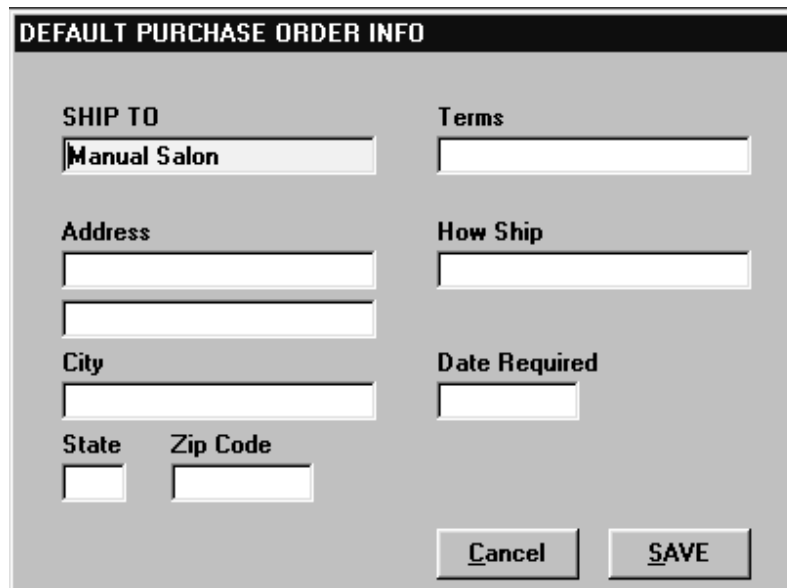
- 2 Enter the number of drawers you need.
- 3 Click the **Accept** button.

Default PO Info

You can save your salon & spa information to be printed on all purchase orders.

To set the default purchase order information:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Inventory] [Default Purchase Order Info]** click. The **Default Purchase Order Info** window appears.



- 2 Fill in your salon & spa/company information and click **Save**.

POS Type

By default the POS Type is set for the United States. You can select a different country and save alternative types of currency denominations if you are not in the United States.

To set the POS Type:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Sales Register] [POS Type]** click.

The **POS Type** window appears.



- 2 Select the Country.
- 3 Click **Save** when you are finished to exit.

System Preference Settings(General)

The preference settings allow for further customizing. A check next to a setting indicates that a setting is turned on. See illustration. Some settings are pre-checked. See below:



If you "check mark" an above preference you will automatically set the function that the preference describes. If you require further explanation of what an individual preference does, you should e-mail your question to "support@prosolutionssoftware.com" and we will be happy to respond with a more in-depth description. However, the titles are very self-explanatory.

The Appointment Preferences window:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Appointments]**.

The **Appointments Preferences** window will appear.

APPOINTMENT SETTINGS

Day/Week View Screen Options

- ☒ Show Esthetician's Appts if Working Curr. Day
- ☒ Show All Ops in a Group in Day View
- ☒ Auto-set view time in Day View
- ☒ Use "X"s instead of color bar to indicate checkins/checkouts
- ☒ "X" All Client Appointments on Check-Out
- ☐ Auto-Show Long Service Descriptions (If Note field not blank)
- ☐ Display Name by First Name first (else, Last Name first)

Booking Options

- ☒ Auto-book Room if Only One Available
- ☐ Give Option to Book Even if No Room or Op Available
- ☐ Always Use First Available Room without a Prompt
- ☐ Check for Appointments Already Booked
- ☐ Prompt for "No-Show" only if past appointment scheduled time
- ☐ Allow Credit Card Requirement Over-ride on Booking (for above)
- ☐ Always use Package Times in Multi-Book
- ☐ Warn if Try to Book Prior to Current Date
- ☐ Enable Prompt for Late Charge for Appointment Cancellation
- ☐ Auto-Unbook if Marked as No-Show
- ☐ Default Auto-Book Search Range to Current Date Only
- ☐ Auto-remove from Wait List if Booked within Date Range
- ☐ Check Waiting List at Time of Unbooking

Other Options

- ☐ Enable Appointment Logging
- ☐ Log Unbooked Appointments
- ☐ Set "Auto-Standing" to be checked by default in Standing Appointments
- ☒ Auto-Delete Appointments from Waiting List if Booked or Expired
- ☐ Enable Group Access Restrictions
- ☐ Warn if Late Check-In
- ☐ Enable Appointment Card Feature

Travel Card Options

- ☐ Print (2) formulas/Service on TravelCard
- ☐ Print Sequential Numbers on TravelCard
- ☐ Print TravelCard in Split Format (1/2 page)

Client Info Confirmations

- ☐ Confirm Client's Phone # After Booking
- ☐ Confirm Address, Phone and Email when booking
- ☐ Check Gender Requirements when Booking

Booking Requirements

- ☐ Require Address and Phone
- ☐ Require Phone
- ☐ Require Credit Card to be On File
- ☐ Require Email Address

Report Options

- ☐ Don't Print Phone #'s on Appointment Listing
- ☐ Don't Print Esthetician on Client Appt List

Sales Register Options

- ☐ Sort Curr Appts in Sales Register in Booking Order
- ☐ Charge if Attribute Present at POS

If you "check mark" an above preference you will automatically set the function that the preference describes. If you require further explanation of what an individual preference does, you should e-mail your question to "support@prosolutionssoftware.com" and we will be happy to respond with a more in-depth description. However, the titles are very self-explanatory.

The Inventory Preferences Window:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Inventory]**.

The **Inventory Preferences** window will appear.

INVENTORY SETTINGS

☐ Default Use Vendor Part #'s

☐ Alt. Inventory Index Names

☐ Do Not Print Salon Name on Product Labels

☐ Deduct Client Formulas from Inventory if Prompted

☐ Deduct Std. Formulas from Inventory

☐ Don't Change Price if Changed on Receiving

☐ Use UPC Barcode fonts

Save

If you "check mark" an above preference you will automatically set the function that the preference describes. If you require further explanation of what an individual preference does, you should e-mail your question to "support@prosolutionssoftware.com" and we will be happy to respond with a more in-depth description. However, the titles are very self-explanatory.

The Sales Register Preferences Window:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Sales Register]**.

The **Sales Register Preferences** window will appear.

SALES REGISTER SETTINGS

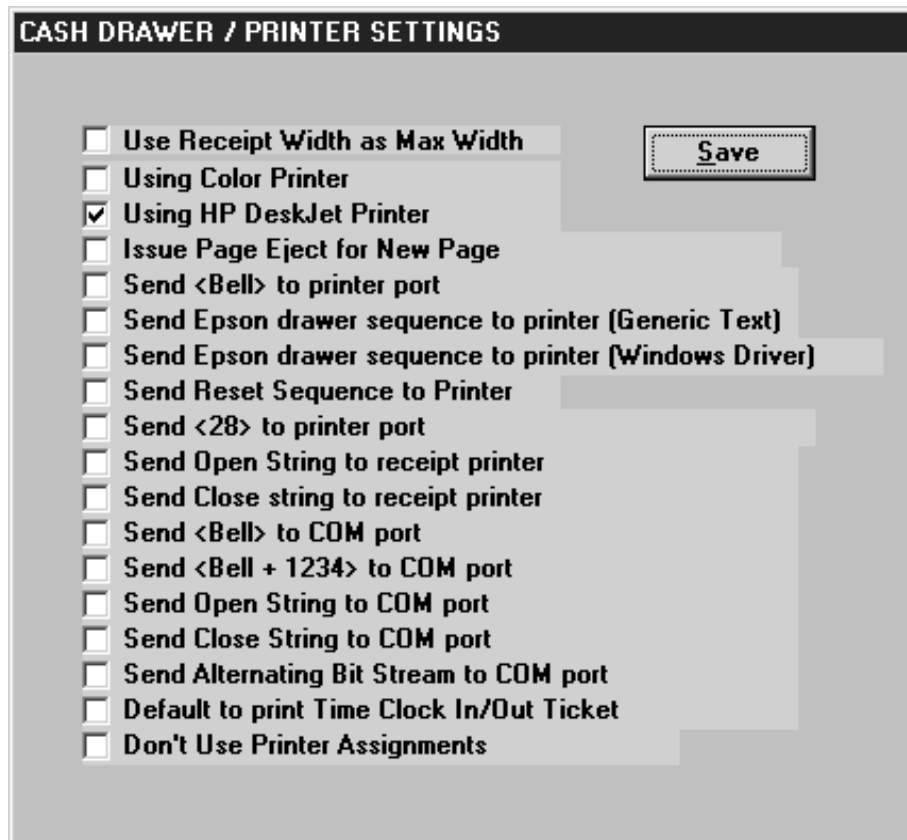
Register <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Prompt for Formula Input <input type="checkbox"/> Auto Apply Service Charge <input type="checkbox"/> Fast Retail Setting <input type="checkbox"/> Charge Professional Products <input type="checkbox"/> Require Cash Count to Open Register 	Buttons <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Hide TIPS button <input type="checkbox"/> Hide PROFESSIONAL button <input type="checkbox"/> Hide SERIES button <input type="checkbox"/> Hide MODIFY PRICE button 	Save
Discounts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Enter Coupon Code on Discount <input type="checkbox"/> Default Discount by \$ Amount <input type="checkbox"/> No Coupon Prompt for Retail Only <input type="checkbox"/> Apply Discounts before Distributing Tips 	Appointments <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Prompt for Appt Booking 	
Commissions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Prompt if Esth. Comm Not Selected <input type="checkbox"/> Use Last Retail Esthetician Lookup <input type="checkbox"/> Set Retail Comm to Serv. Esthetician <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Operator Collections <input type="checkbox"/> Use Sv Op for Comm with Auto-Retail 	Clients <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Prompt for Client Type <input type="checkbox"/> Alt. Client Type Names <input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Zipcode on Address Check <input type="checkbox"/> Do not allow One-Time at POS 	
Credit Card Processing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Do Credit Card Validation <input type="checkbox"/> Allow Void of Credit Card Transactions <input type="checkbox"/> Allow Last Used CC w/ ICVerify <input type="checkbox"/> Use Assigned Workstation Number for CC Processing <input type="checkbox"/> Use Cherry Keyboard with Swipe <input type="checkbox"/> Use ICVerify Keyswipe <input type="checkbox"/> Enable GO Credit Card Processing <input type="checkbox"/> Enable GO User Names <input type="checkbox"/> Enable GO Responce Logging <input type="checkbox"/> Default Update CC info 	Other Settings <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> No P.S.T. on Service Sales (Canada) <input type="checkbox"/> Check for Matching Series <input type="checkbox"/> Check for Any Series <input type="checkbox"/> Use series price if exact match <input type="checkbox"/> Display Custom Prompt at Register Sale <input type="checkbox"/> Always void GC if Transaction voided <input type="checkbox"/> Charge Tax on GC Sales <input type="checkbox"/> Charge Tax on Series Sales 	
Payment Screen <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Default "Payment Type" to not selected <input type="checkbox"/> Default payment tendered to \$0.00 <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Currency Type Tracking <input type="checkbox"/> Auto-Insert decimal point in pmt screen 	Gift Cards <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Gift Cards (Central Host Only) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Internet Gift Cert/Card Sales <input type="checkbox"/> Use Gift Card Number Edit Mask 	
	Receipts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Default Print Receipt <input type="checkbox"/> Print Newsletter Receipt <input type="checkbox"/> Use Report Printer for Receipts <input type="checkbox"/> Use Report Printer for CC Receipt <input type="checkbox"/> Auto-Receipt on Retail Sale <input type="checkbox"/> Print Client's Next Appt on Receipt <input type="checkbox"/> Fiscal Receipt 	

If you "check mark" an above preference you will automatically set the function that the preference describes. If you require further explanation of what an individual preference does, you should e-mail your question to "support@prosolutionssoftware.com" and we will be happy to respond with a more in-depth description. However, the titles are very self-explanatory.

The Printer/Cash Drawer Preferences:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Printer Cash Drawer]**.

The **Printer Cash Drawer Preferences** window will appear.



If you "check mark" an above preference you will automatically set the function that the preference describes. If you require further explanation of what an individual preference does, you should e-mail your question to "support@prosolutionssoftware.com" and we will be happy to respond with a more in-depth description. However, the titles are very self-explanatory.

The Clients Preferences Window:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Clients]**.

The **Clients Preferences** window will appear.

CLIENT FILE SETTINGS

- ☒ Default Lookup by First Name
- ☒ Default to 'More' on Client Add
- ☐ Default to 'Male' on Client Add
- ☐ Birthdate required
- ☐ Allow duplicate Client Names
- ☐ Default Salutation as Client 1st Name
- ☐ Auto Time-Stamp Client Notes
- ☐ Use Expanded Notes
- ☒ Enable Client Picture Display
- ☐ Wide View Client Picture
- ☐ Auto-size Client Picture
- ☐ Soc.Sec in Client Info Input

Save

If you "check mark" an above preference you will automatically set the function that the preference describes. If you require further explanation of what an individual preference does, you should e-mail your question to "support@prosolutionssoftware.com" and we will be happy to respond with a more in-depth description. However, the titles are very self-explanatory.

The Gift Certificates Preferences Window:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Gift Certificates]**.

The **Gift Certificates Preferences** window will appear.

GIFT CERTIFICATE SETTINGS

- ☐ Default GC 'PRINT OFF'
- ☐ Auto-add Gift Cert Recipient to DB
- ☐ Do not remind GC No Refund Policy
- ☐ Don't check for GC Sales Op
- ☐ Don't check for GC Mail To setting
- ☐ Hide Gift Certs
- ☐ Manually Assign Gift Certificate Numbers

Save

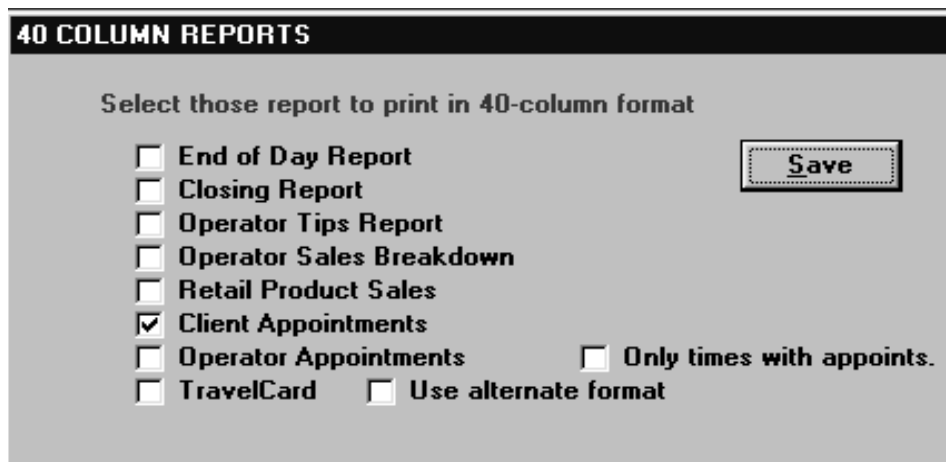
If you "check mark" an above preference you will automatically set the function that the preference describes. If you require further explanation of

what an individual preference does, you should e-mail your question to "support@prosolutionssoftware.com" and we will be happy to respond with a more in-depth description. However, the titles are very self-explanatory.

The 40 Column Report Preferences Window:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [40 Column Reports]**.

The **40 Column Reports Preferences** window will appear.



If you "check mark" an above preference you will automatically set the function that the preference describes. If you require further explanation of what an individual preference does, you should e-mail your question to "support@prosolutionssoftware.com" and we will be happy to respond with a more in-depth description. However, the titles are very self-explanatory.

Client Tracking Names & Items

Tracking Names are used to categorize and sort your clients. For example, if you wanted to track clients by hair color, you would set a tracking name called "Hair Color". Next, you would add tracking items such as Red, Blonde or Brunette. The following section will illustrate this example.

To create a Tracking name:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Tracking] [Add Tracking Names]** click .

The **Add Tracking Names** window appears.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Tracking". It is divided into two main sections: "TRACKING NAMES" on the left and "TRACK ITEMS" on the right. Under "TRACKING NAMES", there are several text input fields. The first three contain the text "Skin", "Hair Color", and "Memberships" respectively. The remaining four fields are empty. Under "TRACK ITEMS", there are corresponding dropdown menus for each tracking name. The first dropdown is empty, while the others are also empty. At the bottom right of the window, there are two buttons: "ACCEPT" and "Cancel".

The Tracking window has two columns. The left column is for Tracking Names such as hair color. The right column is for Tracking Items related to a Tracking Name such as Red, Blond or Brunette.

- 2 In the top **Tracking Name** text field, type a Tracking Name.
- 3 Press the **Tab** key.

This moves the cursor directly to the right in the adjacent **Tracking Items** text field.

- 4 Type a **Tracking item**, then press **Enter**.

Continue to enter all of your tracking items. You'll notice the Tracking Item disappears from view after you press enter.

- 5 Click the **Arrow** button next to the tracking item text box to view the tracking items that you have entered. See illustration.

This is a close-up view of the "Tracking" window. It focuses on the "Memberships" text box in the "TRACKING NAMES" column. Below it is an empty text box. In the "TRACK ITEMS" column, the dropdown menu is open, showing a list of items. The first item visible is "Unlimited Discount Corporate". An arrow points to the small downward-pointing arrow button next to the dropdown menu.

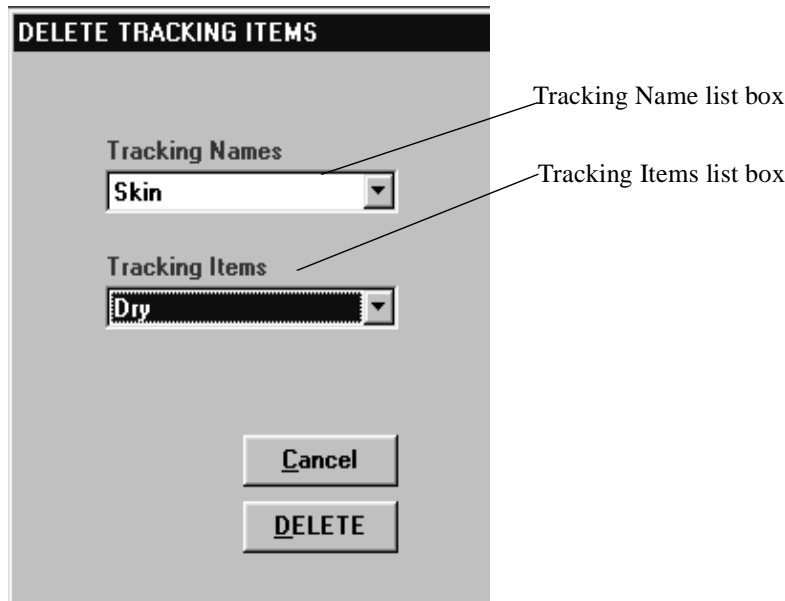
Click this arrow to see your list of tracking items.

- 6 To save, click **Accept**. If you do not wish to save, click **Cancel**.

To delete a Tracking Item:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Tracking] [Delete Tracking Names]** click .

The **DeleteTracking Names** window appears.



- 2 Choose the Tracking Name containing the tracking item you want to delete.

The **Tracking Items** list box will appear after selecting a tracking name.

- 3 Next choose the tracking item you want to delete.
- 4 After selecting the tracking item, click the **Delete** button.

After a few moments, the window will disappear and the tracking item is deleted.

Adding Referred By Types

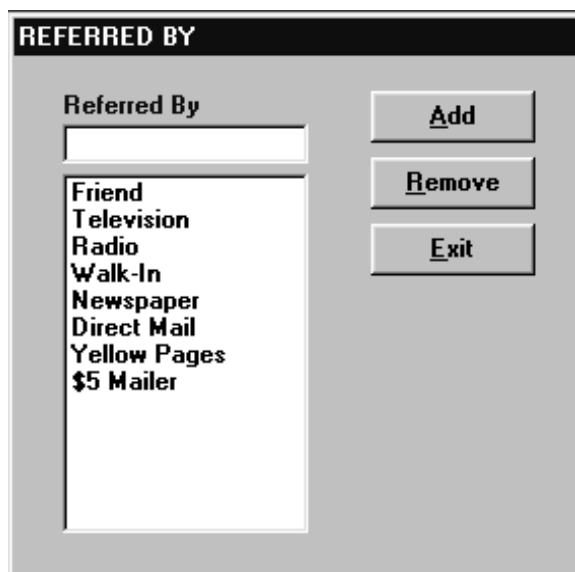
Referred By Types represent another way to categorize your clients. Referral types identify how a client heard of your salon & spa or operator such as “Walk-in” or “Yellow Pages”. *ProSolutions* comes with preset referral types which you can add to or delete. The following describes how to add and delete referral types.

To learn more about referral types: See ‘Referred By’ in Chapter , Page 100.

To add or delete Referral Types:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [General] [Referred By]**.

The **Referred By** window will appear:



At the top of this window is a text field to enter new referral types. Below the text field is a list box containing the current referral types.

- 2 Type a new referral type.
- 3 Click the **ADD** button.

The new referral type is added to the list.

- 4 Click **Exit** when you are finished.

To delete a Referral Type:

- 1 Highlight the Referral type to be deleted by clicking on it.
- 2 Click the **DEL** button.

The referral type is removed from the list.

You are not able to delete the **Friend** type. The **Friend** type allows you to credit an existing client for the referral.

To learn more about the **Friend** referral feature: See "The Friend Referral Type" in Chapter 3, Clients

Exiting the ProSolutions Setup Menu

- Choose **Exit** from the **Setup** menu to return to the main menu.
- The Software will ask you if you are sure you wish to do this.
- Click **Yes**

Time To Start Backing Up Your Data!

What is a backup? A backup is simply another copy of all the files that make up your data. When you “backup” all you are doing is making a copy of a file or files on either a Flash Drive, a Zip disc, a tape, a recordable CD or another part of your hard disk drive.

Why backup? Because you don't want to redo all your hard work. If something happens to your computer and it decides to not work or someone does something they wish they hadn't, you can copy everything back to where it should be so that you don't lose information or data.

How often should I backup? FREQUENTLY. You should do a back-up at least once a day. We recommend backing up at the end of each day or after you have completed entering a lot of new data. For example, if you add a hundred new clients or new inventory items, you should do a back-up immediately. *Prosolutions* includes a simple way to back up on zip discs, tapes, or CD's or your hard disk drive without having to leave the program: (See "*Quick Backup*" in Chapter 8 *UTILITIES*). Once you really start using *Prosolutions* everyday backing up should be done onto either a Zip drive or some sort of removable media that can hold multi megabytes of data.

A Zip drive is like a floppy drive but, instead of using floppy diskettes, a Zip drive uses Zip Disks designed to store multiple megabytes of data. Anywhere from 100MB to 250 MB or more can be stored on one single back up Zip Disk. We recommend a Zip drive as the safest, fastest and the most convenient way to maintain a good back up system.

SystemSafe is online backup software and an online backup service combined which makes it incredibly easy to back up your data. Never lose an important file again. SystemSafe uses secure technology to send an encrypted copy of your data to our offsite data centers via the efficiencies of the internet where it is available for immediate data recovery whenever you need it.

After downloading the SystemSafe software, select your files and click to send them over the internet. Or have it done automatically. It's that easy!

Data is everything now. For businesses and individuals the information on their computers is far more valuable than the machines. It's never been more important to protect these information assets. SystemSafe enables users to benefit from the same secure data protection used by Fortune 500 corporations but at a fraction of the price.

Threats to data are on the rise. They include hurricanes, hackers, floods, fires, theft, accidental deletion, equipment failure, power outages, sabotage, viruses and more. Protect your data today with SystemSafe online backup.

Download the SystemSafe Setup file by going to www.prosolutionssoftware.com/backup.asp

For more advice on backing up you should consult with your computer vendor or feel free to give one of our customer service or technical support people a call at ProSolutions Software, Inc..

Appointment Logging Feature

The reason we included this feature is to add another layer of backup protection for the appointments you book using Prosolutions.

If something happened in the middle of the day and your last backup was say the night before, you would lose all the appointments booked from the morning when you opened up to when you had the problem.

If you use this feature you would be able to restore your backup from the night before and restore all the appointments for that day you otherwise would have lost.

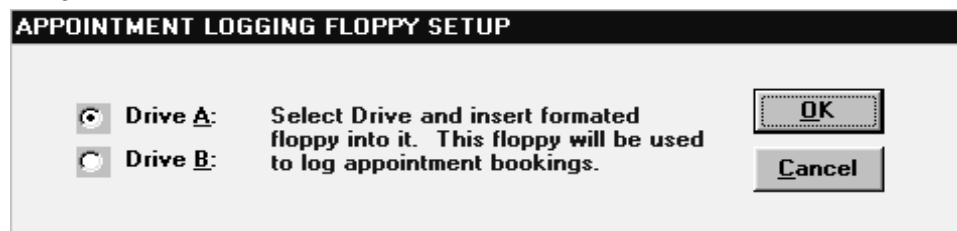
This is strictly to be used in conjunction with a daily backup procedure and not to be your only means of backup. Since it only backs up appointment information you do not want to use this as your only means of backup.

To use the Appointment Logging feature:

- 1 Click **[Setup] [Preferences] [Appointments]**.
- 2 Check the box that says Enable Appointment Logging.

Once you have saved this setting, the next time you enter Prosolutions it will display the Appointment Login Floppy Setup.

3



- 4 Insert a **Floppy Diskette** into your computers disk drive.
- 5 Select either **A Drive** or **B Drive**. If you only have one disk drive it is generally the A: drive. If you have two the one on top is generally the A: drive.
- 6 Click **OK**.

From now on every time you book an appointment it will be saved on the diskette you inserted.

The next day Prosolutions will check the disk and ask if you want to either clear the disk or add to it.

Chapter 3 - Clients

What you'll do in this chapter

- Creating Client Attributes
- Add new clients
- Look up existing clients
- Add/Modify Client Formulas
- Client Waiting List
- View and Modify existing clients
- Client Referrals
- Print Travel Cards
- Set Pop-up Messages
- Print a Clients Formula
- Print a Clients Record
- Delete clients
- Marketing
- Membership & Loyalty (Rewards) Program
- Use the Foto-File feature
- Cover the Skin Care In-Take features

Note: Although we have some conversion utilities available if you are moving from a different software package to ours, they are of limited value, because we utilize so many different fields and settings that simply cannot be directly converted.

For more information on this subject, call ProSolutions, Inc.'s customer support line.

Creating Client Attributes

A client attribute is a single character code that references a large description that fits a particular client. For example "V" may stand for "Very Important Client" and "D" may stand for "Difficult Client" and "P" may stand for "This months Promo is applied to this client" Whatever you

want it to be! After creating the attributes, you can use them in the appointment screen and also the point of sale in the "current appointments list." The steps in creating client attributes are below:

- 1 Go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [General] [Client Attributes]** the following window will appear:

- 2 Enter a single character code, i.e. "V"
- 3 Enter a short description of what you want the code to mean, i.e. "Very Important Client"
- 4 Select Save
- 5 Attribute Deletions can be done from this same screen.

Adding A New Client

This section describes how to add a new client.

To add a new client:

- 1 Choose **Clients** from the **Main Menu**, then choose **Add New**.
The **Add Client** window appears.

- 2 Enter the **Client's Name** and **Phone Number**.

You must enter the first and last name, phone number is optional.

NOTE: *ProSolutions 8.0* will auto-capitalize the 1st letter of the first name and the Last name.

- 3 Select male or female by using the mouse.
- 4 If you click the **Add Now** button *ProSolutions 8.0* will create this clients record. If you click the **More** button the client information window will appear, you can then add more information to this client's record.
ProSolutions 8.0 is designed to detect a duplicate client entry and give you the option to view the duplicate client. *ProSolutions 8.0* does not allow for duplicate clients unless the preference setting to allow for duplicate client names is checked: See 'System Preference Settings' in Chapter 2 'Setup'.
- 5 By clicking the **More** button, the **client information** window appears.

- 6 Type in the **Address**.

Notice that after you enter the street address, the cursor skips past the City and State fields and rests on the Zip Code field.

- 7 Enter a **Zip Code**.

ProSolutions 8.0 has an automatic zip code feature that will fill in the City and State when the system recognizes a zip code. When you enter a zip code for the first time, the following window appears.

- 8 Here type the City and State for this zip code.
The next time you enter this zip code the City and State will automatically be filled in for you.
- 9 Click the **Accept** button.
Notice the City and State fields are now filled in for you.
- 10 Enter the **Mailing Salutation** for this client.
The mailing salutation field allows you to choose how to address the client in a letter. For example, if the client's name is John Smith, you may enter Mr. Smith or John depending on whether you prefer the salutation "Dear Mr. Smith" or "Dear John".
- 11 In the Parents Name enter the client's parents or relative's name if the client is a minor.

- 12 The **RF#** field located directly to the right of the **Mailing Salutation** field is not set manually. RF# stands for referral number. This field increases automatically everytime a client receives credit for referring a new client to your salon.
- 13 Enter in the **Occupation**.
Entries made here will become part of the **Occupation** list box. This list appears by clicking the arrow to display the list box.
- 14 Type in the **Phone Numbers** and any **Extension Numbers**. (*Extension numbers may only be up to 4 characters long.*)
ProSolutions will add hyphens and format the numbers automatically. You only need to type in the area code if it is not the default area code. To set a default area code: See 'Default Area Code' in Chapter 2 Setup.

The Date fields includes four date fields: **First Visit**, **Last Visit**, **Birthday** and **Anniversary**. You do not need to enter in the year unless you are entering a year other than the current year. If you enter only the month (i.e. "03"), *ProSolutions 8.0* will enter the 1st day of the month in that current year (i.e. "03/01/08").

- 15 The **First Visit Date** will automatically be set when this client is processed through the cash register. You may also manually modify this date if you choose.
- 16 The **Last Visit Date** will be updated automatically from the point-of-sale, each time this client has a transaction with the salon. You may also manually modify this date if you choose.
- 17 You can enter in the client's Birthday and/or Anniversary dates. If you don't know the year, use "00" (i.e., 05/12/00).
- 18 In the Male/Female settings, click the gender for this client. Female is the default setting.

Main Operator

This feature was added mainly for marketing purposes. You can see which clients "belong" to which operators.

To assign a Main Operator:

- 1 Click the **Arrow** button to bring up the list of operators.
The **Main Operator** list box will appear.
- 2 Choose an **Operator ID**. That operator ID now appears in the **Main Operator** field.

Referred By

The **Referred By** field tracks the way new clients heard of your salon.

To choose a Referral Type:

- 1 Click the **Arrow** button next to the **Referred by** text box.
This will display the list of referral types you have selected.
- 2 Choose any **Referral Type**. If you choose **Friend**, the client selection win-

dow will appear. This feature is described below.

The Friend Referral Type

This section describes the **Friend Referral Type**

When a client is referred to your salon by a friend, you can check to see if the friend is an existing client. *ProSolutions 8.0* allows you to search your client list to see if that friend is an existing client. If so, you then select that client. That clients **RF#** (covered earlier in this section) will increase by one. If you are not able to locate the **Friend**, this means either that he or she is not an existing client or has not been entered into the system. It is also possible that the client was deleted for some reason.

The following steps illustrate how to use this feature:

- 1 Click the **Arrow** button again to bring up the **Referral Type** list box.
- 2 Click **Friend**.

The **Client Selection** window appears.

The Client Selection window is used to select a particular client (the View /Modify section describes how to select a client from the Client Selection window. This section appears later in this chapter).

If you do have existing clients:

- 1 Select the client and the client's name will appear in the new field.

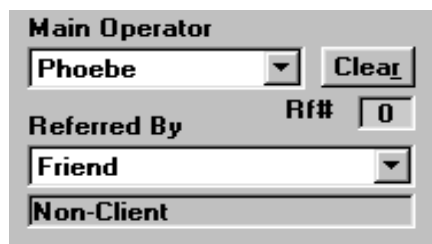
The client will be credited with a referral and the **RF#** field will increase by one.

If this is the first client you are entering into *ProSolutions 8.0*, you won't have any existing clients to choose from.

- 2 Click the **Done** button.

The word **Friend** will appear in the **Referral Type** text box.

If the friend is not an existing client, a new field with the word **Non-Client** in it now appears below the **Referral Type** field. See the following illustration.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Main Operator". It contains a dropdown menu with "Phoebe" selected and a "Clear" button. Below this is a "Referred By" label and a text box containing "0". Underneath is another dropdown menu with "Friend" selected. At the bottom, there is a text box containing "Non-Client".

Non-Client means this client was referred by someone who is not a part of your client data base.

No Checks and Inactive Settings

No Checks:

- Click this setting if you are not accepting checks from this client. You toggle this setting on or off by clicking the box and filling it with a check mark. This setting turns red when set. When this setting is on. This client is restricted from paying by check.

Inactive:

- Click if this client has not been in for a long time. It is up to you to determine the length of time or other criteria to designate a client Inactive.

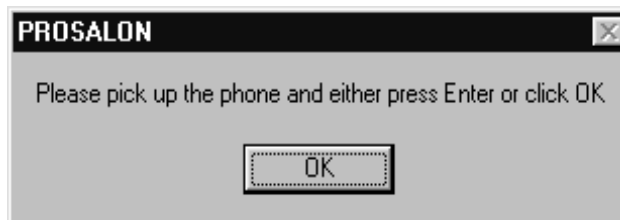
The AutoDial Feature

There are several buttons on the Client Information window. One of the buttons is the Dial Phone Button. Use this button to let *ProSolutions 8.0* do the phone dialing for you (you will need a modem for the Dial Phone feature to work). Your telephone will need to be connected through your modem as well in order to use this feature as described below.

To use the Auto-Dial Phone feature:

- 1 From the phone number area click a button to select a **Phone Number**. Do not pick up the phone yet.
- 2 Next, click the **Dial Phone** button.

ProSolutions 8.0 begins dialing the number. In a few seconds, you'll see the Number Dialed instruction window appear.



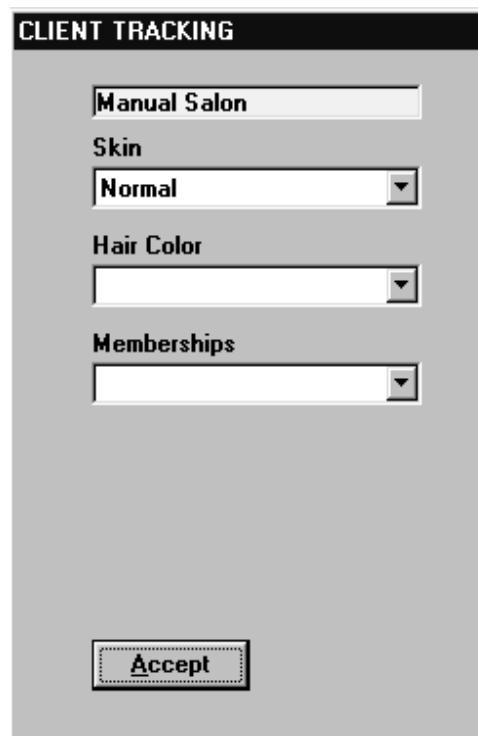
- 3 Pick up the phone and then click **OK** or press the **Enter** key.
That's it! When you are done with the call, hang up normally.

Selecting Tracking Items

This section covers the client tracking feature.

To use the Client Tracking window:

- 1 From the **Client Information** window, click the **Tracking** button.
The **Client Tracking** window appears.



Only Tracking fields you established earlier in **[Setup] [Configuration] [Add Tracking Names]** will appear. If you want to use this feature, you need to add tracking names: See 'Client Tracking Names and Items' in *Chapter 2 Setup*. Any tracking names entered previously will appear in the order they were entered.

- 2 Click the **Arrow** button next to the tracking name for the list of tracking items you want to view.
- 3 Choose a tracking item.

The list box will collapse and the setting you selected will appear.

- 4 Repeat this process, selecting tracking items for the categories that apply to the client.
- 5 To save, click **Accept**.

To learn how to create lists based on the tracking feature: See 'Marketing' later in this chapter.

Client History

You can view a client's service and retail history by clicking on the **History** button.

Except for adding individual service notes, the **History** button is a view only window.

To Add & Modify Client Service Formulas

Formula information can be added directly within the client's file or at the sales screen.

To add client service Formulas:

- 1 From the Client Information Window click the **Formula** button.
The **Client Formula** Window appears.

CLIENT FORMULAS

Service: Formula Name:

Instructions:

Prod No.	Description	Qty	Unit of Meas
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

- 2 Select the service from the service list box.

- 3 Type the formula name in the "Formula Name" box, and press "Enter".
- 4 Enter in detailed instructions for this formula then press "Enter".
- 5 Enter the product number(s).
- 6 Enter the quantity.
- 7 Enter the unit of measure.
- 8 If this is a new formula, click the **Add New** button.
- 9 If you are modifying a formula, click the **Update** button.
- 10 Finally, click the **Exit** button to leave this window.

To delete a formula:

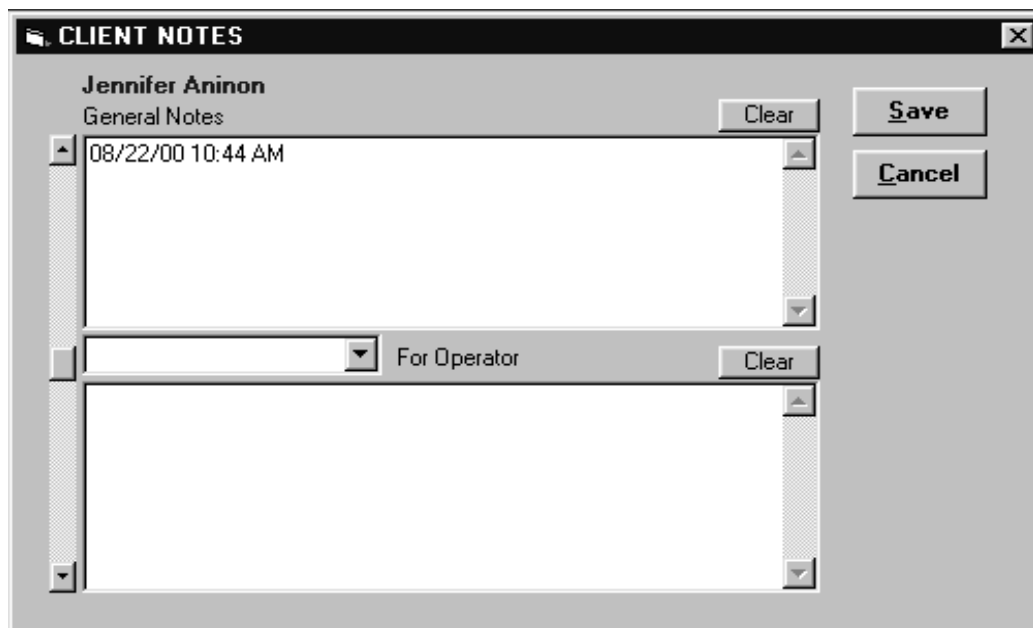
- 1 Display the formula that you want to delete.
- 2 Click the **Delete** button.
- 3 After a few moments the formula will be deleted.

Adding Notes for a Client

This section covers how to add notes to a client's file.

To add both general notes or individual operator notes:

- Click the **Notes** button.
- The **Notes** window appears.



The screenshot shows a window titled "CLIENT NOTES" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Inside the window, the client's name "Jennifer Aninon" is displayed at the top. Below the name, there are two sections for notes. The first section is labeled "General Notes" and contains a text area with the date and time "08/22/00 10:44 AM". To the right of this text area is a "Clear" button. To the right of the "General Notes" section are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel". The second section is labeled "For Operator" and contains a text area. To the right of this text area is a "Clear" button. The window has a standard Windows-style border with a title bar and a scroll bar on the left side.

The top list box is for General Notes.

To add general notes:

- 1 Type in any **notes** you like.
- As you type characters, the words automatically wrap to the next line. You

can add up to the default amount of 500 characters per note file.

- 2 When you are finished adding notes, you must click the **Save** Button.

To delete notes:

- 1 Select the note file, either general or an individual operator.
- 2 Hilite the notes you wish to delete then press "**Delete**" on your keyboard.
- 3 Press "**Save**" when you are done or the deletion will not take.

To add an operator's notes:

- 1 Click the **Operator List** scroll arrow
This brings up the **Operator List** box.
- 2 Choose the operator you want.

You'll then see the operators note text box appear. Enter the notes in the same fashion as you did for General Notes. Each operator can type up to the maximum allowable characters per client. The default setting is 500 characters.

- 3 When you are finished adding notes, you must click the **Save** button.

Quick Look-Up

You can easily and quickly look up a client by using either the **Quick Look-Up** which will be described next or use the **Client Selection** window described in the following section.

Quick Look-Up allows you to use the keyboard to look up a client and is available anywhere in *ProSolutions 8.0* that you would need to have access to the client database. For instance when booking an appointment or ringing up a sale.

To use the Quick Look-Up:

- 1 Either press the **F9** key or click the **Quick Look-Up** from the **Clients** menu.

Note: The mouse option is only available from the main menu. If you want to use the mouse to look up a client from the sales or appointment window you must use the **Client Selection** box described in the next section.

The **Get Client** window appears.



- 2 Type in the clients name or a search string.
For example if you type only a few letters, clients that have the same string of characters in their name will be available in the look up box.
- 3 Press the **Enter** key. If only one client is located the clients record will appear.
- 4 If more than one client has the same name you must then scroll through the list by using the **Down Arrow Key** until you find the correct client.
- 5 Hi-light the correct client name then press the **Enter** key.
The client's record will appear.

Client Waiting List

This feature allows you to check in a client and time how long it takes until they are serviced. In addition it will time how long it took to perform the service.

To check in a client for the waiting list:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Appointments] [Dayview] [Book] [Appointments Waiting List] [Place On Waiting List]**
- 2 Click.
The **Appointment Waiting** window appears.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "PLACE ON APPOINTMENT WAITING LIST". It contains several input fields and buttons. Annotations with arrows point to specific elements:

- Client:** A text input field with a "Client" button next to it. Annotation: "Press Client Choose Client".
- For Operator:** A dropdown menu. Annotation: "Choose Op.".
- For Service:** A dropdown menu. Annotation: "Choose Service".
- Effective Date Range:** Two date fields labeled "From" and "To". The "From" field has a "Cal" (calendar) button. Both fields show "08/15/2001". Annotation: "Choose the date range and the days that are acceptable to the client.".
- Acceptable Days of the Week:** A row of checkboxes for days S, M, T, W, T, F, S. The "W" (Wednesday) checkbox is checked. Annotation: "Choose the date range and the days that are acceptable to the client.".
- Start Time:** A time selection control showing "8" with AM/PM radio buttons. Annotation: "Add any notes you wish the Operators to see." (This annotation points to the Note field).
- End Time:** A time selection control showing "5" with AM/PM radio buttons.
- Note:** A large text area at the bottom for adding notes.
- Buttons:** "Save" and "Cancel" buttons are located at the top right.

- 3 Today's date should already be defaulted, however you can put in a date range if you like.
- 4 Type in the first few letters of the Client's name and then hit the "Enter" key on your keyboard. The words "**Pick from List**" will appear and you will be able to use the "Scroll Arrow" to pick from the list names..
- 5 Once you have selected a name, use the scroll arrow next to "Operator" and select the operator they are waiting to see or "Any Operator."
- 6 Use the scroll arrow to select the "Service" that they want and the "Duration" (time) that the service takes should be automatically defaulted.
- 7 Select "**Save**" and that's all there is to it! You now have somebody on the waiting list.
- 8 Place any notes necessary.

To view the Waiting List:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Appointments] [Dayview] [Book] [Appointments Waiting List] [Display Waiting List]**

The **Appointment Waiting List Display** window appears:

To remove someone from the waiting list, simply hi-light their name and

select **"Remove."**

WAITING LIST

Search Remove Update Close

Waiting List

- 01/05/01-02/07/01: Haircut/Finish [Pauline] Lisa Meyers
- 01/05/01-02/06/01: Haircut/Finish [Pauline] Susan Davis
- 01/18/01-02/02/01: Haircut/Finish [Stacy H] Deanna Pratt
- 01/23/01-02/02/01: Shampoo/Set [Pauline] Grace Langenberg
- 01/23/01-02/04/01: Foil/ Full [Dean] Ann Stade
- 01/24/01-02/16/01: Haircut/Finish [Steve] Lisa Mackenzie
- 01/24/01-02/06/01: Haircut/Finish [Steve] Debbie Mueller
- 01/25/01-02/16/01: Foil/ Full [Wendy] Maurine Taylor

Phone:

S M T W T F S From Date To Date Start Time End Time Status

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

Note:

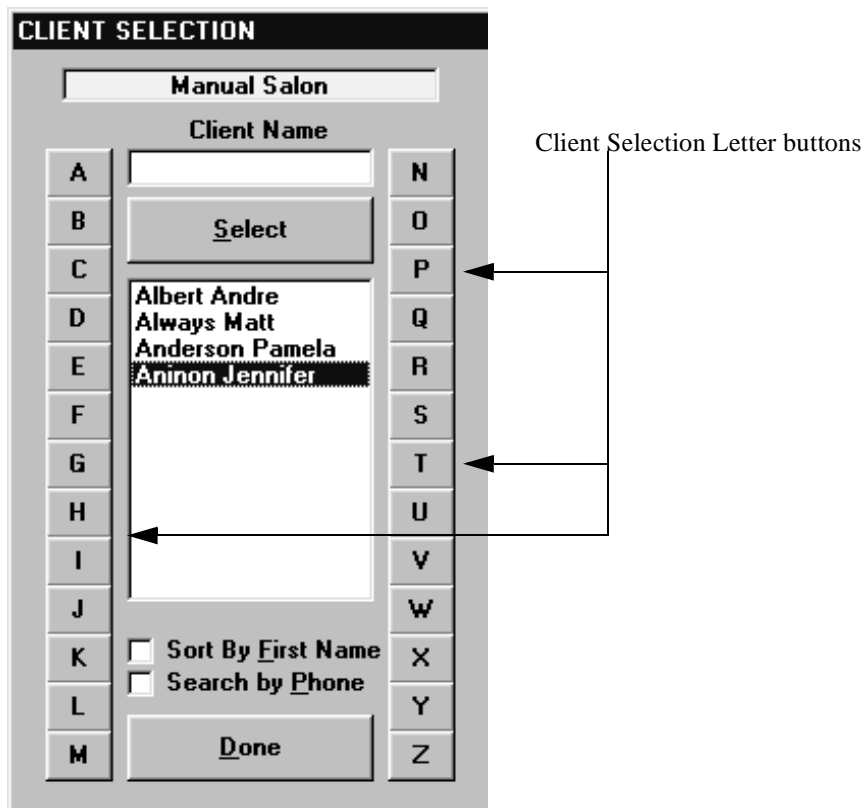
Viewing and Modifying a Client's File

This section covers how to select an existing client from the Client Selection window. If you haven't added any clients yet, do that now. (Adding a client is covered earlier in this chapter.)

To look up a client:

- 1 From the **Clients** menu select **View,Change**.

The **Client Selection** window appears below.



The **Client Selection window** appears throughout *ProSolutions 8.0* any-time you need to look up a client. You can enter the first letter of the clients last name to select only clients whose names begin with the same first letter. This allows you to limit the number of clients appearing in the client selection window.

- 2 Type in the name or click the letter buttons for the client you want to select.

The characters you enter appear in the text box. You can enter the full name or a partial name. For example, if you are looking for a client with the last name Smith you can type in just the letter S. You will then get a list of all the clients with last names that start with S. If you type in SMI, then you will only get a list of clients that have SMI as the first three letters of their last names. This feature allows you to find clients in smaller groups, making it faster and easier to find the client you are looking for.

NOTE: You may also pull up a client by entering their client number. To find out a clients number you can either look at their record and see note the number that is located in the upper left hand corner of the client record.

- 3 Press **Enter** or click the **Select** button.

The Client's name you typed now appears in the Client list box. If you typed in the complete last name, then only clients with that same last name will appear. If you type in only a partial Last Name, then you will get a list of clients fitting the partial name criteria you entered.

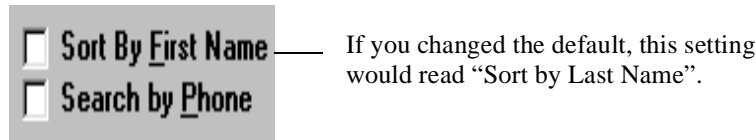
- 4 Next, Click the client's name.

That client's information window will appear.

About the sort settings

When you purchase *ProSolutions 8.0* the program is set to sort by Last Name. You can change the default to sort by First Name: See 'System Preference Settings' in Chapter 2.

There are two settings at the bottom of the **Client Selection** window. See the following illustration.



The **Sort By First Name** setting and the **Sort By Phone** setting allow you to override the way names are normally displayed which is alphabetically by last name.

For example, let's say you normally want to sort your clients by last name. You now know only the first name of the client and you need to find their file. For situations such as the one described, *ProSolutions 8.0* has included the Sort By First Name setting.

To sort by first name:

- 1 Click the **Sort by First Name** setting to turn the setting on.
A check mark indicates the setting is on.
- 2 Next type in the first name, or part of it.
- 3 Press the **Enter** key or click the **Select** button.

The client will appear in the client list box along with any other clients fitting the criteria you set for the search. Click the client's name and bring up his or her file. You can continue sorting by First Name for as long as the setting remains on.

To lookup clients by phone number:

- 1 Select the **Search by Phone** setting.

The client selection window changes to reflect Number Buttons in place of Letter buttons. See the following illustration.

CLIENT SELECTION

Manual Salon

Client Name

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 { - }

Select

☐ Sort By First Name
☒ Search by Phone

Done

- 2 Type in the number or click the **Number** buttons. You can enter either a complete or partial number.
- 3 Press the **Enter Key** or click the **Select** button.
Clients matching the search string will appear in the client list box.
- 4 Choose the Client to bring up his or her file.
After you view or modify a client, *ProSolutions 8.0* will return you to the **Client Selection** window.
- 5 To return to the main menu, click **Done**.

Viewing a Client's Service and Retail History

This section describes the Client History features.

To view a client's history:

- 1 From the **Client Information** window, click the **History** button.
The **Client History** window appears.

Transaction Note Field

Service History Window

Product History

CLIENT HISTORY

JENNIFER ANINON

Service History All Services Print View Trans Set Formula Done

Product History All Categories Gift Certs View Formula 2000 Sales = 309.00

DATE	OPERATOR	SERVICE RENDERED	PRICE	TRANS #
08/16/00	Monica	Full Set	45.00	0000114
06/21/00	Discount	Foil-Full (M2)	-6.00	0000073
06/21/00	Chandler	Foil-Full	60.00	0000073
06/13/00	Chandler	Facial-Mini	35.00	0000045
06/13/00	Monica	Foil-Partial	65.00	0000038
06/07/00	Ross	HC-Wom-Long	30.00	0000018
06/07/00	Phoebe	Facial-Mini	35.00	0000018
05/31/00	Monica	Full Set	45.00	0000008

Product History All Categories 2000 Purchases = 76.00

DATE	OPERATOR	SKU	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PRICE	TOTAL	TRANS #
06/14/00	Salon Sale	00045	Detoxify Elixir 1oz	1	28.50	28.50	0000052
06/13/00	Chandler	00079	Skin Smooth Cream 1.75oz	1	29.00	29.00	0000045
06/13/00	Monica	00098	Dermalogica Latte Mug	1	7.00	7.00	0000038
06/07/00	Phoebe	00089	Skin Hydr. Masque .75oz	1	11.50	11.50	0000018

Set Note View Note 5

A client's history is divided into two sections: The service history section and the product history section. If you have entered manual history, it will appear here also.

Both the service and retail sections include a list box so that you can view year to date totals by a particular service or product category.

You can add a formula to a transaction by clicking the **Set Formula** button and selecting an existing formula on file for this client or adding a new one.

This information is updated from the Point-of-Sale screen every time this client enters a transaction. Unless a client completed a transaction with the salon or has had manual history entered, **No History** will appear in one or both the service and retail windows.

To add manual history (client history prior to using *ProSolutions 8.0*): See 'Adding Manual Service and Product History' in Chapter 8 Utilities.

To view a transaction:

- 1 Highlight the Transaction you would like to view.

Notice the blank text row under the **Service Display** box. This is the Transaction Note field. If notes appear when you highlight a transaction, you have either previously added notes at the point-of-sale screen or from within this history window.

To view a highlighted transaction:

- 2 Click the **View Trans** button.

The **View Transaction** window appears.

Transaction Note Field

VIEW TRANSACTIONS: REGISTER 1

Transaction # << Prev 1st Today Goto Date Next >> Last Trans

Select Operator All Operators Done

DATE	TP	CLIENT	OPERATOR	DESCRIPTION	SKU	QTY	PRICE	RD	WHO
08/16/00	S 0	Aninon Jennifer	Monica	Full Set			45.00	1 1	0
08/16/00	\$ 1	Aninon Jennifer	<Payment>	Cash			45.00	1 1	0

Services: 45.00 Retail: .00 Professional: .00 Other: .00 Taxable: .00 Sales Tax: .00 TOTAL: 45.00

The transaction number appears in the top left corner of the window. In the transaction list box are the following headings: Date, T (for Type), P (for Pay), Client Name, Operator, Transaction Description, SKU, Quantity, Price, R (for Register), D (for drawer) and Who, (for who recorded the transaction).

Notice that there are various buttons across the top of the **View Transaction** window. This window gives you the option to look at all of your transactions, not just the transactions related to the client you are currently

viewing. The following describes what each button does:

The **<<Prev** button:

“**Prev**” Stands for previous. If you click this button, you will see the previous transaction.

The **Next>>** button:

This button brings up the next transaction.

The **1st Today** button:

This button brings up the first transaction for the current day.

The **Last Transaction** button:

This button brings up the last transaction posted in the system.

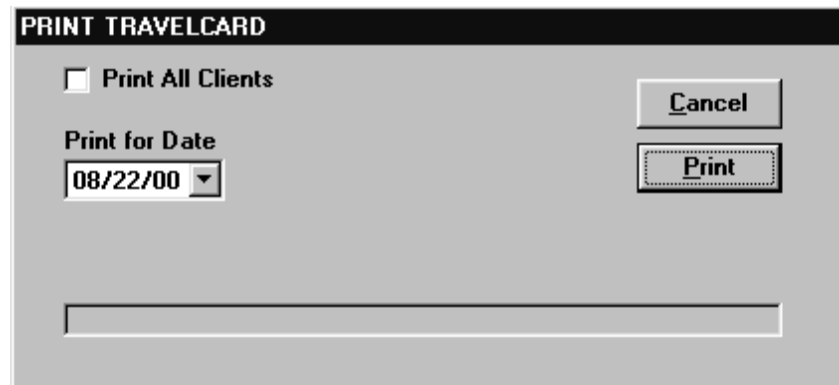
At the bottom of the View Transaction window are the breakdowns for the transaction you have highlighted. They include the Service totals, the retail totals, the professional totals, any other charges, taxable item totals, sales tax totals and the grand total.

- 3 Click **Done** to return to the Client History window.

Printing A Client TravelCard

To print a client TravelCard:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Clients] [Print Travelcard]**.
The Print TravelCard window appears.



- 2 Choose the **Date**.
- 3 Select **Print**
- 4 Choose the **Client** from the **Client Selection** box.
- 5 To print all clients that have appointments for a given day, check the **Print all Clients** setting.

You can print a 40 column version of the TravelCard by setting a preference setting to do so. This option allows the TravelCard to format correctly for use on a receipt printers. For information on setting preference settings. See *'To Access the Advanced Settings Preferences'* in Chapter

2, Setup.

Printing Client Formulas

To print a client's formula:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Reports] [Clients] [Client Formulas]**.
- 2 Select the client you want to print formulas for from the Client Selection box.

Setting Client Pop-up Messages

You can set Popup notes that will display a message screen with the note whenever the client is selected from anywhere ProSolutions 8.0 looks up a client such as the appointment book, sales screen, etc.

This message will continue to appear until you clear it.

To set and clear a Popup message:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Clients] [Set PopUps]**.
The Client Selection window will appear.
- 2 Choose the **Client** you wish to set a Popup message for.
The **Popup Notes** window appears.



- 3 Select the Operator name that is recording the note.
- 4 Type the popup note in the text box for the selected client.
- 5 Click **Set**.

The next time you select this client the message will appear, see the following example.



6 To clear this message, click the **Clear** button.

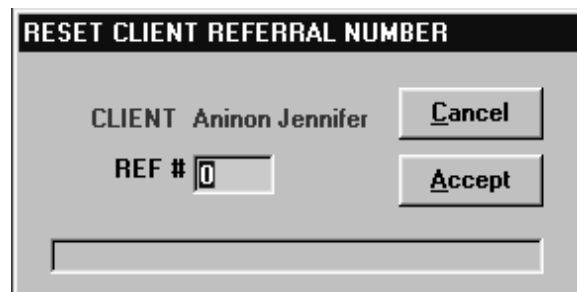
To keep this message until the next time this client is selected, click **Keep**

Resetting a Client's Referral Count

To reset a client's referral count:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Clients] [Set Referred Count]**

The Reset Client Referral Number window appears.



- 2 Enter the **Referral Number**.

- 3 Click **Accept**.

- 4 The referral number comes from the number of clients who have chosen a particular client as the reason they entered your salon/spa. To see this in action see the below "referred by" information.

Referred By

[Clients] [Add New] or [View Change] select client or add client and in the lower right of the Client History you will see the "Referred By" field.

The **Referred By** field tracks the way new clients heard of your salon.

To choose a Referral Type:

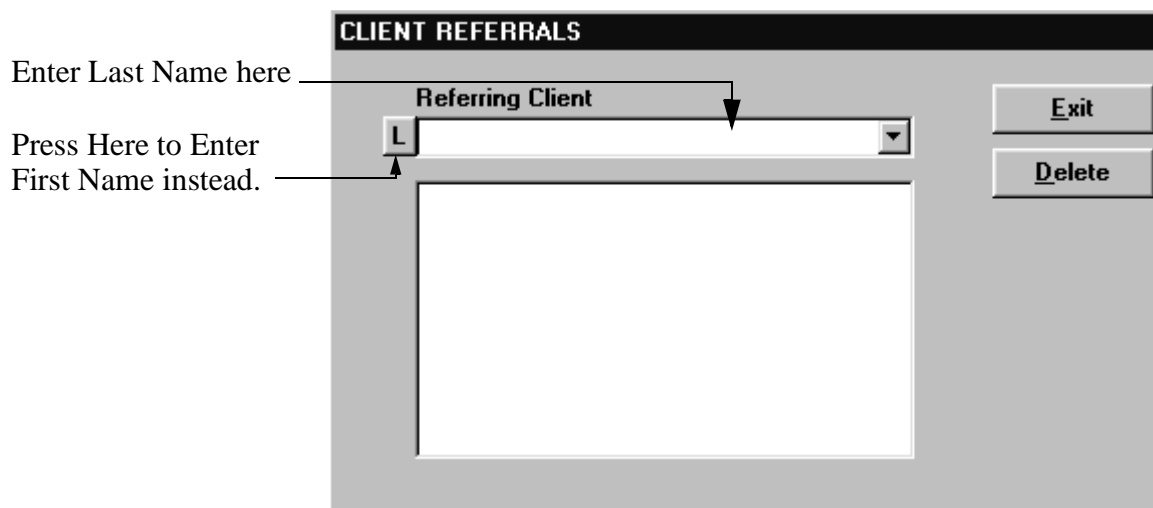
- 1 Click the **Arrow** button next to the **Referred by** text box.

This will display the list of referral types you have selected.

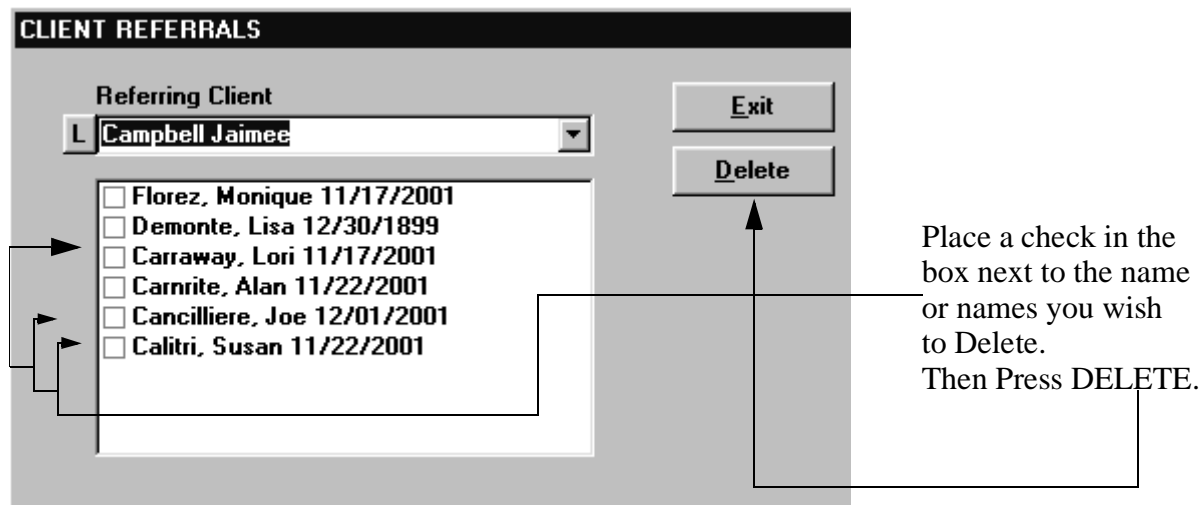
- 2 Choose any **Referral Type**. If you choose **Friend**, the client selection window will appear.

Adjusting a Clients Referral Count

- 1 Go to [Clients] [Client Referrals Count] the following window will appear:



- 2 After you have typed the name, you will be able to choose the name from a list of possibilities. Once the name of the client has been selected the lower window will display all those clients who have listed them as referrals. See the window below:



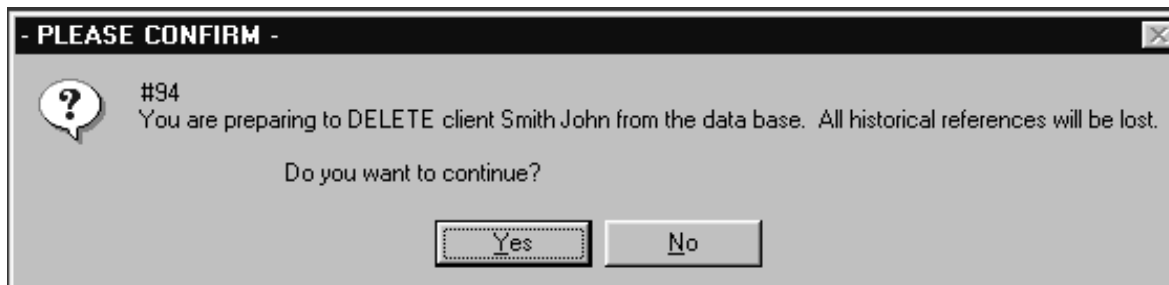
- 3 This process will automatically adjust the Client Referral Count as well as allow you to remove incorrect referrals or outdated ones.

Deleting Clients

To delete a single client:

- 1 Choose **Delete** from the **Clients** menu.
The Client Selection window will appear.

- 2 Select the client you want to delete.
The following message box appears.

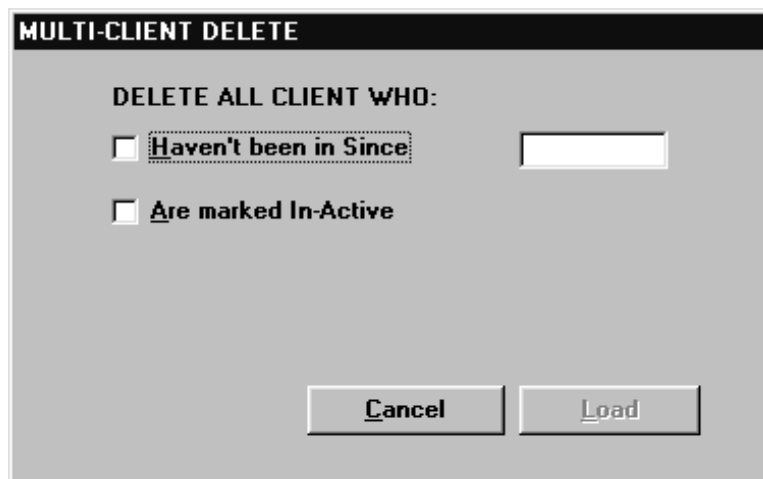


- 3 Click **Yes** to delete or **No** if you changed your mind or made an error.
The message box disappears and after a few moments the client is deleted.

Multi-Client Delete

To delete multiple clients:

- 1 Choose **Multi-Delete** from the **Clients** menu.
The **Multi-Delete** window appears.



By Checking the “**Haven’t been in since**” check box and entering a date, you can delete all clients that haven’t been in since a certain date.

Important Note: Be careful when using this function. You need to sure of the date you enter. All clients that come in prior to the date you enter will be **PERMANENTLY** deleted.

- 2 Check the “**Are Marked In-Active**” checkbox if you wish to delete clients that you have marked In-Active.
- 3 When you have checked a box and want to continue with the multi-client delete function, click the **Load** button.

The following message appears in the same window indicating the number of clients that fit the criteria you set:



MULTI-CLIENT DELETE

DELETE ALL CLIENT WHO:

☒ Haven't been in Since 08/01/00

☐ Are marked In-Active

Number of Clients to be Deleted: 24

Print List Cancel DELETE

The number of clients to be deleted.

The Load button is replaced by the **Delete** button.

- 4 Click **Delete** to permanently delete the clients or **Cancel** if you made an error. Or, "**Print List**" to have a record of the clients you are about to delete.

Marketing

Client Marketing Reports

Client count

Mailing Labels

Post Cards

Phone Listing

Clients by Referral

Client Type

Client Ranking

Client Retention

Client Referral Detail

Missed cycle

Create Lists with Customized Tracking

Creating Client Lists For Printing

Use the **Create A List** feature to create lists for use in mail outs and telemarketing. The process is quick and easy, first, you select which clients you want to include in your "listfile". A "listfile" is simply the file that contains the clients you selected. Next, you go to the Print options under the Marketing menu and select the type of format you want to print. The formats include mailing labels, postcards and phone lists for telemarketing.

Once you select the format all you need to do is select the name of the "list-file" and then click the print button. The following section goes through the process step by step.

To Create A List:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Reports] [Marketing] [Create A List]** Click.
- 2 The **Set List Creation Criteria** window appears.

Use this window to select criteria for a given list you wish to create.

Creation Criteria:

- **Selections:** these are tracking devices that can be removed, or added to, to customize your tracking. If the default "Selections" do not suit your needs you can make tracking items be whatever you want them to be, See: *Clients Customized 'Tracking'* later in this Chapter.
- **Status, Active/Inactive:** If you have checked a client as "inactive" in their client information screen, they will not be placed on your marketing lists unless you check "inactive" here. All other clients are automaticall

"Active" and will be listed unless you *uncheck* "Active" here.

- **Birthday:** When putting in your client information, one of the selections is "Birthday", you can put in a date range here to get all clients with birthdays within that range.
- **Anniversary:** When putting in your client information, one of the selections is "Anniversary", you can put in a date range here to get all clients with anniversaries within that range.
- **Last Visit:** This information comes from the Point of Sale screen. This option allows you to pull all clients who's last visit falls within a particular date range of your choosing.
- **First Visit:** This option allows you to pull all clients who's first visit fell within a particular date range of your choosing.
- **Not in since:** This option allows you to choose all clients who have not been in since a particular date.
- **Purchases Greater Than:** This option allows you to market to your "big spenders" and lets you deliniate between spending on services and on retail.
- **Gender:** List of Males, or Females, or both.
- **Client Referrals:** This information is kept in the client information screen, this option allows you to create a list of all clients who have a certain number of referrals.
- **Rendered Services By:** All clients who have seen a particular Operator
- **Template:** Each time you create a list, you may choose numerous criteria in order to "Target Market" the "Template" allows you to save those settings so you can create the list whenever you need it with those settings without having to re-input all of them.
- **Show Qualified:** If this is checked, when the list is created, all those who qualified to be on the list will appear here and be counted. If it is unchecked, they will appear only on the list, not here.
- **Show Ignored:** by checking this box, all those clients that were rejected from the list will appear here. If it is unchecked, they will not.
- **Save to File:** This is where you will type in a new name for each "listfile" that you create.
- **Create List:** Once all of the selections are made, this button will begin the process of making the list.
- **Cancel:** If you choose not to make the list, this button will take you back to the main "Reports" menu.

To select criteria:

- 1 Simply click the criteria settings you want. For example to create a list of clients in a given zip code click **Zip Codes**. The **Zip Codes** selection box appears.

- 2 Click a zip code item.
You can select all items in a list box by clicking the **Select All** check box.
- 3 After making a selection click the **Accept** button.
Notice that the word Zip Codes now appears in green. This indicates an item has been selected from zip codes.
You could now add more criteria such as females only, selected date range criteria, etc.
- 4 Name the "**ListFile**" by checking on "**Listfile**" under "**Save to File**", then typing in a name.
- 5 When you are ready to create your list, click the **Create List** button.
The client database is scanned. A gauge moves across the window. A count is displayed as *ProSolutions 8.0* qualifies clients for your list.
When the list is complete a message box appears confirming the number of qualified clients.
Note: If you want to select all your clients then you should not select any criteria. Simply click the **Create List** button after you have named your

Tracking Zip Codes at POS

This feature will allow you to select the Client's Zip Code for tracking purposes during the Point of Sale transaction process.

- 1 Go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Sales Register]**
- 2 Place a Check by *Prompt for Zipcode at POS Payment*.

The next time you ring somebody up at the point of sale, if you do not have their zip code, you will be prompted to enter one. By doing this, you will

be able to track by zip code in the marketing section of Prosalon/spa.

List Templates

To avoid the task of manually selecting criteria each time you want to create a list you can create a list template. This allows you to simply select the template and have the list automatically created.

For example if every month you want a list of clients that saw a particular operator and are new to the salon within the last thirty days. You would first select the desired criteria then save it as a template.

To create and save a list template:

- 1 Select the criteria for the template you are creating.
- 2 Click the **Save Template** button.

The **Save Template** window appears.

- 3 Type in the template **File Name**.
- 4 Type in a **Description** for the template.
- 5 Click **Save**.

The template will be created and saved.

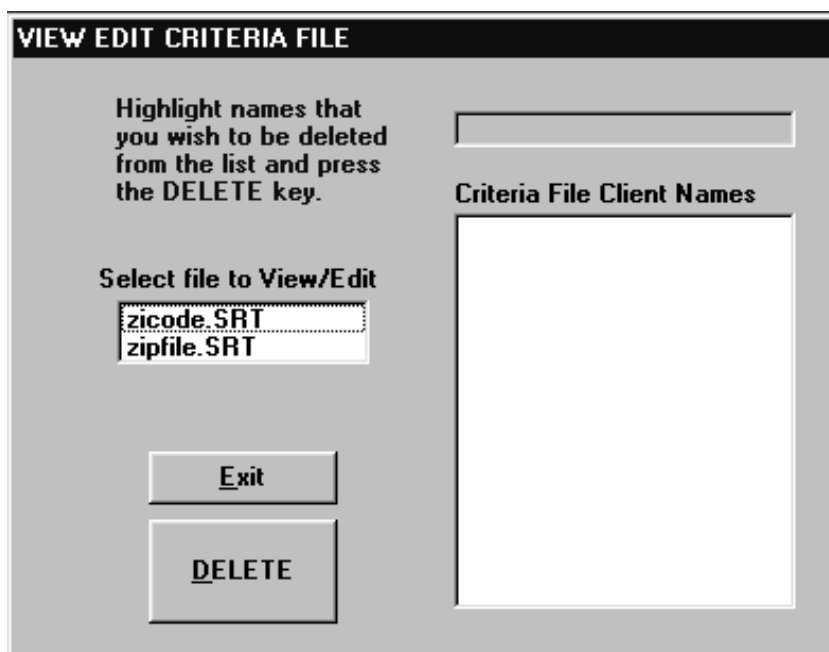
- 6 When you want to create the list, simply go to templates and select the desired one, rename the "**Listfile**" and press, "**Create a List**"

Edit List Files

You can view and edit a list file before you print. You can also delete clients from the criteria file.

To edit a list file:

- 1 Choose **Edit List File** from the **Marketing** menu.
- The **Edit List** window appears.



- 2 Click the **List File** you want to view.
Clients in the criteria file will appear in the Client Selection box.

To delete a client from a list file:

- 1 Highlight the client you want to delete.
- 2 Click the **Delete** button.

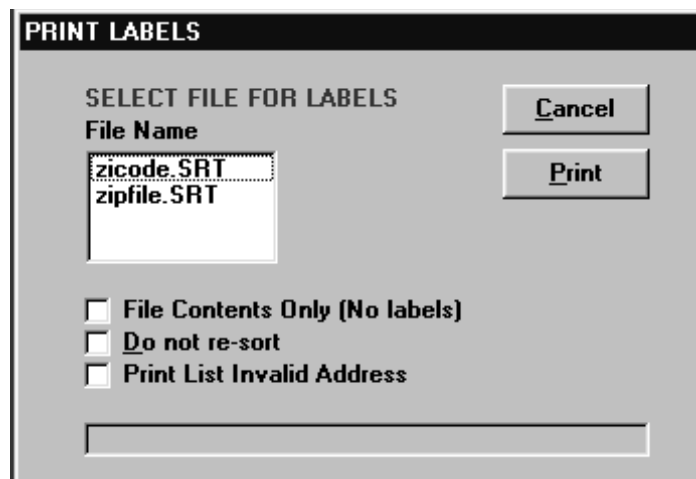
This will not delete the client from your database, only from the criteria file.

Special Sorts

All list files are sorted in alphabetical order by last name unless you use the Special Sort options

- Select **Sort By Zip Code** from the Special Sorts menu to sort a file by Zip Code.
- Select **Sort By First Name** from the Special Sorts menu to sort a file by first name.

Note: if you do one of these special sorts you will need to check the “Do not resort” checkbox when you are ready to print the list. Otherwise it will sort it alphabetically.



Client Marketing Print Options

To print a Listfile:

- 1 Choose **Print** from the **Marketing** menu.

This brings up the **Print** menu.

Important Note: Only client records that have a complete address, i.e. street, City, State, Zip. will be printed, unless you select "Print List Invalid Address"

(By checking "File Contents Only" you will print a standard form list in line type not for labels.)

Mailing Labels

There are two types of mailing label configurations. One is Standard, the other Return. Both Standard and Return labels print the name, address and City/State. The Return labels include your salons return address in the upper left hand corner of the label.

Note: You could use the Return label configuration to print directly on the back of a flyer. This would save you time and money by eliminating the need for a label all together.

To print either both Standard or Return mailing labels:

- 1 Choose **Print** from either menu.
The **Print Labels** window appears.
- 2 Hi-Lite the **ListFile** you want to print.

Clicking on a file will place the file in the File Name text box.

If you have used a special sort option such as sorting by zipcode for bulk mail be sure to check the "**Do not resort**" checkbox, otherwise the list will be sorted by last name in alphabetical order.

- 3 Click **Print**.

To Setup Standard mailing labels:

- 1 Choose **Setup** from the **Standard Mailing Labels** menu.
The Label Print Setup window appears.

The screenshot shows the 'LABEL PRINT SETUP' window. It has a title bar with the text 'LABEL PRINT SETUP'. Below the title bar, the text 'CURRENT SETTINGS:' is displayed. On the left side, there are two buttons: 'Cancel' and 'Save'. To the right of these buttons, there are several settings, each with a label and a dropdown menu. The settings are: 'Height of each label' with a value of '1.0000' and a unit of 'Inches'; 'Width of each label' with a value of '2.7500' and a unit of 'Inches'; 'Number of Labels Across Page' with a value of '3' and a unit of 'Qty'; 'Left Margin Offset' with a value of '0.0000' and a unit of 'Inches'; 'Top Margin Offset' with a value of '0.0000' and a unit of 'Inches'; 'Printer Font Name' with a value of 'Arial'; and 'Font Size' with a value of '10'. At the bottom of the window, there is a horizontal scrollbar.

The settings on the right are used to configure your barcode label formats. The following table describes each setting.

Print Setting	Description
Height of each label	Allows you to <i>vertically</i> adjust the space the label occupies and the space to the next label.
Width of each Label	Allows you to <i>horizontally</i> adjust the space the label occupies and the space to the next label.
Number of Labels Across Page	Allows you to change the number of labels that print across the page.
Left Margin Offset	Allows you to adjust the space for the left margin.

Print Setting	Description
Top Margin Offset	Allows you to adjust the space for the top margin.

- Enter a new setting either by typing directly in the field setting or using the list boxes to select from the list of settings.
- To save the changes, click the **Save** button.

Note: These are not the same settings for Barcode labels, see Chapter 4, Inventory for those settings!

To change fonts:

- Click the **Printer Font Name** button.
The **Label Fonts** selection window appears.
- Click the **Printer Fonts** list box to select another font. Do the same to select a font size.
- Click the **Save** button.

To setup Return mailing labels:

- From the main menu, go to **[Reports] [Marketing] [Print] [Return Mailing Labels] [Setup]** Click.

The **Return Labels Setup** window appears.

- Type in your salons return address.
- Select a font and a font size for the return and recipients address.
- Fill in the specifications for the type of labels you will be printing.
- The height of the label = the actual height of the label / the width of the label = the width from the start of the first label to the start of the second label. ex. a label that is 1.75 in. in width is entered as 2 inches. The left margin offset is 8.5 inches minus the width times the quantity of labels example. $8.5 - (2\text{inches} \times 4\text{labels across}) = .5\text{.....usually its .3}$

- 6 Click **Accept** to save your entries.

Post Cards

To use this feature you need a laser or ink-jet printer. The post cards are designed to print with the laser/ink-jet cards from the Paper Direct company, for a free catalog call 1-(800)- A- PAPERS. Only postcards that come 4 to a 8 1/2 x 11 sheet will work.

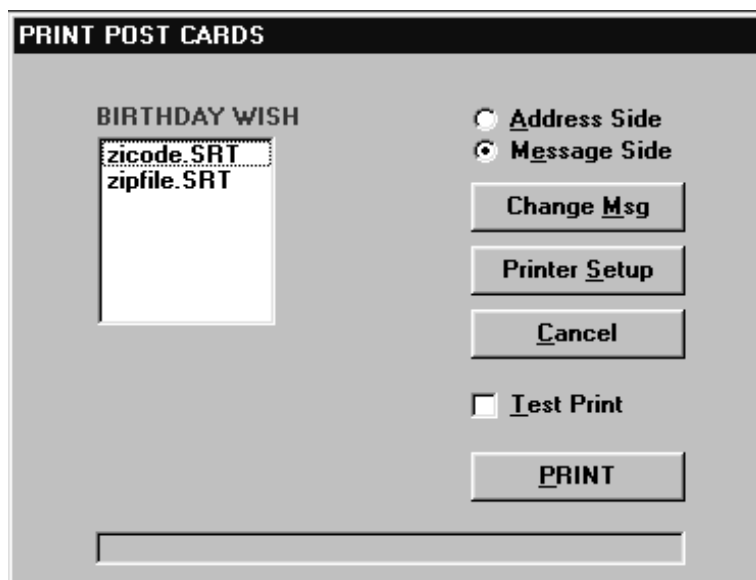
ProSolutions 8.0 allows you to create and print your own post cards such as Birthday or anniversary cards. There are several post cards titles that you can edit to your liking. you can also make up your own post cards. An overview of how to select, add a message and print Birthday post cards follows. All the other post cards work the same way.

An overview of how to create and print Birthday cards:

- Create a file containing the clients to be included in the birthday card mail out.
- Select Birthday card from the Client Marketing menu.
- Add a new Birthday message or change the existing message.
- Add your return address, This only needs to be done once unless you need to modify it.
- Decide which side you will be printing first, the address or the Birthday message side.
- Select Landscape mode from the printer setup window.
- Do a print test to approve the layout and print mode/setup.
- Print one side of the Birthday card.
- Print the other side of the Birthday card.

To create and print a Birthday card:

- 1 First create a listfile for the clients you wish to send a birthday card to.
If you do not know how to create a listfile, see the section about the **Select by Criteria** window appearing earlier in this chapter.
- 2 From Reports menu, go to **[Marketing] [Print] [Post Cards] [Birthday]**.
The **Print Post Cards** window appears.



PRINT POST CARDS

BIRTHDAY WISH

zicode.SRT
zipfile.SRT

☐ Address Side
☒ Message Side

Change Msg

Printer Setup

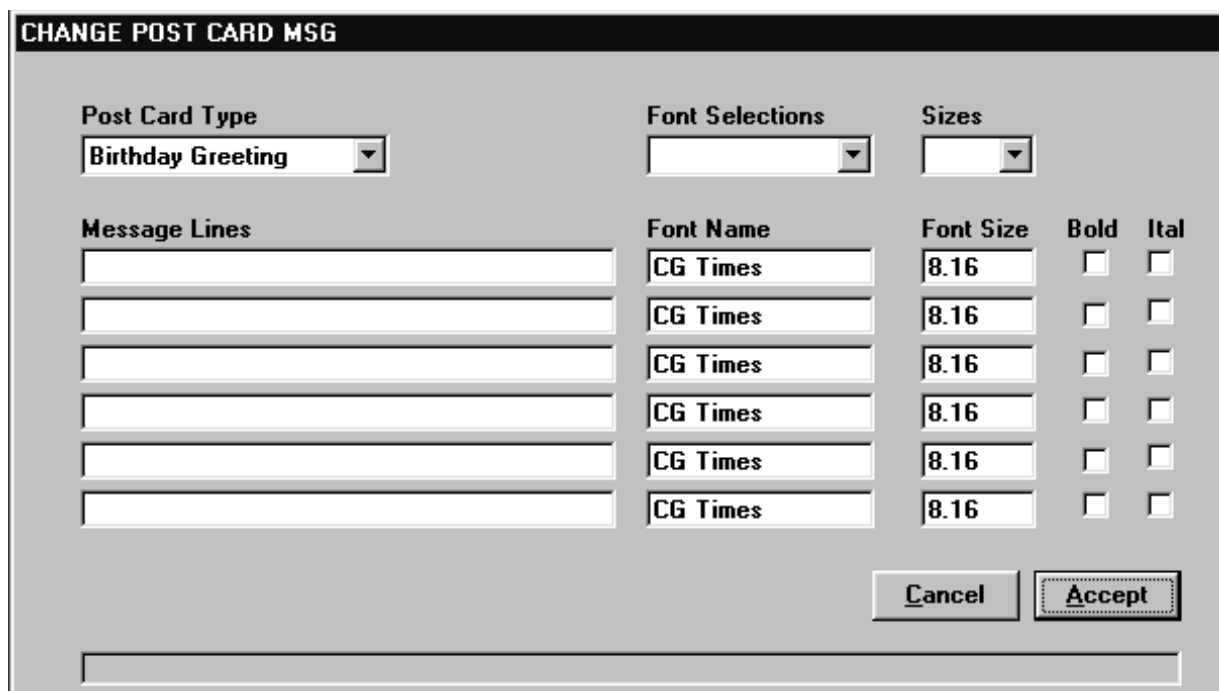
Cancel

☐ Test Print

PRINT

- 3 To add or change the birthday message, click the **Change Message** button.

If this is the first time printing a particular post card, you must add a message or you'll get blanks. After clicking the **Change Message** button, the **Change Post Card Message** window appears.



CHANGE POST CARD MSG

Post Card Type: Birthday Greeting

Font Selections: [Font Name] [Font Size]

Message Lines:

Message Lines	Font Name	Font Size	Bold	Ital
	CG Times	8.16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	CG Times	8.16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	CG Times	8.16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	CG Times	8.16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	CG Times	8.16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	CG Times	8.16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Cancel Accept

- 4 Type in the message you would like to appear on the Birthday card. There are five message lines. By selecting different fonts and font sizes you can change each message line to display a different font. You can also print a line in bold and/or italics. Click the **Accept** button when you have added the Birthday message. You can modify this message anytime by clicking

the Change Message button, making your modifications and clicking Accept.

- 5 To add your return address, click the **Address Side** button, then the **Change Message** button.

The **Change Return Address** window appears.

- 6 Enter your **Return Address**.

- 7 You can change the **font** as well.

- 8 Click **Accept**.

You don't have to do this again unless your return address changes.

- 9 Change your print mode to Landscape if you are using post cards that come four to a sheet. Click the **Printer Setup** button, the **Landscape** setting, and then **OK** to save the setting.

- 10 Do a print test by clicking the Print Test box so a check mark appears in the box.

You are now ready to print. Make sure you have the side of the post card you will be printing facing up, either the address or message side.

- 11 Click the **Print** button.

If your printer is on-line and has been loaded with paper, the post cards will begin printing.

A message will appear to remind you to set your printer back to Portrait mode and will appear everytime you exit.

Follow the above procedures to create and print the other post card options.

Phone Listing

This report prints a client phone list using a listfile created in the **Selected Criteria** window, go to **[Reports] [Marketing] [Print] [Phone Listing]**.

To print a phone listing:

The **Phone Listing** window appears.

PHONE LISTING

Phone List Title

Select file from this list:

- zicode.SRT
- zipfile.SRT

☐ Do not re-sort

- 1 Enter the **listfile** you want to print
- 2 You may add your own title to the report.
- 3 Click **Print**.

Marketing Reports

- **Client Count:** This report gives a breakdown of total clients by service and retail for a given date range. In addition the report lists new clients and repeat clients, separated by Male and Female.
- **Client Type:** Prints a list of client types that are tracked at the sales screen.
- **Client Ranking:** Prints a report on your best clients ranked by the dollar amount of purchases for either retail or service or both.
- **Client Retention Report:** This report compares the number of new and retained clients an operator has gained. Enter the number of return visits a client must have before he or she is considered a retained client. This report breaks down the number of new clients; the number of retained clients; the percentage of retained clients for prior years and the current year; and the combined total of the prior years and current year.

To print the Client Retention report:

- 1 From the Main menu go to **[Reports] [Clients] [Client Retention]**.
The **Client Retention** window appears.

- 2 From the list box, enter the **Number of Visits** (up to 5) a client must return to be considered a retained client.
- 3 Click the **Print** button.

The **Client Retention** report will begin printing.

To print the Client Zipcode Count Reports

- From the main menu go to **[Reports] [Clients] [Client Zipcode Count]** you will notice there are two reports to choose from, **All Zipcodes** and **Only With Activity**.
- These two reports print the zipcodes entered in your client database, the city name, the total clients in a zipcode, the total clients entered in the date range given and how many times clients from a zipcode have been to the salon. The report called **Only with Activity** will only list zipcodes that showed activity for the date range you entered.

To print or view On Account Status

- From the main menu go to **[Reports] [Clients] [On Account Status View]** you will notice you can print this report or view it without printing it.
- This report shows all clients that have either a debit or credit on account balance.

To print Client Referral Detail

- From the main menu, go to **[Reports] [Clients] [Client Referral Detail]**
- This reports shows which clients referred other clients.

Adjustments to Client Referrals

- 1 The first step is to select a particular client as the referral source for another client.

Export Name and Address

This section describes how to export name and address files to other programs such as a word processing program.

To Export a file:

From the main menu go to **[Reports] [Clients] [Export Name and Address]** window will appear.

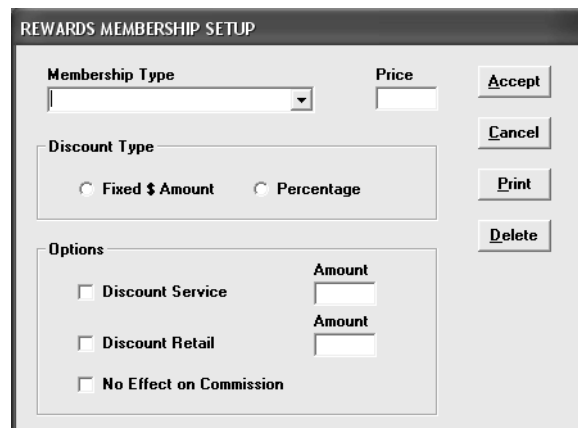


- 1 Select a "Listfile" from the "Select File" menu.
- 2 Enter the file name you want to export to.

Click **Export**.

Setting Up the Membership Program

- 1 Go to: Setup > Configuration > General > Rewards Membership Setup
- 2 The following window will appear:



- 3 Type in a Membership Group Name like (Gold) or (Diamond) or whatever you choose to name your membership. (Don't forget that you can create an unlimited number of memberships.
- 4 Enter a Price for this membership "if any."
- 5 Select either a fixed dollar amount or a percentage that this client will get as a discount by being a member. If no discount, select "percentage" and simply enter a zero "0" in the "Amount" Fields.
- 6 Check whether the discount applies to services, or retail, or both and

- enter the dollar amount or the percentage in the corresponding fields.
- 7 Finally, choose whether or not your employees will have their commission effected by this application of discount.
 - 8 Setup is complete, in order to "use" a membership, one must be sold to a client and the membership number that is assigned at time of sale must be kept for reference by the client. (Membership cards are a great way to handle this!)
 - 9 Once sold, a client's membership will automatically apply itself to every sale! A membership card can even be used to look up a client!
 - 10 Please note that in order to use the "Loyalty Rewards Program" a membership must be included.

Setting up the Loyalty "Rewards" Program

- 1 Goto: SETUP > PREFERENCES > GENERAL
- 2 Place a check in the box entitled Enable "Points" Program
- 3 The following window will appear:

POINTS PROGRAM SETUP

Each \$ spent earns points times the earnings ratio (default ratio = 1 to 1)

Every points time the redemption ratio = 1 dollar credit (default ratio = 1 to 1)

☐ Apply the above defaults to any item below NOT checked

Ratio and Point Assignments

☐ Show Selected Only

Group Category Product Earnings Class

☐ Body/Massage
☐ Body/Skin
☐ BodyWorks
☐ Face
☐ Hair
☐ MakeUp

Service
☐ @Pilates
☐ @Tone & Stretch
☐ @Yoga
☐ Bikini/Brazil
☐ Bikini/Partial
☐ Body Polish
☐ Brow/Male
☐ Brow/New
☐ Brow/Retouch
☐ Cellugone
☐ Chin
☐ Conditioning Treatr
☐ Corrective Colour
☐ Crystal Scrub

☐ Body & Bath
☐ Cleanser
☐ Color
☐ Conditioner
☐ Essential Oils
☐ Fragrance Spray
☐ Gel
☐ Hair Sprays
☐ Hair Therapies
☐ Infusion
☐ Moisturizers
☐ Packages
☐ Shampoo
☐ Skin Therapy
☐ Sun Protection

Other
☐ Gift Certificates
☐ Packages
☐ Series
☒ All Services
☒ All Retail
☐ Referral

EARNINGS
Ratio To 1
+
Points

REDEMPTIONS
Ratio To 1
+
Points

It is important to understand what Earnings Ratios and Redemption Ratios are. Earnings Ratio: If you say that your Earnings Ratio is 1-1 "One to One" then that means if a client spends \$1.00 they get 1 point. If the client spends \$100, they get 100 points. Easy right? A redemption works in the opposite manner. If you set your redemption at 10-1 "Ten to One" then a client must have 10 points to purchase something worth \$1.00. Or 1,000

points to purchase a \$100 service or products. Get it? Great! Now that you understand Earnings and Redemptions, let's set up the loyalty program.

- 1 First we must name a "class" this is the name of the loyalty program we are going to create. (Please note that you can have an unlimited number of loyalty programs.)
- 2 After naming our class we can set our Earnings and Redemption Ratios by entering a corresponding number into the right hand fields.



The screenshot shows a window titled "EARNINGS" and "REDEMPTIONS". Under "EARNINGS", there is a "Ratio" field with the value "0" and a "To 1" label, followed by a "+" sign and a "Points" field with the value "0". Under "REDEMPTIONS", there is a "Ratio" field with the value "0" and a "To 1" label, followed by a "+" sign and a "Points" field with the value "0".

- 3 Next we can choose what applies to this class. We can place check marks in "All Services" "All Retail" and "Referrals" if we choose to make a generic "all purpose" loyalty program. However, we may also want to select specific products and/or services that will be affected.
- 4 Once we have selected what will apply to this loyalty program, we can simply select "Save" and we are ready to start using it!

Configuring *Prosolutions* for Foto-File

In order to capture a picture, you will need some additional hardware to create a file that *Prosolutions 8.0* can display. Several file formats can be accepted. We recommend either a BMP, TIFF, DIB or a JPG file. There are a number of hardware options available. Some of the options include a computer camera, a Scanner, a Digital Camera, or a Video Camera in conjunction with a video capture board. *Prosolutions 8.0* allows you to store up to ten pictures per client. It is recommended you configure your Video card to display 256 colors or better and have plenty of disk storage space available. For more information about the various options, call ProSolutions Software, Inc. for customer support.

To configure *Prosolutions 8.0* for the Foto-File options:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Client]** and the Client preferences window will appear.
- 2 Check the **Enable Client Picture Display** box.
- 3 Press **Save**.
- 4 Exit *Prosolutions 8.0*.

This is necessary for particular options, so that *Proolutions 8.0* has an opportunity to reconfigure the program in order to recognize the Foto-File option.

Proolutions 8.0 will now create a new sub-directory called Pictures. This is the directory you will copy new picture files too.

5 Start ***Proolutions 8.0***.

To see the changes made to *Proolutions 8.0*, look at the Client Information screen.

6 From the main menu go to **[Clients] [View Change]**, then select a Client.

The screenshot shows the 'Client Information for Lisa Elliott' window. It contains the following fields and controls:

- Client Identification:** ID '2', First Name 'Lisa', Last Name 'Elliott', and a dropdown menu showing 'lisa'.
- Address:** Street Address '327 33rd St.', City 'Manhattan Beach', State 'CA', Zip '90266'.
- Visit History:** First Visit '05/31/00', Last Visit '06/29/00', Birthday '06/04/62', Anniversary (empty).
- Personal Info:** Driver's License (empty), Expires Date (empty), Mailing Salutation (empty), Parents Name (empty), Occupation (empty dropdown).
- Phone Numbers:** Home (selected) with number '(310) 837-2091', Office (empty), Other (empty). Each has an adjacent extension field.
- Photo Section:** A 'Photo Files' button and a list box (labeled 'Client Picture List Box' in the annotation) showing a photo of Lisa Elliott.
- Operator & Referral:** Main Operator 'Chandler' (dropdown), Referred By (empty dropdown), and Rf# '0'.
- Financial & Status:** Sv Dscnt '0.00', Rt Dscnt '0.00', checkboxes for 'No Checks' and 'Inactive'.
- Actions:** Tracking, History, Formulas, Notes, Set Popup, Show Appts, Goto Appts, In-Take, Print, Cancel, and Accept buttons.

Annotations in the image point to the 'Client Picture List Box' (the dropdown menu) and the 'Photo Files' button.

You'll notice some additions to the client information window at the top of the screen above the empty square box. There is a new list box and a button labeled **Photo Files**. By clicking the client picture list box you can see a list of any pictures stored for this client. If you are just getting started, you will see no selections. By selecting **Photo Files** you can name and put in actual files from the new **Picture** folder now in the *Proolutions 8.0* Folder.

- Copy pictures in the folder file "Pictures" that you will find in the default setting of C:\Program Files\Prosalon\Data\Pictures if you kept the default

settings.

- Once pictures are stored in this file, you can press the **Photo File** button in the Client information screen and name and select those files. Then you can select a file for that particular client. If you need any help with this, please call ProSolutions, Inc. ProSolutions at

Please note, all photos must be cropped to squares to avoid distortion.

To set up a client's picture paths:

- 1 Click the **Photo Files** button located above the picture frame.
The **Picture Paths** window appears.

Picture names

File names

PICTURE PATHS

Client Name Lisa Elliott

Picture Names

lisa

Filenames

lisa.bmp

Shift Up

Shift Down

Cancel

Accept

- 2 Under Picture Names, type in the **Picture Name**. For example, you could name it BEFORE, AFTER or LAST VISIT, CHRISTMAS DO, EASTER DO etc.
- 3 Now under Filenames enter the name of the picture file that you should have already saved in the Prosalon/Data/Pictures subdirectory. Include the file extension, such as BMP, TIF, or JPG etc.
- 4 To save your entries click **Accept**.

Using the Skin Care In-Take Options

To enable the Skin Care In-Take options:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [General]**.
- 2 Check the **"Enable Skin Care"** check box.

- 3 Press **Save**.
Now go into a Client file to view the Skin Care In-Take options.
- 4 Go to **Clients**. Choose **View Change** and select a **Client**.
Notice a new button labeled In-Take located underneath the Notes button.
- 5 Click the **In-Take** button.
The **Skin Care In-Take** window appears.

SKIN CARE IN-TAKE

GENERAL INFORMATION

Age Group

- ☒ Under 21
- ☐ 21-30
- ☐ 31-40
- ☐ 41-50
- ☐ 51-60
- ☐ Over 60

☐ Do you tan?
☐ Do you burn?
☐ Do you have a well-balanced diet?
☐ Do you have a heart problem?

☐ Do you wear a pacemaker?
☐ Are you diabetic?
☐ Do you wear contacts?
☐ Do you have candida?

☐ Cosmetic Surgery?

When?

What kind?

☐ Had hair waxing?

Reactions?

☐ Had deep skin peeling?

When?

What kind?

This is the initial Skin Care In-Take form. It contains check boxes for various skin related questions. Fill it out as it pertains to a particular client. The buttons on the bottom all represent other Skin Care windows, except for Print File and the Done button. Each window is designed to track and record additional client information regarding a client's skin history and progress. Each window including this one can be saved, modified and printed. We'll view each window starting with Conditions.

To view/modify the Conditions window:

- 1 Click the **Conditions** button.
The **Conditions** window appears.

SKIN CONDITIONS	
X=Yes	Where:
<input type="checkbox"/> Had Eczema	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Had Psoriasis	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Had Seborrhea	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Had Herpes	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Skin Cancer	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Take Birth Cntl Pills	<input type="checkbox"/> Other Medications <input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Seen a Dermatologist in last 5 years? Who?	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Under his/her care now? Reason?	<input type="text"/>
List Allergies:	<input type="text"/>
Special Problems:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Done"/>	

Each condition is followed by a note field.

- 2 Check the appropriate boxes followed by a note.
- 3 Click the **Done** button to save and return to the main Skin Care In-Take window.

To view/modify the Contours window:

- 1 Click the **Contours** button.
The Contours window appears.

BODY CONTOUR PROGRESS CHART											
<input type="checkbox"/> Col Input	START		1st		5th		10th		15th		GOAL
	L	R	L	R	L	R	L	R	L	R	
Upper Arm											
Rib Cage											
Waist											
Abdomen											
Hip											
Upper Thigh											
Lower Thigh											
Upper Knee											
Lower Knee											
Calf											
Ankle											
Comments:											
<input type="text"/>											
<input type="button" value="Done"/>											

This window is designed with body wrapping in mind to store and track a client's various body dimensions for a 15 week period. You can enter a goal and add comments.

- Click the **Done** button to save and return to the main Skin Care In-Take window.

To view/modify Treatments:

- Click the **Treatments** button.
The **Treatments** window appears.

BASIC SKIN TYPE AND TREATMENT

Oily skin:

Dry skin:

Combination skin:

Acned skin:

Uneven skin color:

Page 1

Done

This window documents a client's skin type and what treatments have been used. There are two pages so you need to click the Page button to view page 2.

- 2 Click the **Done** button to save and return to the main Skin Care In-Take window

To view/modify Products:

- 1 Click the **Products** button.
The **Products** window appears.

SKIN CARE PRODUCTS			
PRODUCTS USED:	Brand	Type	How Often
<input type="checkbox"/> Body cleansing soap			
<input type="checkbox"/> Facial cleansing soap			
<input type="checkbox"/> Cleansing cream or lotion			
<input type="checkbox"/> Hand and body moisturizer			
<input type="checkbox"/> Facial moisturizer			
<input type="checkbox"/> Skin freshener or astringent			
<input type="checkbox"/> Night cream			
<input type="checkbox"/> Body or facial masques			
<input type="checkbox"/> Skin peels or scrubs			
<input type="checkbox"/> Brown spot remover			
<input type="checkbox"/> Moisturizer for eye area			
<input type="checkbox"/> Other products			
<input type="checkbox"/> Had a reaction from any skin care product? Which Product:			
Reaction:			
Done			

This window records the various types of skin care products a client uses. Fill in the brand name, type and how often a client uses the product. At the bottom of the window you can document any reactions a particular product caused.

- 2 Click the **Done** button to save and return to the main **Skin Care In-Take** window.

To view/modify Annotations:

- 1 Click the **Annotations** button.
The **Annotations** window appears.

Choose the
diagram from this
list box.

ANNOTATION

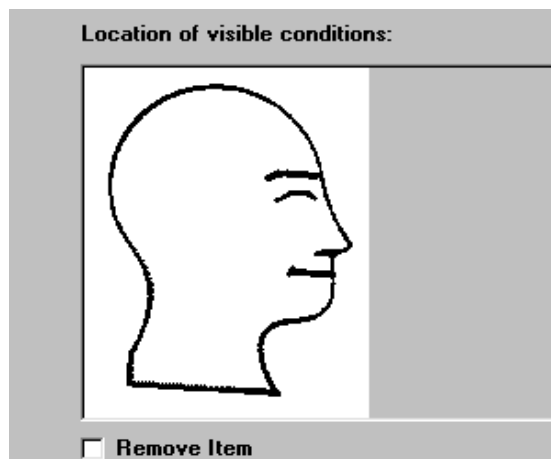
Select View:
[]

Location of visible conditions:
[]

☐ Remove Item

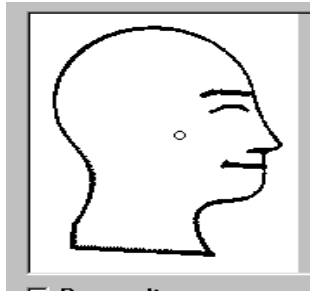
Done

- 2 Choose the diagram view you want to annotate.
The following illustration is of the Right Face view.

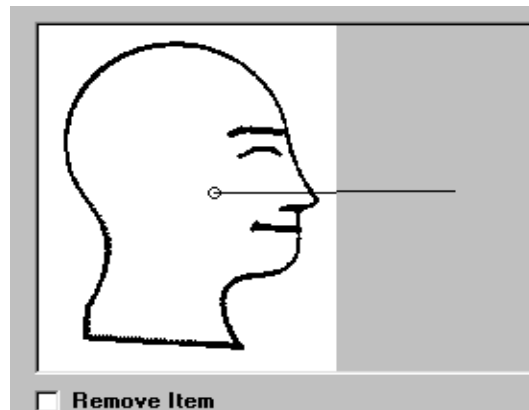


To add an annotation:

- 1 Point to the area that you want the annotation to refer to.



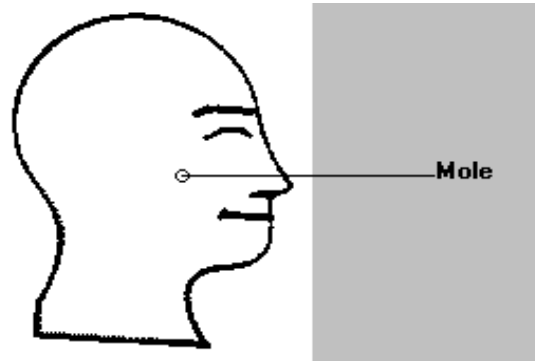
- 2 **Click** and **release** the mouse button.
- 3 Now point to the area you want the annotation to be placed.



- 4 Again **click** and **release** the mouse button.
A line appears from the view, to where you just clicked. A new text box appears above the annotation window.



- 5 Type in the annotation you want to appear. For example, "Mole".
- 6 Press the **Enter** key to accept the annotation.



You can add as many annotations as you want for a particular view.

To view/modify Recommendations:

- 1 Click the **Recommend** button.
The **Recommend** window appears.

A screenshot of a software window titled "SKIN CARE RECOMMENDATIONS" with a standard Windows-style title bar (minimize, maximize, close buttons). The window has a light gray background. On the left side, there is a list of skin care products: Facial Cleanser, Body Cleanser, Lotion, Freshener/Astringent, Facial Moisturizer, Hand/Body Moisturizer, Eye Area Moisturizer, Night Creme, Facial Masque, Body Masque, Skin Peel, and Home Care. To the right of each product name is a white text input field. At the bottom right of the window is a button with a dotted border and the word "Done" in bold.

This window documents the various type of skin care products you have recommended a client use.

- 2 Next to each product, type in the brand name.
- 3 Click the **Done** button to save and return to the main Skin Care In-Take

window.

To view/modify Miscellaneous skin care information:

- 1 Click the Miscellaneous button.

The **Miscellaneous** window appears.

The screenshot shows a window titled "MISCELLANEOUS" with a dark header bar. The window contains several form fields and checkboxes. At the top, there is a checkbox labeled "Ever had skin treatment before? By whom?" followed by a text input field. Below this is a "When?" label with a date input field. Then, a "Where treated?" label with a text input field. Next is a "How did you hear of us?" label with a dropdown menu showing "Newspaper Article" and a text input field. Below that is a section titled "Do you or your friends have treatments with us?" with checkboxes for "Yes" and "No" (the "No" checkbox is checked), followed by a "Names:" label and a text input field. Then, a "What do you expect from your visit?" label with a text input field. At the bottom, there is a "Do you use makeup?" label with checkboxes for "Yes" and "No" (the "No" checkbox is checked), followed by an "Apply with:" label and a dropdown menu showing "Fingers". In the bottom right corner, there is a button labeled "Done".

This window stores additional informational about a client's history, expectations and make-up procedures.

- 2 Fill in the necessary information pertaining to this client.
- 3 Click the **Done** button to save and return to the main **Skin Care In-Take** window.

To print a report of the Skin Care In-Take information:

- Click the **Print File** button from the Main **Skin Care In-Take** window.

Chapter 4 - Inventory

What you'll do in this chapter

- Setting up inventory indexes
- Adding inventory
- Value Added Tax "VAT"
- Making Kits
- Deleting inventory
- Update Physical Inventory Count/Print Shrinkage Report
- Inventory inquiries/Viewing Inventory
- Viewing Inventory Activity
- Generating purchase and receiving orders
- Generating and printing Standard Inventory Labels and Bar-code Labels
- For Sales of Inventory see Chapter 6 "Sales"

In a Point-of-Sale computer system, nothing is more basic than inventory control. *ProSolutions 8.0* tracks service, professional and retail transactions. If you plan to use *ProSolutions 8.0* to handle your retail sales, you must first enter the retail products into the inventory. When you enter a new product into the system, *ProSolutions 8.0* requires you to select an item from three Inventory Indexes before the new product will be accepted into the system.

About Inventory Indexes

There are four Inventory Indexes that *ProSolutions 8.0* uses to identify and group products in the inventory: Vendor index, Manufacturer index, Category Index and the Group Index. The reason for using indexes is so that you can do sorts and searches, create purchase and receiving orders, track sales, etc. By assigning a product to indexes, you greatly expand *ProSolutions 8.0*'s ability to manage your inventory in an efficient manner. The following section explains how to set up the inventory indexes.

Note: If you would rather have Department instead of Manufacturer and Class instead of Category, you can by invoking a preference setting. To

invoke this preference setting: See "System Preference Settings" in Chapter 2, Setup.

To go to the Inventory section of *ProSolutions 8.0*:

- 1 Select **Inventory**, from the **Main Menu**:
The **Inventory** menu appears.



Setting Up Inventory Indexes

ProSolutions 8.0 defines a Vendor as the company from which you purchase the product, such as a distributor. Some manufacturers sell their product as well. In this case, enter the manufacturer in the Vendor Index AND the Manufacturer Index.

Adding a Vendor:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Inventory] [Indexes] [Vendor]**.
- 2 Choose **Add, Modify**.

The **Vendor Inventory Index** box appears.

A screenshot of a dialog box titled 'INVENTORY INDEX'. Inside the dialog, there is a section labeled 'VENDOR'. Below this label, there are two input fields: 'Code' and 'Name'. The 'Code' field is a small text box, and the 'Name' field is a larger text box with a dropdown arrow on its right side. To the right of these fields are two buttons: 'Cancel' and 'Save'. Below the input fields, there is a horizontal line, likely a list box for vendors.

- 3 Type a two character code in the code box. You can type any two characters. Press the **Enter** key.
The cursor now moves to the vendor list box.
- 4 Type in the vendor's name, then press **Enter** then the **Save** Button.
The cursor returns to the Code field.

- 5 Continue entering the rest of your vendors in the same way.
- 6 Click **Cancel** to return to the main menu.

To add a vendor's address and phone number:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Inventory] [Indexes] [Vendor] [Address File]**.

The **Vendor Name and Address File** box appears.

- 2 Select a vendor from the list box.
- 3 Type in the name, address and phone number of the vendor.
- 4 Add the Representative's name if you wish
- 5 Add the e-mail address if any
- 6 Add your terms, a fax number and any remarks you may have
- 7 To save click **Accept**. If you do not want to save, click **Cancel**.

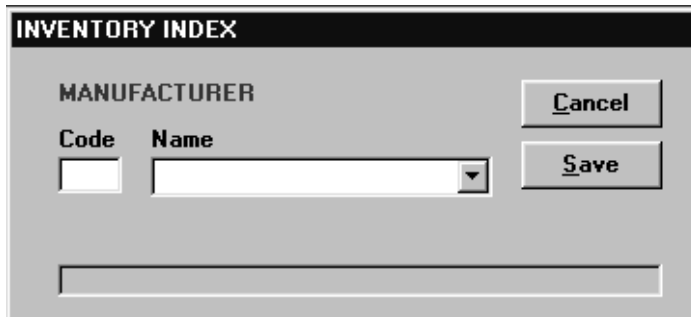
Adding Manufacturers

Adding a manufacturer index works the same as adding a vendor index.

To add a new Manufacturer:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Inventory] [Indexes] [Manufacturer]**
- 2 Choose **Add, Modify**.

The **Manufacturer Inventory Index** box appears.

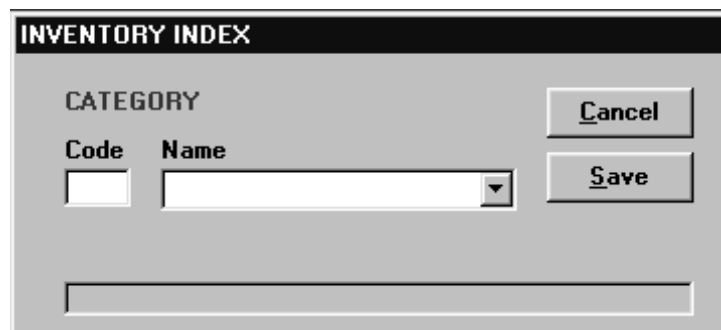


- 3 Type a two character code in the code box. You can type any two characters. Press the **Enter** key.
The cursor now moves to the manufacturer pop up list box.
- 4 Type in the manufacturer's name, then press **Enter** and click the **Save** button. The cursor returns to the Code field
- 5 Continue entering the rest of your manufacturers in the same way. When finished, click the **Cancel** button after you have saved.

Adding Product Categories

To add a new product category:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Inventory] [Indexes] [Catagories]**.
- 2 Choose **Add, Modify**.
The **Categories Inventory Index** box appears.



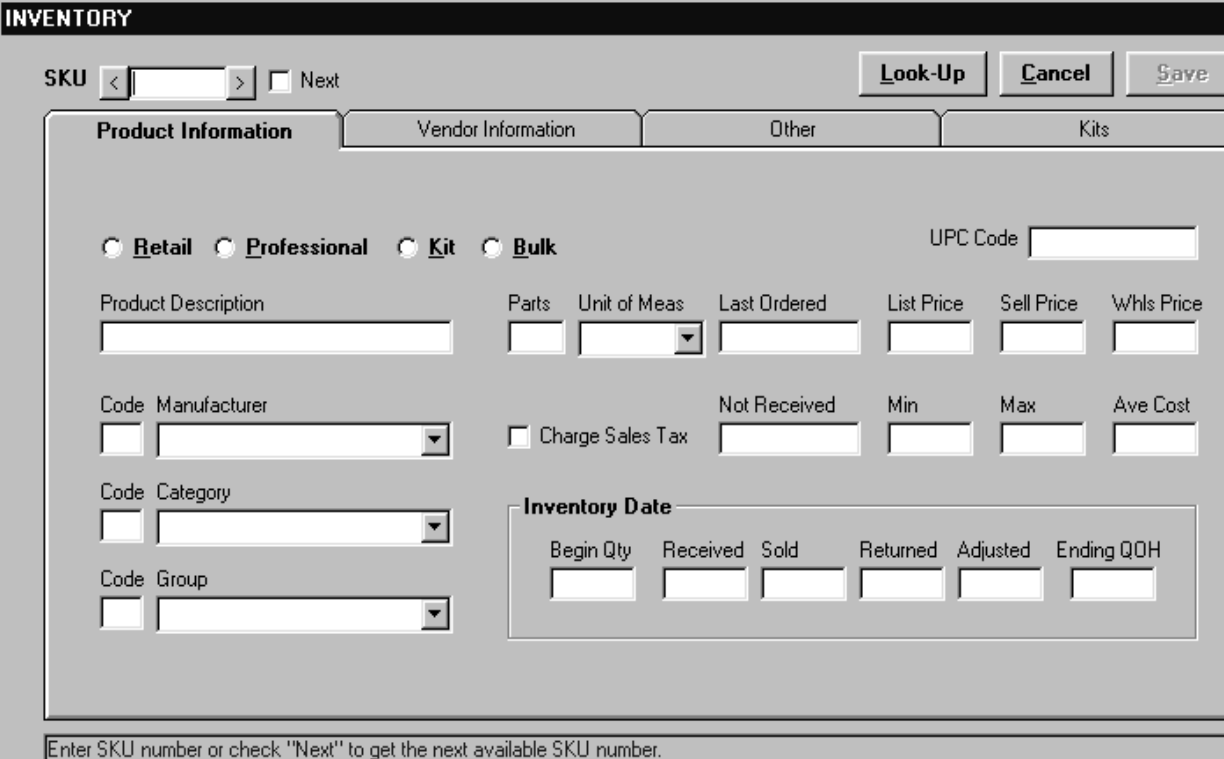
- 3 Type a two character code in the code box. Press the **Enter** key.
The cursor now moves to the category pop up list box.
- 4 Type in the category name, then press **Enter** and then the **Save** button.
The cursor returns to the Code field.
- 5 Continue entering the rest of your product categories in the same way.
- 6 Click **Cancel** to return to the main menu.

Adding Products

This section describes how to add products to your inventory. Before you can begin adding inventory, you must enter at least one vendor, manufacturer and product category.

To add a new product:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Inventory] [Products]**.
 - 2 Choose **Add New**.
- The **Product Inventory** box appears.



INVENTORY

SKU ☐ Next

Product Information | Vendor Information | Other | Kits

☐ **Retail**
☐ **Professional**
☐ **Kit**
☐ **Bulk**
UPC Code

Product Description <input type="text"/>	Parts <input type="text"/>	Unit of Meas <input type="text"/>	Last Ordered <input type="text"/>	List Price <input type="text"/>	Sell Price <input type="text"/>	Whls Price <input type="text"/>												
Code Manufacturer <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Charge Sales Tax		Not Received <input type="text"/>	Min <input type="text"/>	Max <input type="text"/>	Ave Cost <input type="text"/>												
Code Category <input type="text"/>	Inventory Date <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>Begin Qty</td> <td>Received</td> <td>Sold</td> <td>Returned</td> <td>Adjusted</td> <td>Ending QOH</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> </table>						Begin Qty	Received	Sold	Returned	Adjusted	Ending QOH	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Begin Qty							Received	Sold	Returned	Adjusted	Ending QOH							
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>													
Code Group <input type="text"/>																		

Enter SKU number or check "Next" to get the next available SKU number.

The Product Inventory box accepts information for a product, assigns a part number to the product and records it into the inventory database. Use the **Mouse** to move from field to field.

- 3 Place a "Check" in the **Next** box by the SKU
This assigns the product to the next available part number.
- 4 Click the **Retail** or the **Professional** setting.

Retail items are items that you sell to the public. Professional items are items used in the salon (i.e. back bar items).

When ringing up service sales which use formulas, the products used in formulas will automatically be deducted from the inventory if you set the Preference "**Deduct Std. Formula from Inventory**" in the [Setup] [Preferences] [Inventory] section.

5 Type in a **Description**.

The description can be made up of any characters, alpha or numeric. You should include any size designation. For example, a shampoo in 6 and 12 ounce sizes should be entered as two separate products with different part numbers.

Tip: Try to keep descriptions and abbreviations consistent so that you can find them using the ProSolutions 8.0 search feature.

6 Enter the Vendor's Part Number.

This is optional and used when placing orders with your vendors.

7 Enter in the **List Price, the Sell Price and the Wholesale Price** (Wholesale Price is generally what you charge your Booth Renters for supplies).

8 **Not Received** will fill in automatically with the number of items that you have ordered on a P.O. but that have not been received yet. (this is very helpful if you need to know what you are waiting for).

9 Enter in the **Minimum Stocking Quantity** required for this product.

10 Enter in the **Maximum Stocking Quantity** required for this product.

11 Enter in the **Average Cost**, if any. This will automatically be adjusted if you have multiple vendors for a single product and they charge differing prices.

12 Enter in the **Last Ordered** date of this product.

ProSolutions 8.0 will automatically update this field every time you place an order for this product.

13 Place a check in the box next to "**Charge Sales Tax**" if you want this product taxed, leave it unchecked if you do not.

14 Choose a Manufacturer from the **Manufacturer** list box.

If the manufacturer is not in the list, you need to add the manufacturer (Adding manufacturers is covered earlier in this Chapter).

15 Choose a Category from the **Category** list box.

If the Product Category is not in the list, you need to add the category (Adding Categories is covered earlier in this Chapter).

16 Choose a Group from the **Group** list box.

Groups are used for sub-categorizing categories and are unnecessary.

17 If this is a Professional product select a **Unit of Measure**.

18 If this is a professional product and is used in parts, select a **Part**.

19 To save a product, click **Save**. If you do not want to save, click **Cancel**.

If you turned on the Next Available Part No setting, an empty box will appear for another part to be added. The previously selected indexes will remain selected until you choose to change them.

20 The fields under **Inventory Date** cannot be changed from this screen

21 Click **Save** if you wish to save and **Cancel** if you wish to cancel, however, if you choose to save you may wish to finish everything concerning this product before saving.

22 Now it's time to select the vendor for this product by choosing the "**Ven-**

dor" tab. The following window will appear:

INVENTORY

SKU < 130 > ☐ Next Aveda, 500ml Madder Root

Product Information **Vendor Information** Promotions Kits

Vendors ☒ 1* ☐ 2 ☐ 3 ☐ 4 ☐ 5 ☐ 6 ☐ 7 ☐ 8 ☐ 9

Code Vendor Name SKU Vendor Order No. Cost Price Average Cost Best Price Best Qty

AV Aveda 131 0002800 0.00 0.00 0.00 10

Address 2000 Pheasant Rd

City State Eden Prairie MI

Zip Code Phone No. 55344 (800) 236-4301

E-mail Address

Last Ordered On PO # Qty 12/27/2000

Order in Qtys of 1

Beginning Inventory dated 08/16/2001

Begin Qty	Received	Sold	Returned	Adjusted	Ending QOH
14.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	14.0

You may make changes to this products description.

- 23 Each product is assigned a number ending in zero. Each vendor has it's own product number from 1 to 9 following the number. For example, Vendor number 1 when ordering product 130, will reflect 131. And Vendor number 2 will reflect product number 132 when referencing the same product and Vendor number 3 will reference 133, etc.
- 24 Choose the **Vendor Name** (You can have as many as 9 different vendors for each individual piece of inventory).
- 25 If you have already entered the address and phone number, etc... of the Vendor, this information will automatically appear.
- 26 Place the Actual Vendor Part Number in the **Vendor Order No.** field for use when making Purchase Orders.
- 27 Enter the **Cost Price**, The **Average Cost** (if the same vendor charges you different prices occassionally for the same product. The **Best Price** (if you can get a reduction by buying in larger bulk., the **Best Qty** (this is the number you purchas to get the "best price".
- 28 "**Order in Qtys of**" means the number of parts that this comes in as a unit. For example, if they only ship boxes of 8. You could make this 8 and order 2. By ordering 2, you would get 16, etc.
- 29 **Beginning Inventory Date** information can now be added in this screen.
- 30 **Beginning Qty, Amount Received, Manual Adjustments**, these are all

here to show the status and activity on the particular product.

31 Press **SAVE**

Making Kits/Gift Baskets

ProSolutions 8.0 allows you to create a gift package or basket (kit) for sale as a single product and will automatically deduct all of the retail items from your inventory each time you sell a kit.

To create a Kit for Sale:

- 1 Go to **[Inventory] [Products] [Add/Modify]** and select the "Kit" radio button on the window that appears. After selecting the "Kit" button, the following window will appear:

INVENTORY

SKU < > ☐ Next **Look-Up** **Cancel** **Save**

Product Information Vendor Information Promotions Kits

☐ Retail ☐ Professional ☒ Kit ☐ Bulk

Product Description List Price Sell Price Whls Price

Code Manufacturer ☐ Charge Sales Tax Ave Cost

Code Category

Code Group

You may make changes to this products description.

- 2 Enter a Product Description for the Kit, i.e. "Gift Basket"
- 3 Select Manufacturer
- 4 Select Category
- 5 Select Group (Optional)
- 6 Mark taxed or not.
- 7 Select List Price/Sell Price/Wholesale Price.
- 8 Then Select the "Kits" Tab above and the following window will appear:

INVENTORY

SKU < > ☐ Next

Product Information

Vendor Information

Promotions

Kits

SKU No.	PRODUCT DESCRIPTION	QTY	ON-HAND	ON ORDER	COST
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>		

The screenshot shows a window titled "INVENTORY". At the top, there is a "SKU" label followed by a text input field with left and right arrow buttons, and a "Next" checkbox. To the right is a "Look-Up" button. Below this is a tabbed interface with three tabs: "Product Information", "Vendor Information", and "Other". The "Product Information" tab is active, and within it, the "VAT Rate" label is positioned above a text input field.

- 4 Enter the VAT Rate for this individual product as a full percentage, i.e. if the rate is 17.5% simply enter 17.5 "the format is in percentage already."
- 5 Press **SAVE**

Setting a Global VAT Rate for Inventory.

- 1 Go to [Inventory] [Products] [Set VAT Rates]
- 2 The following window will appear:

The screenshot shows a window titled "SET VAT RATES". It contains several dropdown menus and a text input field. The "For SKU" dropdown is set to "All Skus". The "For Vendors" dropdown is set to "All Vendors". The "For Manufacturers" dropdown is set to "All Manufacturers". The "For Categories" dropdown is set to "All Categories". The "For Groups" dropdown is set to "All Groups". The "Rate %" text input field contains the value "17.5". To the right of the dropdowns are "Set Rates" and "Cancel" buttons. Arrows point from the text on the right to the dropdown menus and the "Rate %" field.

You can choose All "Everything" for Global VAT or you can use the scroll arrows to choose individual Vendors Manufacturers Categories or Groups.

Then set the Global Rate and press SET RATES.

Modifying Your Products

This section describes how to look up an individual item.

To view a product:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Inventory] [Products] [Add/Modify]**.
The **Add /Modify** box appears.

INVENTORY

SKU < 80 > ☐ Next **Aveda, 500ml Clove**

Product Information Vendor Information Promotions Kits

☒ Retail ☐ Professional ☐ Kit ☐ Bulk UPC Code

Product Description	Parts	Unit of Meas	Last Ordered	List Price	Sell Price	Whls Price
500ml Clove	1		01/30/2001	11.50	11.50	0.00

Code	Manufacturer	Not Received	Min	Max	Ave Cost
AV	Aveda	0	8	12	5.00

☒ Charge Sales Tax

Code Category
SH Shampoo

Code Group

Beginning Inventory dated 08/16/2001

Begin Qty	Received	Sold	Returned	Adjusted	Ending QOH
6.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	6.0

Markup = 130.0% Margin = 56.5% Value = \$30.00

You may make changes to this products description.

This box allows you to view individual products and make changes. All the information about an inventory part can be modified from this screen except the Vendor information. You can Enter a part number directly into the Number field or use the Search Button to bring up a list of products fitting the given search string. By clicking the arrow next to the Product Description field you can view other products that have the same indexes.

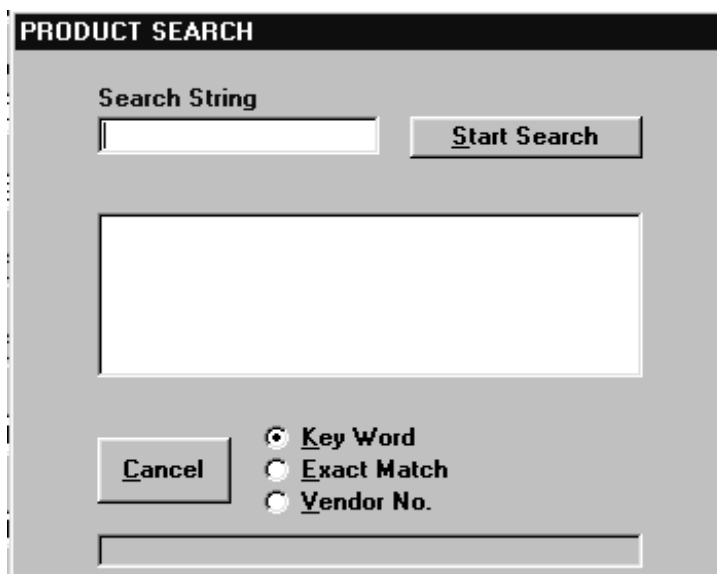
For example if you look up a product that is from Vendor A and Manufacturer B and Category C, all products that have those same indexes will be in the Product Description list box. You can also view other categories from the same vendor and manufacturer when you select another category from the list box.

At the bottom of the Modify box you can see your Mark-Up percentage and Gross Profit percentage for a product.

To search for a product:

- 1 Click the **Look Up** button.

The **Product Search** box appears.



- 2 In the text field labeled **Search String**, type in the name or part of the name of the product you want to find.
Any product or products fitting the search string will appear in the list box.
- 3 **Select either Exact Match or KeyWord.**
Exact Match will search for products that begin with the search string. For example, to search for XYZ Protein Shampoo, you can enter "X", "XYZ" or "XYZ Pr". If you select **Key Word**, then you enter any part of the name. For example, if you enter "Protein", the system will locate this item along with any other products having the word Protein in it.
- 4 **Highlight** the product you want to modify and an **Accept** button will appear. Press accept.
- 5 The item will appear in the Modify box. You can make any necessary modifications.

To view other products that have the same indexes:

- 1 Scroll through the **Product Description** list box.
- 2 Click any items that you want to modify.
The item will replace the previous selection.

In addition, you can change Categories. This allows you to view other product categories that have the same vendor and manufacturer.

To view other categories:

- 1 Click the **Category** list box.
Your list of Categories will appear.
- 2 Click a **New Category**.

When Done:

- When you have finished making modifications, click **Save**, then **Exit**.

Deleting Products

This section describes how to delete an inventory item.

To delete an item:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Inventory] [Products] [Delete]**.

The **Delete Inventory Part** box appears.

DELETE INVENTORY SKU

Manufacturer Name
Matthew Wiggins

☒ Sort by SKU ☐ Sort by Description

Product Skus

<input type="checkbox"/>	00007970	Matt's Test Product
--------------------------	----------	---------------------

Delete
Cancel

- 2 Select a Manufacturer.

A list of products will appear from that manufacturer followed by a description of the product will be displayed to confirm that this is the part you want to delete. Simply place a check in the box to the left of each product you wish to delete.

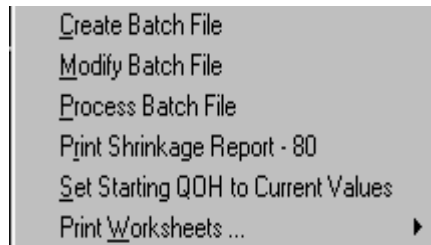
- 3 When the product(s) to be deleted is/are checked, click **Delete**.

Inventory Physical Count

The Physical Count selection allows you to reconcile your physical inventory count against your current inventory levels and print a shrinkage report.

You need to first take an inventory to get an actual count of each of your inventory items that you want to reconcile. ProSolutions 8.0 has a report to help with this it is available by going to (From the main menu) **[Inventory] [Physical Count] [Print Worksheets]** . You can print either all your products or by Manufacturer.

There are five functions and menu selections available from the Physical Count menu. The following section describes each one.

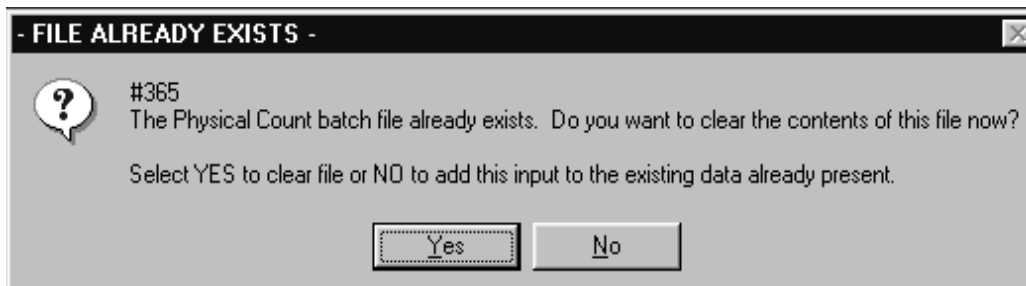


Create a Batch File:

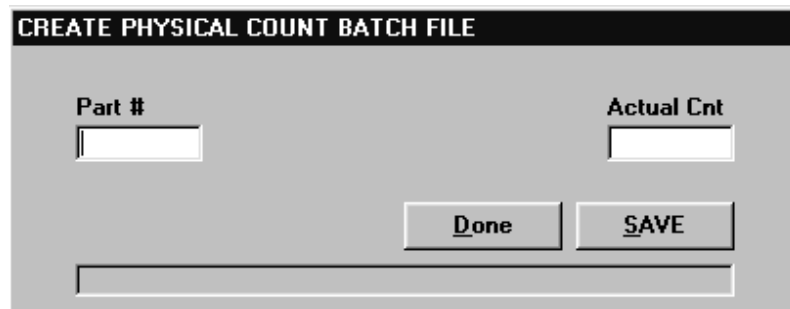
Creating a batch file means to enter the products that you need to change the actual count for as you enter each product it is put in a batch file. This batch file can hold as many products as you have part numbers for. The next step is to print this report to verify it's correct before you process the batch file and update your inventory with the correct physical count taken.

To create a physical count batch file:

- 1 Choose **Physical Count** from the **Inventory** menu.
- 2 Choose **Create Batch File**.
- 3 The following message will appear ONLY if you have already created a previous Physical Count Batch File. If you have already processed the file click **Yes**. If you haven't processed the file or are unsure click **No**.



The **Create Physical Count Batch File** box appears.



- 4 Enter the part number of the product you want to add to the batch file.
- 5 Enter the actual count for the product.
- 6 Click **Save**.

- 7 Repeat steps 3 thru 5 for each product you want to included in the batch file.

Print Shrinkage Report:

Once you have created the physical count batch file the next step is to print the shrinkage report to verify the actual count numbers are correct.

To print the shrinkage report:

- 1 Choose **Physical Count** from the **Inventory** menu.
- 2 Choose **Print Shrinkage Report**.

The Inventory Physical Count report begins printing.

This report verifies the on hand amount of each product in the batch file as well as the Actual Count and any difference between the two. The cost and shrinkage dollar amount is also listed.

Modify Batch File:

After verifying the physical count report you can modify the batch file before processing.

To modify a Batch File:

- 1 Choose **Physical Count** from the **Inventory** menu.
- 2 Choose **Modify Batch File**.

The **Modify Inventory Batch File** box appears.

MODIFY INVENTORY BATCH FILE

Part #

Count

☐ Update Flag

Rec #

- 3 Use the **Arrow buttons** to view each item.
- 4 Make any necessary changes to the **Count Field**.
- 5 Click the **Change** button after each change to the **Count Field**.
- 6 To delete click the **Delete** button.
- 7 When you have finished click the **Exit** button.

Process Batch File:

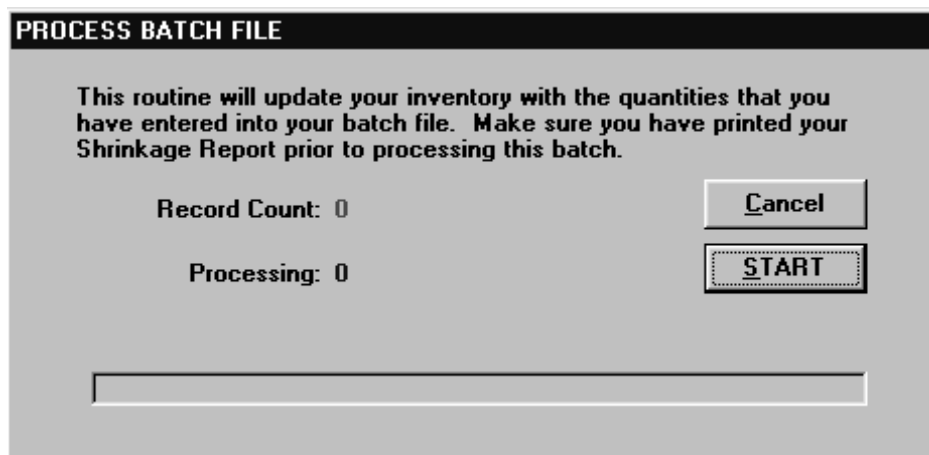
When you are satisfied with the Batch File and are ready to update the inventory to reflect the actual counts in the Batch file you need to process

the Batch File.

To Process a Batch File:

- 1 Choose **Physical Count** from the **Inventory** menu.
- 2 Choose **Process Batch File**.

The **Process Batch File** box appears.



- 3 If you want to update your inventory and process the batch file, click **Start**.

After processing, your inventory will reflect the changes to your quantity on hand totals for each product in the Batch File that was off.

Set Starting Quantity On Hand to Current Values

This feature allows you to reset all the "starting quantities" to what the current QOH is. This is sometimes done at the beginning of a new fiscal or calendar year.

Viewing Your Inventory

This section describes how to view your inventory using various view options. There are two different view boxes **View All Products** / **View Selected Inventory**. The view options are located under the Inventory menu.

To view all products:

- 1 Choose **View** from the **Inventory** menu.
- 2 Select **All Products**.

The **View All Products Window** appears.

INVENTORY BY SKU														
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Retail Products <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Professional Products Since 08/														
Sku No.	Typ	Product Description	Mfg	Cat	Grp	List Price	Sell Price	Whls Price	Ave Cost	Min	Max	QOH	Actvty	Ordere
10	R	50ml Camomile	AV	SH		2.50	2.50	0.00	1.00	6	10	8.0	0	01/23/
20	R	250ml Camomile	AV	SH		7.00	7.00	0.00	0.00	12	20	8.0	0	01/30/
30	R	500ml Camomile	AV	SH		11.50	11.50	0.00	5.00	8	12	10.0	0	01/30/
40	R	Liter Camomile	AV	SH		19.00	19.00	0.00	0.00	4	6	9.0	0	12/27/
50	P	Gallon Camomile	AV	BB		0.00	0.00	0.00	27.00	1	1	1.0	0	11/29/
60	R	50ml Clove	AV	SH		2.50	2.50	0.00	1.00	6	10	9.0	0	01/30/
70	R	250ml Clove	AV	SH		7.00	7.00	0.00	3.25	15	20	12.0	0	01/30/
80	R	500ml Clove	AV	SH		11.50	11.50	0.00	5.00	8	12	6.0	0	01/30/
90	R	Liter Clove	AV	SH		19.00	19.00	0.00	9.50	4	6	4.0	0	01/30/
100	P	Gallon Clove	AV	BB		0.00	0.00	0.00	27.00	1	1	0.0	0	11/29/
110	R	50ml Madder Root	AV	SH		2.50	2.50	0.00	1.00	6	10	27.0	0	12/27/
120	R	250ml Madder Root	AV	SH		7.00	7.00	0.00	3.25	10	15	16.0	0	12/27/
130	R	500ml Madder Root	AV	SH		11.50	11.50	0.00	0.00	6	10	14.0	0	12/27/
140	R	Liter Madder Root	AV	SH		19.00	19.00	0.00	9.50	4	6	5.0	0	01/30/
150	P	Gallon Madder Root	AV	BB		0.00	0.00	0.00	27.00	1	1	0.0	0	11/29/
160	R	50ml Blue Malva	AV	SH		2.50	2.50	0.00	1.00	6	10	9.0	0	11/29/
170	R	250ml Blue Malva	AV	SH		7.00	7.00	0.00	3.25	15	20	16.0	0	01/30/
180	R	500ml Blue Malva	AV	SH		11.50	11.50	0.00	5.00	9	12	3.0	0	01/30/
190	R	Liter Blue Malva	AV	SH		19.00	19.00	0.00	9.50	4	6	0.0	0	01/30/

Sku No. 120, Aveda, 250ml Madder Root, Shampoo													
Line = 1 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 1-3 <input type="radio"/> 4-6 <input type="radio"/> 7-													
Sku No.	Ven	Vendor Name	UPC Code	Vendor Code	Cost Price	Best Price	Best Qty	QOH	Pkg	Ordered	Qty		
121	AV	Aveda		0002400	3.25	0.00	15	16.0	1	12/27/00			

<< Prev	Next >>	Go to SKU	310	Exit
---------	---------	-----------	-----	------

This box has several can choose between Retail and Professional

- 3 If you click on a product, the product will appear in the window below with it's necessary information
- 4 If you click on that same product again within the Product Information screen below the list, the Product History and Activity will appear.
- 5 When you are finished viewing the inventory from this box, click **Exit**.

To see all your retail products:

- Click only the **Retail Setting**.

All your retail products appear in the display box.

Viewing Selected Inventory Items

This section describes how to view inventory items using selected indexes.

To look up selected inventory items:

- 1 Choose **Inventory [Selected Inventories]**

The **Selected Inventory Inquiry** box appears.

INVENTORY DISPLAY									
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Retail <input type="radio"/> Professional		<input type="checkbox"/> Display At or Below Miniums Only <input type="checkbox"/> Use Cost Prices		Std Report <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Activity Report <input type="checkbox"/> Double Space <input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="button" value="Print"/>			
Vendor		Manufacturer		Category		<input type="button" value="Exit"/>			
<input type="text"/>		<input type="text"/>		<input type="text"/>		<input type="button" value="Show"/>			
SKU	VENDOR NO.	MF	CAT	DESCRIPTION	Q-O-H	MIN	MAX	SELL	TOTAL
Empty table body for inventory display									

The Selected Inventory Inquiry box works much the same as the box in the previous section. The only difference is that it allows you to narrow your selections by choosing from the three inventory indexes. Notice that the Vendor, Manufacturer and Category indexes appear as list boxes. Unlike the previous box, you won't see products appear in the list box until you choose a Vendor, Manufacturer and Category.

- 2 If you click on a product, the **Modify Inventory** box is displayed for that product, you may modify the product as desired.
- 3 Click the desired **Inventory Settings** from the area at the top of the box. Retail, Professional and Below Minimums Only settings work independently or in combination with one another.
- 4 Select a **Vendor**, **Manufacturer** and **Category** then press **Show**.
The products meeting the criteria appear in the display box. If a scroll bar appears on the right of the display box, there are more products fitting this criteria than fit inside the box. Click the arrow to move up or down.
- 5 Change selections by selecting different **Settings** and **Indexes**.
- 6 To print the products you have listed, click the **Print** button.
- 7 When you are finished viewing inventory click **Exit**.

Printing Standard And Activity Reports

There are two reports that you can print from the Selected Inventory Inquiry box. The StdRd Report simply prints the list of products you are currently viewing. The Activity Report shows the sales of individual products for the last three months of the products you are currently viewing.

Purchase Orders

This section describes how to create and manage purchase orders.

The **Purchase Order** menu has five options: **Create**, **Receive**, **View**, **Print** and **Void an Order**. See the following illustration:



ProSolutions 8.0 provides two ways to create a purchase order: Auto or Manual Order. The following section describes both. When you create a purchase order (PO), the system can track orders and create back orders. Retail Auto-Order works the same as Professional Auto-Order.

To create a purchase order:

- 1 From the main menu, go to **[Inventory] [Purchase Orders] [Create]**
- 2 The Purchase Order window appears:

PURCHASE ORDERS

Loading information ...

P.O. Number Vendor Date Reference B.O. From

Auto-Order

☒ Below Min ☐ Below Max ☐ Used

Terms How Ship

SKU	Number	Description	Quantity	Price	Total	Tax
/en	4251	Aveda Paddle Brush		9.00		<input type="checkbox"/> Add
Jpc	21	R 250ml Camomile	12	3.50	42.00	
	71	R 250ml Clove	8	3.25	26.00	
	81	R 500ml Clove	6	5.00	30.00	
	101	P Gallon Clove	1	27.00	27.00	*
	151	P Gallon Madder Root	1	27.00	27.00	*
	181	R 500ml Blue Malva	9	5.00	45.00	
	191	R Liter Blue Malva	6	9.50	57.00	
	251	P Gallon Black Malva	1	27.00	27.00	*
	301	R Liter Detoxifier	3	14.00	42.00	
	351	P Gallon Shampure	1	38.25	38.25	*
	371	R 250ml Curessence	3	11.00	33.00	
	401	R 250 firmata	8	5.50	44.00	
	411	P gallon of firmata	1	41.25	41.25	*
	431	R 250ml Confixer	4	7.25	29.00	
	441	R 500ml Confixer	4	0.00	0.00	
	471	R 8oz Blue Malva Color Con	5	0.00	0.00	

Sales Tax Shipping TOTAL

Look-Up

Manufacturer Catetory Product

To more easily create the purchase order for what you need, select one of the Auto-Order choices. These choices are **Below Min**, **Below Max** and **Used**. **Auto-Order** automatically orders the quantity needed to bring an inventory item back up to the Maximum Stocking Quantity set for it when you added it to the inventory database. If you choose the Below Maximum setting, it will load the products that are below their maximum stocking quantity. If you choose the Below Minimum setting, it will load only products that are below their minimum stocking quantity.

The Vendor Index list box is used to select which vendor the purchase order is created for. You can select an individual Manufacturer Index or the All Manufacturers setting. The same applies for Product Categories. When you have made your selections, click the **Auto Order** button and the Product Display Box will display any products meeting the criteria you selected.

To create a purchase order using Auto Order:

- 1 Check either **Retail** or **Professional** from the **Purchase Order** window.
- 2 Choose a vendor from the Vendor list box.
- 3 Choose **Indexes** from the Manufacturer and Category list boxes.
If you select either All Manufacturers or All Categories, you will get All Manufacturers and/or All Categories for that Vendor.
- 4 Choose either **Below Minimum** to display products below their minimum stocking quantity or **Below Maximum** to display products below their maximum stocking quantity.

To add a new product to the inventory from the PO field:

- 1 Click the **Add New** button.
The Product Inventory box appears. The exact same box appears when you select Add New from the Products menu.
Complete the form as you would for a new product.
- 2 Click **Accept** to save the new product.
This returns you to the purchase order box.

To modify and/or delete a product from the PO:

- 1 Highlight the product you want to remove.
The product appears above. The delete key replaces the add key.
- 2 Modify the product and press Enter or delete the item by clicking the **Del** key.

You can include sales tax and shipping costs. The **Sales Tax** and **Shipping** fields appear at the bottom of the Purchase Order box.

To add sales tax and shipping costs:

- 1 Click the **Sales Tax** or **Shipping** field.
Type in the amount.
- 2 Click **Enter**.
The **PO Total \$**field now changes to reflect the entry. The PO Total \$field cannot be changed manually.

To view products at or below the minimum or maximum:

- Click either the **Below Min** button or the **Below Max** button.
- 3 Click the **Auto-Order** button.
Products meeting the selected criteria will appear in the Product Display box. Auto Order will order the amount necessary to bring an item back up to its maximum stocking quantity.
Items appearing in green signify that they have been set up with a Best Price Quantity. The green is to flag that this product has a Best Price Quantity, but you haven't ordered enough to take advantage of the reduced price. You may want to change the order quantity to take advantage of the better price.

For example, a product has a maximum stocking quantity of ten. The current Quantity on Hand is three and the Items per package field is set at four. *ProSolutions 8.0* will order in units of four when calculating the amount needed to bring this item back up to its maximum stocking quantity. Two units of four will be ordered, bringing the total inventory to eleven. To learn more about the Items per Package field, see the section in this chapter Adding Inventory).

Viewing Purchase Orders

This box displays information about a particular PO.

To view a purchase order:

- 1 From the main menu go to, **[Inventory] [Purchase Orders] [View]**.
The **Purchase Order Display** box appears.

PURCHASE ORDER DISPLAY

P.O. Number

<< >>

DATE: REFERENCE: STATUS:
 DATE REQ'RD: HOW SHIP: TERMS:
 VENDOR SOLD TO SHIP TO

SKU	VENDOR NO.	MF	CAT	DESCRIPTION	QTY	MIN	MAX	COST	TOTAL

TOTAL

- 2 Enter the **PO #** you want to view.
If a valid PO # is entered it will be displayed.
- 3 When you are finished viewing, click **Exit**.

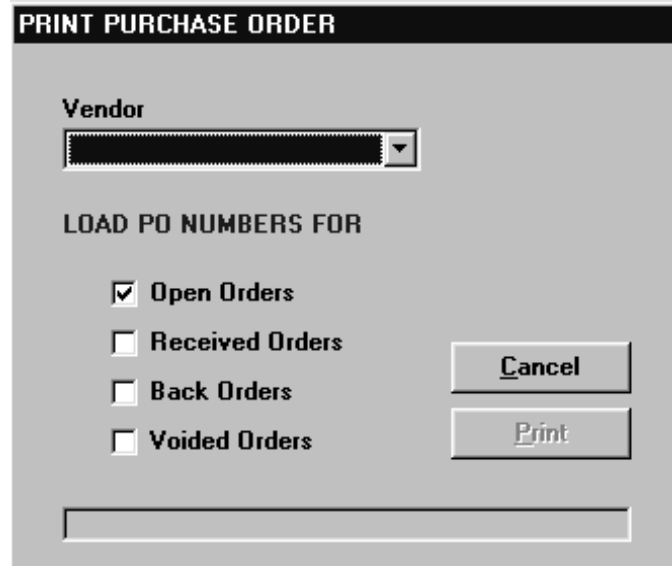
Printing Purchase Orders and Back Orders

Another item in the **Purchase Order** menu is Print. You can print selected POs. You can choose between open POs (POs not yet received), received

POs, back orders and voided orders.

To print selected purchase orders:

- 1 From the main menu go to, **[Inventory] [Purchase Orders] [Print]**.
The **Print Purchase Order** box appears.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "PRINT PURCHASE ORDER". It has a "Vendor" label above a dropdown menu. Below this is the text "LOAD PO NUMBERS FOR". There are four checkboxes: "Open Orders" (checked), "Received Orders", "Back Orders", and "Voided Orders". To the right of these checkboxes are two buttons: "Cancel" and "Print". At the bottom of the dialog is a large empty rectangular box.

- 2 Choose the **Vendor** from the Vendor list box that the PO you want to print was created for.
The PO Number list box will be displayed.
- 3 Choose one or more of the four settings: **Open Orders, Received Orders, Back Orders** or **Voided Orders**.
This will load the PO Numbers meeting the criteria you selected.
- 4 Choose the **PO Number** you want to print.
- 5 Click **Print**.

Voiding a Purchase Order

To void a purchase order:

- 1 Choose **Void a PO** from the **Purchase Order** menu.
The **Void Purchase Order** box appears.



- 2 Enter in the **Purchase Order Number** you want to void.

The vendor name and status will appear. The status lets you know if this PO has been received or not. Reference information may appear along with the date.

- 3 Click **Void**.

Receiving Orders

This section describes the Receiving Order features. You should be familiar with the Purchase Order features before continuing. Purchase Orders are covered in the previous section. There are two types of Receiving Orders: Auto and Manual. Both the Auto and Manual Receiving Order boxes work like the Auto and Manual Purchase Order boxes.

To receive an order:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Inventory] [Purchase Orders] [Receive]**.

The **Inventory Receiving** window will appear.

INVENTORY RECEIVING

Ordered
P.O. Number Vendor Date Reference B.O. From
Man. 225 Aveda 01/16/2001
 01/22/2001
Terms
How Ship

iku	Number	Description	Quantity Received	Price	Total	Tax	Add
	7651	R 1oz Deep Penetrating	10	0.00	0.00	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	7641	R 1oz Cherry Almond Bark	4	1.50	6.00	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	811	R Custom Control	7	8.25	57.75	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	261	R 50ml Curreseene	2	3.00	6.00	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	2291	R Sap Moss	14	5.50	77.00	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	2261	R 1oz Forming Gel	1	2.00	2.00	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	2251	R 1.7oz Damage Control	1	1.75	1.75	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	2141	R 1.5oz Foot Relief	15	3.25	48.75	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	2021	R Plum Fresco	5	8.50	42.50	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	7591	R Aveda Wire Brush	2	7.20	14.40	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	7571	R Lip Color Sari Pink	2	8.25	16.50	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	7501	R Chubby Sumatra	4	8.25	33.00	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	7491	R Chubby Green Tea	3	8.25	24.75	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	7411	R Tangerine	1	5.50	5.50	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	7371	R Lavender Fleurs	1	5.50	5.50	*	<input type="button" value="▲"/>
	7361	R Jasmine	1	12.00	12.00	*	<input type="button" value="▼"/>

Sales Tax 332.35 Shipping 0.00 TOTAL 5481.65

Look-Up
Manufacturer Category Product

- Select a vendor from the Vendor list box.
- Choose a **PO** from the **Use P.O.'s** list box.
The items included in the PO you selected will appear in the Product Display box.
- If the amount received is different from the amount ordered, highlight the item.
- Enter the **New Amount** or quantity that it actually came in at.
- Click **Accept**.
The new amount replaces the number under the Received column heading.
- Repeat this process for any items that were partially shipped.

- 8 To print labels for this order click the **Labels** button.

For more information on printing product labels, See the section for printing labels in this chapter and in Chapter 3.

- 9 When you have finished updating the Receiving order, click **Save and Exit**.

Setting Up Standard Product Labels

This section describes how to setup and print product labels.

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Inventory] [Labels] [User Defined Counts] [Standard Labels]**
- 2 The **Print Standard Labels** window appears.

- 3 Click **[Setup]** and the **Bar Code Setup** window appears (Note: Standard Labels will not print Bar Codes but the configuration is the same. To print Labels with Barcodes, you must select *Barcodes* instead of *Standard Labels* from the *User Defined Count* menu).

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "BAR CODE SETUP". Inside, there's a section labeled "CURRENT SETTINGS:". On the left, there are two buttons: "Cancel" and "SAVE". To the right of these buttons are several settings, each with a label and a dropdown menu. The settings are: "Label Height" (Inches, 1.0000), "Label Width" (Inches, 1.7500), "Number of Labels Across Page" (Qty, 4), "Left Margin Offset" (Inches, 0.0000), "Top Margin Offset" (Inches, 0.0000), "Printer Font" (Arial), and "Font Size" (8.0). At the bottom, there is a text input field.

The settings on the right are used to configure your label formats. The following table describes each setting.

Print Setting	Description
Height of each label	Allows you to <i>vertically</i> adjust the space the label occupies and the space to the next label.
Width of each Label	Allows you to <i>horizontally</i> adjust the space the label occupies and the space to the next label.
Number of Labels Across Page	Allows you to change the number of labels that print across the page.
Left Margin Offset	Allows you to adjust the space for the left margin.
Top Margin Offset	Allows you to adjust the space for the top margin.

- 4 Enter a new setting either by typing directly in the field setting or using the list boxes to select from the list of settings.
- 5 To save the changes, click the **Save** button.

To change fonts:

- 1 Click the **Printer Font Name** button.
The **Label Fonts** selection window appears.
- 2 Click the **Printer Fonts** list box to select another font. Do the same to select a font size.

Click the **Save** button.

To setup and print labels:

- 1 Choose **Std. Labels** from the **Labels** menu.
The **Print Standard Labels** box appears.

- 2 Enter the **Part Number** that the product labels will be printed for.
The product appears in the Description field. A label appears in the top display box along with the description, price and part number.
- 3 Enter in the **Number** of labels you want to print in the Print Quantity field.
- 4 Check the quantity and, click **Print** when ready.

Setting Up and Printing Barcode Labels

This section describes how to setup and print barcodes

To setup and print barcodes:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Inventory] [Labels] [User Defined Counts]**

[Barcodes] Click.

The **Print Bar Codes** window appears.

- 2 Enter in the **Part Number** for the desired product.

The product appears in the Description field. A barcode appears in the top display box along with the description, price and part number.

- 3 Enter in the **Number** of barcode labels you want to print in the **Print Quantity** field.

STANDARD SETTING FOR LABELS

AVERY 5167 for Laser / AVERY 8167 for Ink

Barcode Height - .15

Label Height - 0.5

Width - 2.0

Across - 4

Left Offset - .325

Top Offset - .05

Font Size 8.

Note: These are not the same settings for Mailing labels, see Chapter 3, Clients for those settings. PLEASE NOTE THE DECIMALS!

Chapter 5 - Appointments

What you'll do in this chapter

- Booking an appointment
- Multiple Service (Package Appointments)
- Using Operator Time Cells
- Simultaneously book operators and rooms
- Client Types
- Checking In A Client
- Book Twin and Double-Book type appointments
- Getting Appointment Info
- Selecting Client Information
- Printing Travel Cards
- Confirming Appointments
- Marking as a No Show
- Setting Client Attributes
- Modifying an Appointment (Service Name and Appointment Duration)
- Rescheduling
- Copy Appointments
- Unbooking Appointments
- Reschedule an appointment
- Switching from day to week views
- Search for and delete appointments
- Book Standing appointments
- Create an appointment waiting list
- View an operator(s) price list
- Confirming appointments using the Confirmation feature
- Waiting List
- Change Day View Scale

Booking Appointments

If you have not added operators and services, you need to do so before continuing. To book a standard appointment:

- 1 Choose **Appointments** from the main menu. See illustration.



- 2 Choose **Day View**.

The **Day View** window appears.

MANUAL'S SPA: APPOINTMENTS FOR TUESDAY, NOVEMBER 21, 2000

Calendar Scale Options Settings Wait List Forward Month View Week View Multi-Book Standing Appts Clients Exit

< > Client * Group All Groups Service ? Time

	Susie	Jenny	Frank	Atsumi	Marisol	Michelle	Rebecca	Birsen	Riva
15									
10:00A									
10:15A									
10:30A									
10:45A									
11:00A									
11:15A									
11:30A									
11:45A									
12:00P									
12:15P									
12:30P									
12:45P									
1:00P									
1:15P									
1:30P									
1:45P									

The Group Day View window is the main appointment window.

- 3 Click the **Group** list box.

- 4 Select the **Group** containing the service you need.
If All Groups or your Salon Name is already selected, the Service list box will contain all services.
- 5 Next click the **Service** list box.
- 6 Select a **Service**.
- 7 Next, find the **Operator/Time Cell** you want this appointment to be booked at. The Operator Time Cells look like this:

15				
	+	<	Miguel	Susie
10:00A				
10:15A				
10:30A				
10:45A				
11:00A				
11:15A				
11:30A				
11:45A				

Time Cells

10:30

11:15

11:45

About Operator/Time Cells

Each operator has his or her own column. The Time buttons are in a separate column. Each time slot is part of a row. An individual Operator/Time Cell is where a column and row intersect.

Note: The order of the operator columns are determined when you entered the operators (See 'About Adding Operators' in Chapter 2, Setup) to change this order without reentering your operators (See 'Set Appointment Operator Order' in Chapter 2 Setup).

Depending on the number of Operators in a group, you must use the Operator Scroll Buttons to view the other operators, or simply adjust the number of Operators on the screen by **pressing the + or - buttons in the upper right hand corner of the Book.**

You may have to use the vertical Time Scroll Bar to find the time you want to book at. Clicking the arrows will scroll up or down an hour at a time. If you click inside the scroll bar, you will move in four hour increments (this will vary depending upon the time increment setting used during initialization). If you changed your default time spacing during initialization, the scroll bar will move in the time increments you set.

Note: It is possible to display any operator in any cell in the Day View. This feature is described in the last part of this chapter: See 'Rearranging Operator Columns:' in this Chapter.

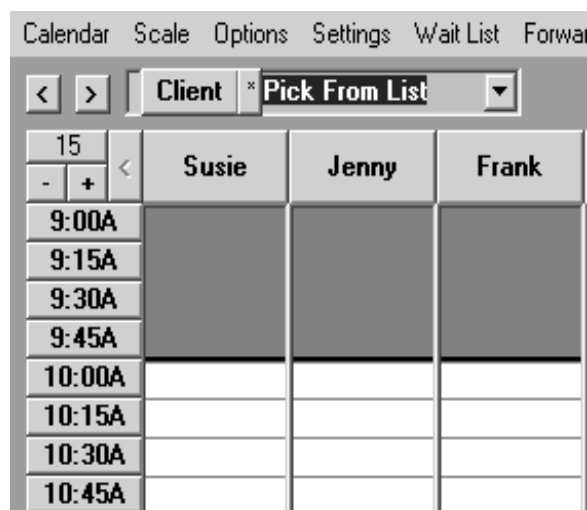
- 8 Click the **Operator/Time Cell** that you want this appointment to start at.
Three things happen when you click an Operator/Time Cell with a valid service selected. 1) the Operator's Button is underlined with Red; 2) the Time button is highlighted with Red; and 3) the Operator/Time Cells turn Blue. How many cells turn blue depends on the length of time you set for

the service.

For example, if the time divisions are every fifteen minutes and the service you selected was set for a half hour, then two Operator/Time Cells will turn blue. Blue is the default color setting and indicates the tentative booking spot for that appointment. If you changed the default color setting, another color will appear.

Setting the Appointment

- 1 Select the Group and the Service the client requested
- 2 Select the Client
 - **NEW CLIENT** - Simply Right Click on the Client button in the upper right hand corner of the book. An ADD NEW CLIENT window will appear. Fill in this client's information and ADD NOW or MORE for additional information. Once the Client's information is added, the Client's name will appear in the field to the right of the CLIENT button.
 - **CURRENT CLIENT** - Simply Left Click on the Client button in the upper right hand corner of the book. The CLIENT SELECTION window will appear. Select the first few letters of the client's last name and select ENTER. Then PICK FROM LIST will appear in the field to the right of the Client button. Use the scroll arrow and choose the client you are scheduling for:



- 3 Once the Client is selected, you can choose the time cell under the Operator of choice and left click. The time for the service will be blocked off and now you can RIGHT click on the appointment and select what TYPE of client this is. You will see the following options upon "right" clicking.
 - Request
 - New Request
 - Non Request
 - New Non Request
 - Referred
 - Bumpable

- No Type
 - Cancel Booking
- 4 These are the 7 different client types to choose from. They are color coded. For example if you select New Request the client's name will appear with a light purple line to the right of the appointment box. You can adjust these colors to whatever you choose. Eventually you will be able to simply "read" an appointment book day just by looking at the colors. The various types let you know by just looking at the appointment screen a client type, so that if a client was a New Request the operator would know this is the client's first time and it also lets the person booking appointments know that this client specifically asked for an operator and therefore should not bump them to another operator.



The above illustration shows what a booked Appointment looks like. The name of the client and the service appear in the Operator/Time Cells, the cells that are used correspond to the amount of time the service takes. The illustration above is for a 30 minute service booked at 11:15, so the 11:15 and 11:30 cells are taken up. The next available time for an appointment under this operator is 11:45.

Booking Appointments And Assigning Rooms

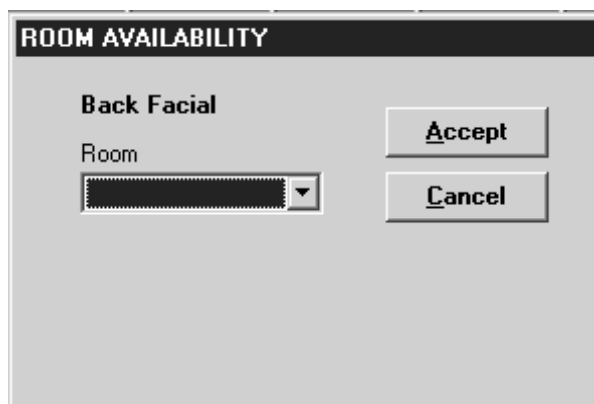
You can simultaneously book appointments in both an operator's column and a room column. This section describes this feature.

In order to set up the program to prompt for a room than you need to do four things:

- Add a room to the system. This is done the same way that you added operator's to the system the only difference is you need to type an asterisk before the room name, for example (*Room A).
- Link up the rooms to the service groups that the room can be used for. For example, if you have three massage rooms and a group of services called Massage then you need to assign each room to this group. This is done the same way that an operator is assigned to the service groups that they perform. To assign a room to a group: See *"Assigning Operators to Groups" in Chapter 2 Setup*.
- Assign the services that require a room. In addition to assigning each room to the group you can specify exactly which services need a room. To assign a service or services to rooms: See *'Services With Rooms' in Chapter 2 Setup*.
- Lastly set the preference setting, "**Prompt for Room Booking**" in **[Setup] [Preferences] [Appointments]**.

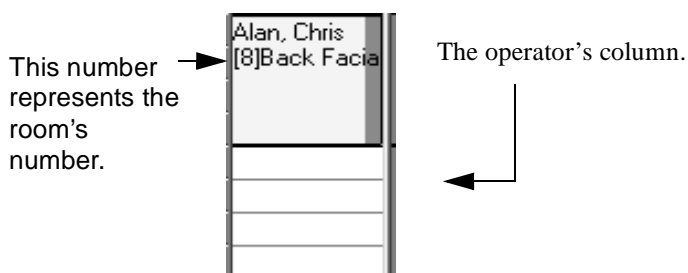
To book an appointment for both a room and an operator:

- 1 Select the Service you wish to book.
- 2 Locate the column for either the room or the operator this service will be booked in.
- 3 Book the appointment. Immediately after selecting a client the following prompt will appear.

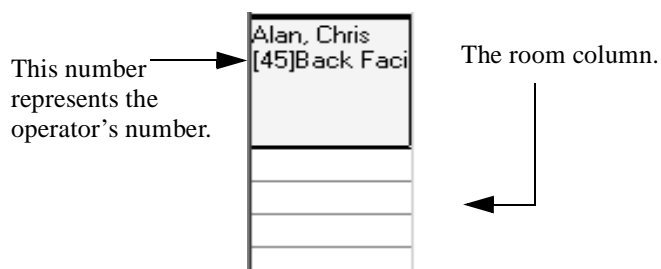


- 4 Select a room.

The appointment will now appear in both the operator's column and the room column. The name of the client is displayed as usual along with the service, the difference is a number next to the service name. This number represents the room's operator number.



- 5 If you book the service in the room column then you will be prompted to select the operator instead. The appointment will then appear as follows.

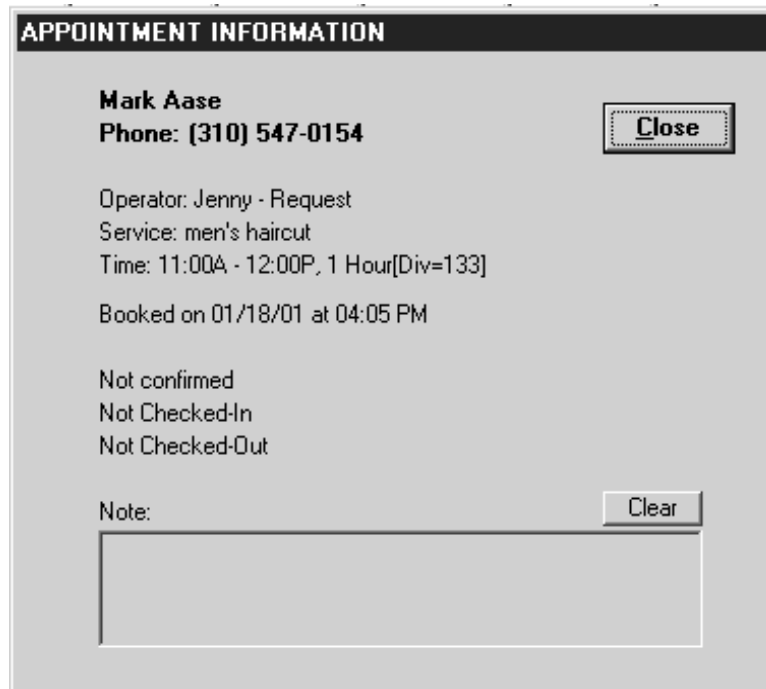


As a convenience you can see the numbers of your rooms and operators by simply placing the mouse on the Operator or Room name and a

"description box" will appear that will have the Operator number included.

To see more info or make changes to a client's appointment:

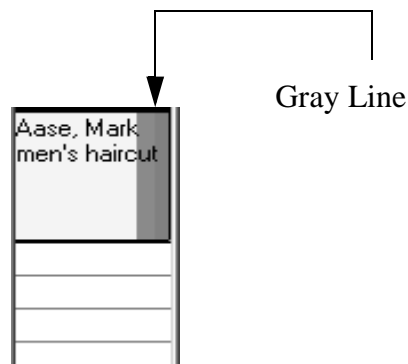
- 1 Right Click the **Operator/Time Cell** that contains the name and service.
You will see the **Appointment Information** option at the top of the list of options. Click on it.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "APPOINTMENT INFORMATION". Inside, the client's name "Mark Aase" and phone number "(310) 547-0154" are displayed at the top. A "Close" button is in the upper right corner. Below this, the appointment details are listed: "Operator: Jenny - Request", "Service: men's haircut", "Time: 11:00A - 12:00P, 1 Hour[Div=133]", and "Booked on 01/18/01 at 04:05 PM". Further down, the status is shown as "Not confirmed", "Not Checked-In", and "Not Checked-Out". At the bottom, there is a "Note:" label, a "Clear" button, and a large empty text area for notes.

Checking In A Client

You can check-in a client and have it appear on the screen with a gray line along it to show "checked- in"



To check-in a client:

- 1 Simply Right Click on the **appointment**.
- 2 Click **Check-In**.

Twin Book Appointments

This section describes how to book Twin Book appointments. These are appointments that allow for simultaneous starting times and overlapping appointments. You book a Twin Book appointment the same way you book a Standard Book appointment, unless you want to book two appointments at the same Operator/Time Cell.

If you don't have any services set as Twin Book, you need to do that before continuing: *See: 'Adding Your Salon's Services' in Chapter 2 Setup.*

Twin Bookings at the same time cell:

- 1 Select a Twin Book service from the Service list box.
- 2 Click an **Operator/Time Cell**.
- 3 Book the appointment the same way as you would a Standard Book. The appointment is booked in the very same place that the other service is booked.
- 4 You can use the same service or select another **Twin Book** service.

Multiple Service Appointment/ Packages

To setup multiple service appointments, or "packages" you must first create the packages that these refer to. In order to do this:

- 1 Go to **[Setup] [Configuration] [Appointments] [Mult-Book Package Setup]**.
- 2 The Package Setup Window will appear:

- 3 Type in a package name
- 4 Select the first service performed within the package

- 5 Customize the service (time) (delay) (price) etc.
- 6 PPress Add. The first service is now part of the package
- 7 Repeat 4 through 6 for each service that is part of this package
- 8 When complete, adjust the total price (if necessary) Then press Accept.
- 9 This package will now be on the list of packages in the Multiple Service Appointment Booking Screen.

To Book Multiple Services or Packages

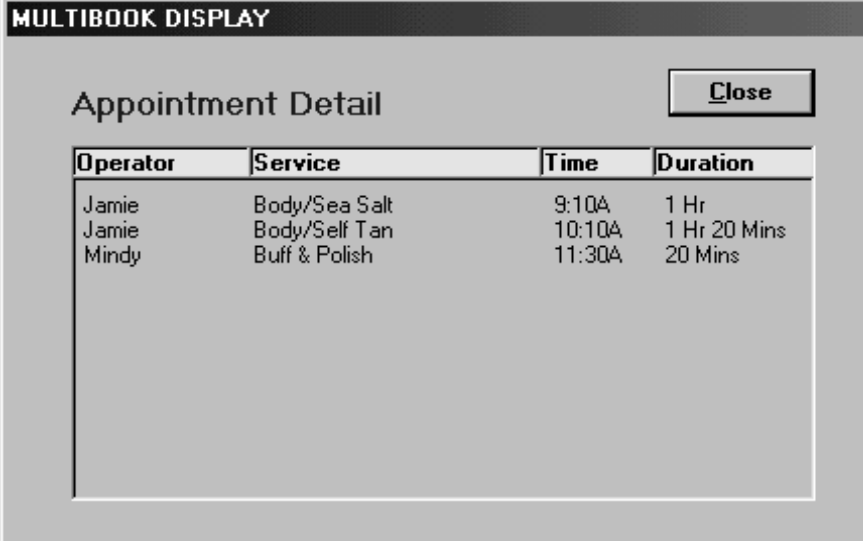
Go to **[Appointments] [Mutli-Services]**

- 1 Choose the Package Name (if any)
- 2 Choose the Number of Clients for this package or multi service
- 3 Choose the Date or Date Range for the appointment book to look in for open slots.
- 4 Choose M-morning A-Afternoon E-Evening or ALL for the Start time.
- 5 Select GO.

The possible choices will begin to load. When an acceptable choice has loaded, select STOP then highlite the choice.

- 6 You can view the details of the choice by selecting SHOW.

The Appointment detail window will appear.



Appointment Detail				Close
Operator	Service	Time	Duration	
Jamie	Body/Sea Salt	9:10A	1 Hr	
Jamie	Body/Self Tan	10:10A	1 Hr 20 Mins	
Mindy	Buff & Polish	11:30A	20 Mins	

- 7 Close the detail window
- 8 Now it is time to choose a client. Right Click on the [?] Question Mark for a NEW CLIENT or simply click on it for a current client.
- 9 Once you have picked your client from the list the package will be booked!

What if it's not a Package?

To book multiple services individually:

- 1 In the **Package** field choose **Multi-Service**
The **Multi-Service** window appears. (Next Page)
- 2 Select the operator and service for each appointment you want to book for a client.
The time duration will be filled in with the time the service was initially set for. You can adjust the time duration as needed.
- 3 Once the choices have been made, select **ACCEPT**.

Operator	Service	Time	Stop
[?]			<input type="checkbox"/>
>>			<input type="checkbox"/>
>>			<input type="checkbox"/>
>>			<input type="checkbox"/>
>>			<input type="checkbox"/>
>>			<input type="checkbox"/>
>>			<input type="checkbox"/>
>>			<input type="checkbox"/>
>>			<input type="checkbox"/>
>>			<input type="checkbox"/>

Service Selection

Operator: Any Operator

Service:

Time:

☐ Insert before line

Package Templates:

Cancel Accept

After Choosing ACCEPT, do the following:

- 4 Choose the Number of Clients for this package or multi service.
- 5 Choose the Date or Date range for the appointment book to look in for open slots
- 6 Choose M-Morning A-Afternoon E-Evening or ALL for the START time.
- 7 Select GO
The Possible Choices will begin to load. When an acceptable choice has loaded, select STOP then highlight the choice.
- 8 You can view the details of the choice by selecting SHOW.
- 9 The Appointment detail window will appear.
- 10 Close the detail window
- 11 Now it is time to choose a client. Right click on the [?] Question Mark for a NEW CLIENT or simply click on it for a current client.

- 12 Once you have picked your client from the list, the package will be booked!

Package Manager

The Package Manager is a useful tool to "pre book" packages without a client name. This will in effect "reserve" the space and time for later use. As you get closer to the day of the pre-booked package, you can unbook and fill the time if it hasn't already been taken.

Use the Package Manager to book a Package

Go to **[Appointments] [Mutli-Services]**

- 1 Choose the Package Name
- 2 Choose the Date or Date Range for the appointment book to look in for open slots.
- 3 Choose M-morning A-Afternoon E-Evening or ALL for the Start time.
- 4 Select GO.

The possible choices will begin to load. When an acceptable choice has loaded, select STOP then highlite the choice.

- 5 You can view the details of the choice by selecting SHOW.

The Appointment detail window will appear.

MULTIBOOK DISPLAY			
Appointment Detail			
Close			
Operator	Service	Time	Duration
Jamie	Body/Sea Salt	9:10A	1 Hr
Jamie	Body/Self Tan	10:10A	1 Hr 20 Mins
Mindy	Buff & Polish	11:30A	20 Mins

- 6 Close the detail window
- 7 Press **Reserve Package**
- 8 It will prompt you to book rooms at this time if necessary.

Go to **[Appointments] [Package Manager]** and the package manager window will appear:

PACKAGE MANAGER

Package: **Day of Beauty**

Client Selection: **?**

From: **08/16/01** To: **08/17/01**

Package Description:

AVAILABILITY

Fri, Aug 17, 2001

8:20A - 12:30P
8:40A - 12:40P

Auto-Replace in 2 week(s). Remove if not used in 5 days

Buttons: Exit, Setup, Status, Unbook, Details, Book

- 1 Choose the package name
- 2 Select a date range
- 3 All available "pre-booked" packages will show for this range
- 4 Select the client name and book it! That's all there is too it!

Editing the Package Manager

You can make adjustments to the package manager by selecting **SETUP** in the Package Manager window. *see below:*

The screenshot shows the 'PACKAGE MANAGER SETUP' dialog box. It contains several input fields and buttons. Annotations with arrows point from text boxes on the right to specific fields in the dialog:

- An arrow points from the text 'If the Package hasn't been booked, you can have it removed by using this' to the 'Remove reserved packages if not booked within this number of days from current date:' field, which contains the value '5'.
- Another arrow points from the text 'If the package has been used, you can have it automatically replaced with a new "blank" by using this.' to the 'Auto-replace packages in this number of weeks from date package was used:' dropdown menu, which is currently set to '2 Weeks'.

The dialog box fields include:

- 'Set From date to current date plus this number of days:' with a text input field containing '0'.
- 'Set To date to From date plus this number of days:' with a text input field containing '28'.
- 'Remove reserved packages if not booked within this number of days from current date:' with a text input field containing '5'.
- 'Auto-Remove By Package' section with a list box containing 'The Good Stuff [Default]' and 'Day of Beauty [Default]', and a '# of Days' text input field containing '0'.
- 'Auto-replace packages in this number of weeks from date package was used:' with a dropdown menu set to '2 Weeks'.
- 'Compress list display' checkbox, which is unchecked.
- 'Accept' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Current Appointment Options

All options available for a current appointment are available through a simple **Right Click** on the Appointment in question. The the following options will appear:

- Appointment Info
- Client Information
- Client Appointments
- Check In
- Check In All
- Print Travel Card
- Confirm Appointment
- Mark as No Show
- Set Attribute
- Set as Client
- Change Service Name
- Change Appointment Duration
- Change Client Type
- Mark as Package

- Mark as Standing
- Mark as Series
- Reschedule
- Copy Appointment
- Unbook
- Unbook All This Day

Appointment Info


See pages 196 and 197 in this Chapter.

Client Information

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question.
- 2 Left Click on **Client Information**.

The Client Information Window appears:

Client Information for Lisa Elliot

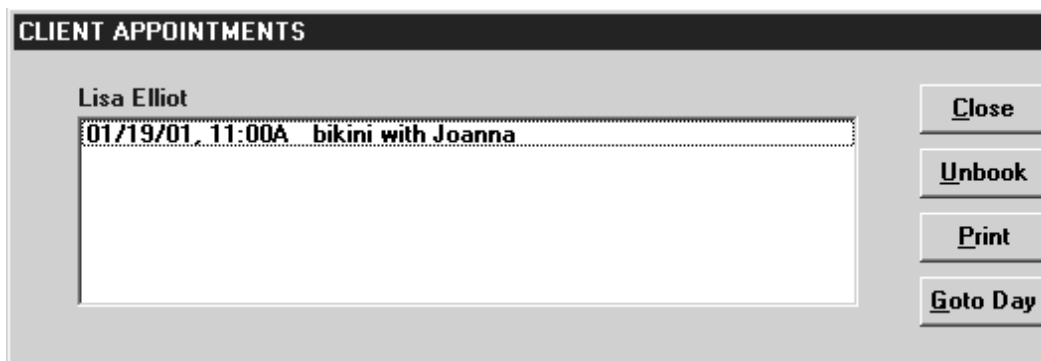
9655				Photo Files		<input type="radio"/> Male <input checked="" type="radio"/> Female	
First Name		Last Name		Lisa		Tracking	
Lisa		Elliot		Lisa		History	
Street Address		First Visit				Formulas	
3375 Motor Ave.		04/29/00				Notes	
		Last Visit				Set Popup	
City		07/30/00				Show Appts	
State		Birthday				Goto Appts	
Los Angeles		CA		01/01/70		In-Take	
Zip		Anniversary				Print	
90034						Cancel	
Driver's License		Expires		Parents Name		Accept	
CA1234567		01/01/03					
Attributes		Main Operator		Carrie			
		Clear					
Mailing Salutation		Email Address		Occupation			
Dear Ms.		Lisa@Prosalon.com		Actress			
Credit Card No.		Expires		Referred By		Rf#	
1234-5678-9012-098		01/03		Friend		0	
				Farmer, A			
Phone Numbers		Dial Phone		Sv Dscnt		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No Checks <input type="checkbox"/> Inactive	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Home <input type="radio"/> Work <input type="radio"/> Cell		Extension <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>		0.00 0.00			
(800) 710-3879							
Enter client's street address.							

- 3 Make any necessary adjustments to the file and then **Accept**.

Client Appointments

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on **Client Appointments**

The Client Appointment window will appear as below:



- 3 This window will list all appointments this client has for the day and into the future as well. It will afford you the opportunity to make adjustments to the appointments by unbooking them or by allowing you to Goto the Day of the appointment and make any necessary changes from that screen as well.
- 4 Close or Print the list of Appointments for this client.

Check In

See page 197 of this Chapter, "Checking In a Client"

Check In All

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Check in All"
- 3 Just as the standard Check In above, this will check in the client and mark the appointment with the color code showing a check-in, however it will ALSO check in all other appointments that that particular client has for the day.

Print Travel Card

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Print Travel Card"
- 3 The travel card for this client will print to your assigned printer.

Confirm Appointment

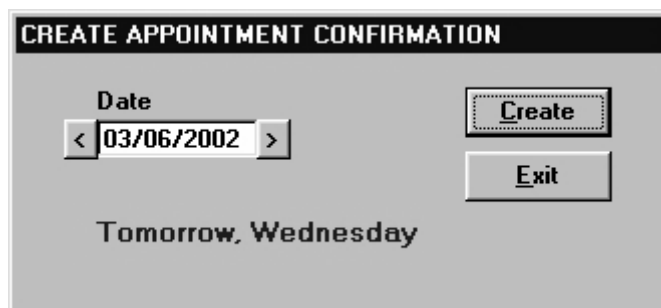
- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Confirm Appointment"
- 3 An asterisk * indicating that this appointment has been confirmed will appear next to the name of the client.

Confirm Appointments using Televox

This is a service offered by a separate company named "Televox." You can set up a Televox account by calling 800-710-3879.

In order to use the Televox Appointment Confirmation:

- 1 First, you must have a Televox account.
- 2 You must have your Special Code given you by Prosolutions, Inc..
- 3 Go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [General]**
- 4 Place a check in the box next to "Enable Televox Appointment Confirmations."
- 5 Enter the Code given you by Prosolutions, Inc..
- 6 Enter Appointments as you regularly would throughout the day.
- 7 Go to **[Appointments] [Create Appt Confirmation File]**
- 8 The following window will appear:



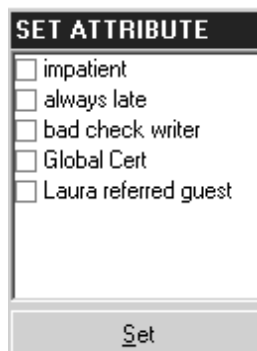
- 9 Choose the date you wish to confirm and press CREATE.
- 10 Getting this new file to Televox will be arranged by you and Televox.

Mark as No Show

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Mark as No Show"
- 3 A black line down the side of the appointment will appear indicating that this client is a "No Show" for this appointment.

Set Attribute

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Set Attribute"
- 3 The "Set Attribute Window" will appear.



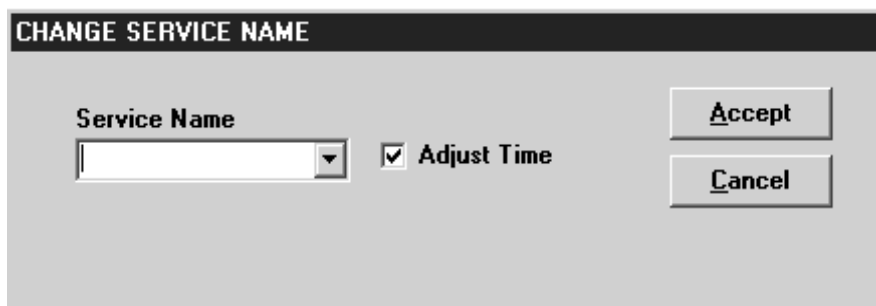
- 4 You can set attributes that fit your particular needs by going to **[Setup] [Configuration] [General] [Client Attributes]**. From the main menu.

Select as Client

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Select as Client"

Change Service Name

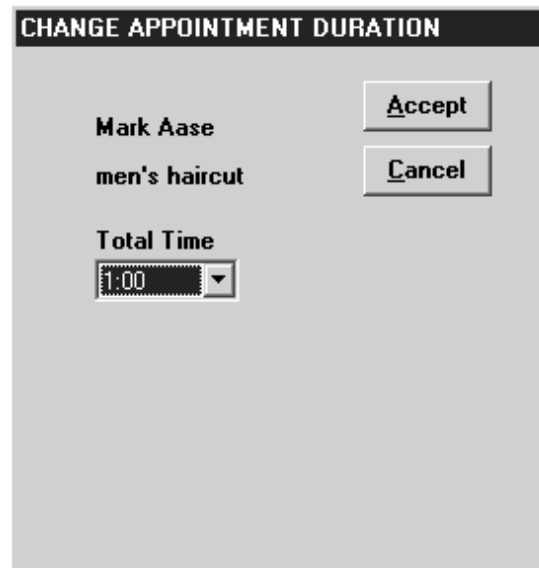
- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Change Service Name"
- 3 The "Change Service Name" window appears.



- 4 Use the scroll arrow to choose a new service.
- 5 Have the "Adjust Time" box checked if you wish the new service's standard time to be reflected. Unchecked if you want the new service to fit into the original services time frame.

Change Appointment Duration

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Change Appointment Duration"
- 3 The "Change Appointment" Window appears:



- 4 Select the scroll arrow to choose a new time for this service.

Change Client Type

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Change Client Type"
- 3 The "Change Client Type" window will appear:

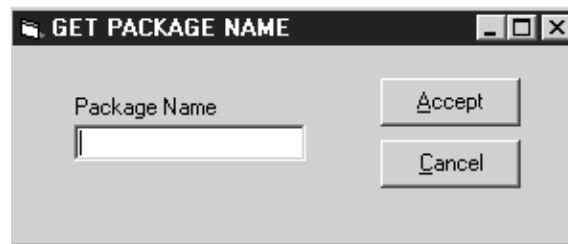


- 4 Place a dot in the radio button that corresponds to the proper client type that you wish this client to reflect.
- 5 The window will vanish and the Client will have this type.

Mark as Package

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Mark as Package."

- 3 The "Get Package Name" Window will appear"



- 4 Input the package name for this appointment and service, the package name will be reflected in the Appointment Information screen and the appointment itself will change colors to a light green to reflect the fact that you have a package name for this service. (Note: the color can be adjusted to suit your tastes.)

Mark as Standing

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Mark as Standing"
- 3 This will change the appointment color from it's default color to the color of a Standing Appointment.

The Default Standing color is Pink.

Mark as Series

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Mark as Series"
- 3 This will change the appointment color from it's default color to the color of a Series.

The Default Series color is Pine Green.

Reschedule

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Reschedule"
- 3 The selected Appointment will vanish leaving you with the ability to set the curser at any given time cell (even into the future, with the calendar feature) to reschedule.

Copy Appointment

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Copy Appointment"
- 3 There will be no noticeable change to the appointment chosen, however you can now place a duplicate of that appointment anywhere on the appointment book including into the future.

Unbook

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question

- 2 Left Click on "Unbook"
- 3 Click on the appointment you wish to unbook. The appointment will be unbooked. That's all there is to it!

Unbook All This Day

- 1 Right Click on the Appointment in question
- 2 Left Click on "Unbook All This Day"
- 3 If the client has more than one appointment set for the day, this feature will unbook them all at the same time.

Appointment Main Menu Options:

- Calendar
- Scale
- Options
- Settings
- Wait List
- Forward
- Month View
- Week View
- Multi-Book
- Standing Appointments
- Package Manager
- Clients

Calendar

- 1 Left Click on the "Calendar" button in the upper left hand corner of the Appointment menu.

The Calendar window will appear:



- 2 Click on the day of the current month or click on a different month altogether and press the Accept Button. This will take you to that date in the appointment book.
- 3 Once you have finished with the future or past date, click on "Calendar" again and simply press the "Today" button and you will be taken back to the current date.

Scale

- 1 Left click on the "Scale" button and a list of minute interval options will appear. 5 - 10 - 15 - 20 - 30 - 60. This is the number of minutes that each time cell will occupy on the appointment book. By simply left clicking on any of these options, the appointment book will be instantly adjusted temporarily to these new intervals.

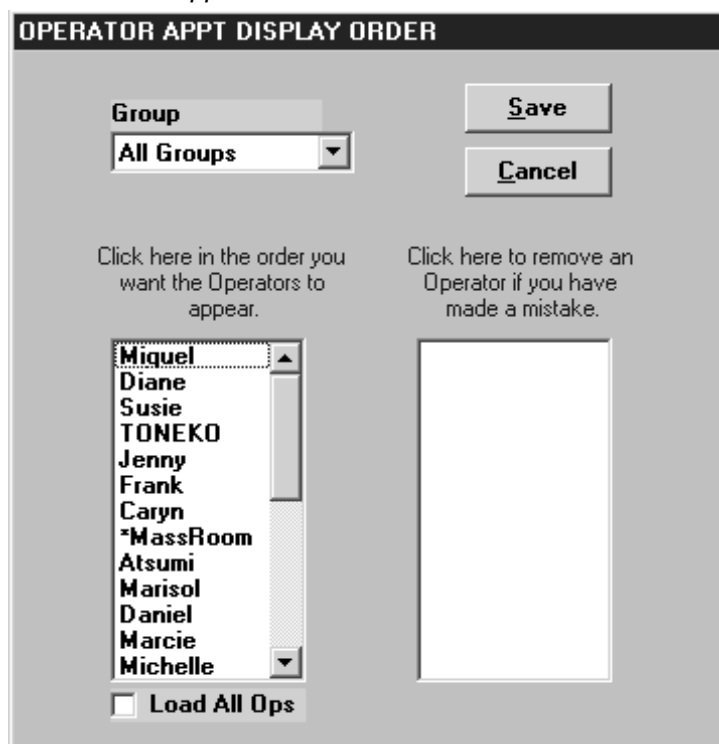
Options

- 1 Left Click on the "Options" button and the following three appointment book options will appear:
 - **Show All Columns in a Group**
 - **Show Only Those Working**
 - **Look Up Client by First Name**
- 2 *Show All Columns in a Group* if this is checked, only those columns of operators and rooms that appear within the selected group will appear, if only 4 are within this group, then those four will occupy the entire appointment book until you choose a new group.
- 3 *Show Only Those Working* if this is checked, only the operators and/or rooms that are scheduled to work will appear on the appointment book for that day. Any unscheduled Operators will disappear from the book even if they perform the particular service selected.
- 4 *Look up Client by First Name* if this is checked, the Client button for

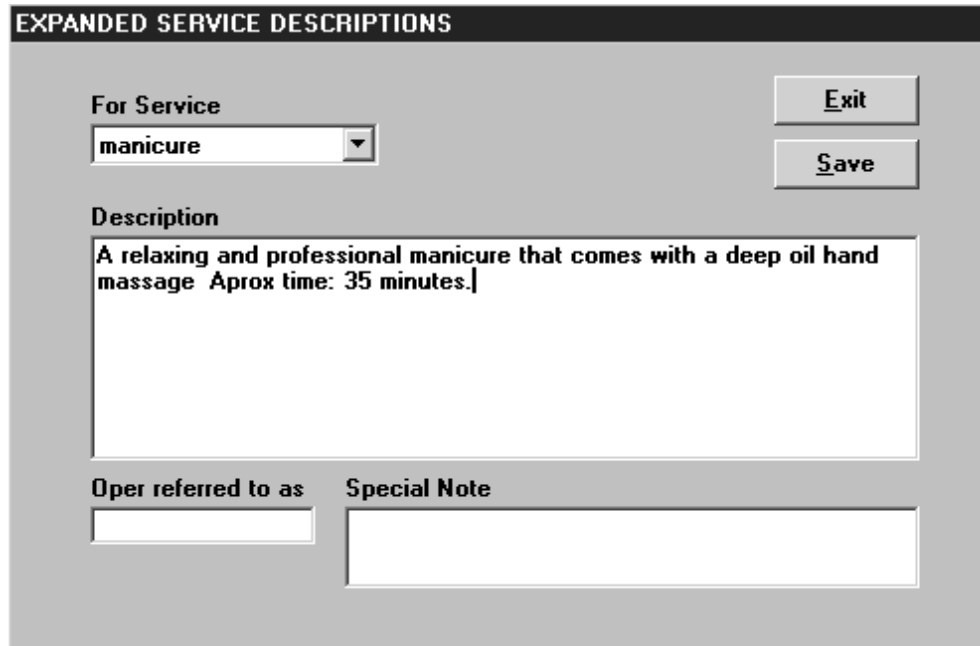
lookup will default to the first name rather than the last. Be sure that if this is checked that you enter the letters of the *first* name when attempting to locate a client.

Settings

- 1 Left Click on "Settings" and the following options will appear:
 - **Screen Colors** - The color settings window will appear and show you the "legend" of what all the colors used in the appointment book mean. It will also permit you to customize the colors if you do not like the default colors.
 - **Set Operator Display Order** - the Set Operator Display Order window will appear:



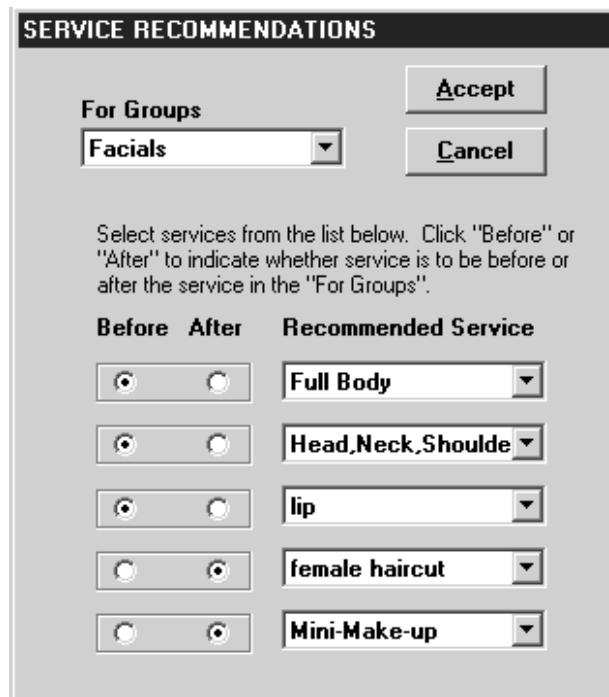
- Next, you simply click on the name of the operators in the order you want them to appear on your appointment book. **NOTE:** This is a temporary change. If you leave appointments and return, the Operator screen will revert to the order of original placement.
- **Expanded Service Descriptions** - Left Click on "Expanded Service Descriptions" The Expanded Service Description window appears:



The dialog box is titled "EXPANDED SERVICE DESCRIPTIONS". It contains a "For Service" dropdown menu with "manicure" selected. To the right are "Exit" and "Save" buttons. Below is a "Description" text area containing the text: "A relaxing and professional manicure that comes with a deep oil hand massage Aprox time: 35 minutes." At the bottom, there are two text input fields labeled "Oper referred to as" and "Special Note".

Select the service and put in as much information as you wish as an easy reference to describe services to clients.

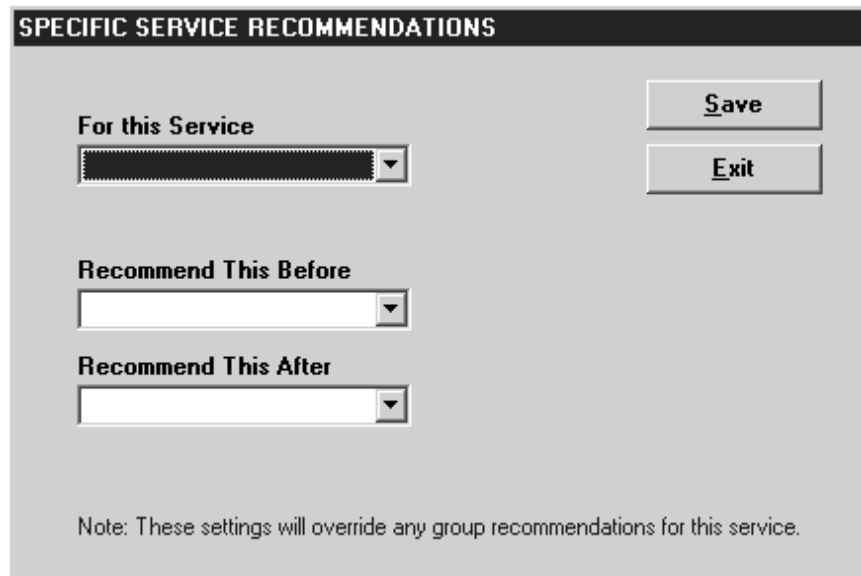
- **Upsell Recomendations [Group] [Service]** - Left Click on Upsell Recomendations and the options "Group" and "Service" will appear. If you select "Group" the following window will appear:



The dialog box is titled "SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS". It has a "For Groups" dropdown menu with "Facials" selected, and "Accept" and "Cancel" buttons to its right. Below this is a text instruction: "Select services from the list below. Click 'Before' or 'After' to indicate whether service is to be before or after the service in the 'For Groups'".

Before	After	Recommended Service
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Full Body
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Head,Neck,Shoulde
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	lip
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	female haircut
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Mini-Make-up

Select the Group for the appointment, then select the services for before and after upselling. If you choose the "Services" tab, the following window will appear:



SPECIFIC SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

For this Service
[Dropdown Menu]

Recommend This Before
[Dropdown Menu]

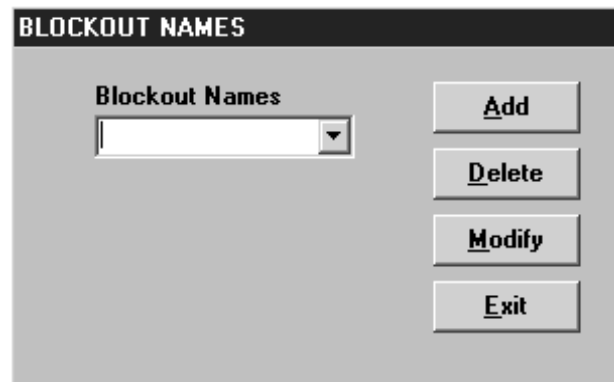
Recommend This After
[Dropdown Menu]

Save
Exit

Note: These settings will override any group recommendations for this service.

Select the particular service and then choose a service to recommend both "before" and "after" the service. The software will automatically look for openings for these options when this particular service is booked.

- **Blockout Names** - Left Click on "Blockout Names" and the following window will appear:



BLOCKOUT NAMES

Blockout Names
[Dropdown Menu]

Add
Delete
Modify
Exit

Simply type in a name like "Lunch" or "Meeting" and Click the "Add" button. Keep doing this till all the blockout names you use have been set up.

Wait List

The Waiting List is an excellent feature that allows you to put a client on "hold" for a particular Operator into the future. The system will tell you when the Client will be able to see that Operator for a particular service if the Operator is currently unavailable. To use this feature, simply Click on "Wait List" then click on "Place on Waiting List." The following window will appear:

PLACE ON APPOINTMENT WAITING LIST

Client

For Operator

For Service

Effective Date Range
From To

Acceptable Days of the Week
S M T W T F S
☐ ☐ ☐ ☒ ☐ ☐ ☐

Start Time ☐ A ☐ P

End Time ☐ A ☐ P

Note:

Choose the Client, the Operator, and the Service. Then pick the date range that the Client is interested in. Click Save, and that's all there is to it!

You can view the waiting list at any time by simply selecting "Display Waiting List." The View window will appear:

WAITING LIST

Waiting List

Phone:

S M T W T F S From Date To Date Start Time End Time Status

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

Note:

Forward

- 1 Left Click on "Forward".
- 2 Choose how far into the future you wish the Appointment Book to go, from 1 to 8 weeks from the current day. Once you have finished whatever it was you needed to do on that day, simply go back to Forward and click "Return to Today." The Appointment book will bring you back to the current day.

Month View

- 1 Left Click on "Month View" and the Month View window will appear. This feature is so that you can view a particular Operator's schedule for their ability to have a service or two in a row booked on a certain day.

View the window below:

- 2 As you make your selections, more and more of the operator's month will be made unavailable until you see what they can and cannot perform in relation to the service or services you have chosen for them, and then you can book them!

Choose the Month Choose the Operator and Service or Services. List of Available times

MONTH APPOINTMENTS

Month: Jan Year: 2002 < >

Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thr	Fri	Sat
		1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19
20	21	22	23	24	25	26
27	28	29	30	31		

Client Name: _____

Therapist: _____ Service: _____ Service: _____

On File New

Guest Type: _____

Available Times: _____

Book It

Cancel

Choose your Client Book your Choice of times

Week View

- 1 Left Click on "Week View" and you see the Appointment Book change it's standard format to show the entire week to several weeks worth of appointments.

Multi-Book

- 1 The "Multi-Client Multi-Book" will allow you to book multiple clients for single services or multiple services all at the same time. This is especially helpful if you have a group of people that are "together." Left Click on "Multi-Book" and you will see the following window:

MULTI-CLIENT MULTI-BOOK

Package ▼

Clients 1 ▼

Processing

< Wed, Jan 24, 2001 >

S	M	T	W	T	F	S
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30	31			

Optimization

☒ Max
 ☐ 1st No Short
 ☐ 1st Avail

Starting 01/24/01
 Ending 01/24/01
☐ All
 ☐ M
 ☐ A
 ☐ E

Start Time 08:00A ▼ Stop Time 08:00P ▼

Date Time [P] Found

Go
Show

Stop
Book

Customize
Print

Cancel

Client Selection ? ▼

- 2 Now choose a package or a single service, then choose the date range that they are interested in and choose whether you simply want the first available booking or a list of available bookings.
- 3 Select "Show" this will bring up a list of available appointments.
- 4 Choose an appointment that suits your client's needs and press "Book."
- 5 Select the client you wish by "Left Clicking" on the question mark under Client Selection, or Select a New Client by "Right Clicking" on the question mark.

Standing Appointments

- 1 Left Click on "Standing Appointments."

STANDING APPOINTMENTS

Client: [dropdown] ?

Operator: [dropdown]

Service: [dropdown]

Request Type: [dropdown]

Service Time: [dropdown]

Time of Day: [dropdown]

Start Date: 01/25/01 [calendar button]

Frequency: [dropdown]

of Visits: [dropdown]

Buttons: Show, Print, Book, Cancel

☐ Auto-Standing

Date	Time	Status	Operator	Service
------	------	--------	----------	---------

- 2 Now choose a service, then choose the first date that they are interested in.
- 3 Select the "Client Type" and the "Time of Day" they would most like the appointments.
- 4 Select the "# of Visits" and the frequency that they are to come in.
- 5 Select the client you wish by "Left Clicking" on the question mark under Client Selection, or Select a New Client by "Right Clicking" on the question mark.
- 6 Select "Show" this will bring up a list of available appointments and their dates, confirm that these are acceptable to the client and press "Book."

Package Manager

Left Click on this option to access the Package Manager features. Remember, to use Package Manager, you need to have pre-booked "blank packages" using Multi-Service already. For more information on this, see earlier in this chapter.

Clients

- **Client Information** - Left Click on this option and the Client Selection window will appear. Select the client you are interested in and their "Client Information" will appear for viewing or modifying.
- **Client Appointments** - Left Click on this option and the Client Selection window will appear. Select the client you are interested in and a list of all of their current and future appointments will appear.
- **Set Pop-Up Notes** - Left Click on this option and the Client Selection window will appear. Select the client you are interested in and the "Client Notes" window will appear allowing you to place a note that will immediately "pop up" every time this client is selected until you clear it.

Chapter 6 - Sales

What you'll do in this chapter

- Review the register options
- Process service and retail sales
- Learn to sell Series and Gift Certificates
- Learn about various Sales window functions
- Learn the Register options
- View transactions
- Partnership Program
- Credit Cards with PcCharge
- Using Gift Cards

About The Sales Window

You should go through this entire chapter before attempting to process actual sales. This chapter describes every aspect of the Sales window features and options. Each section builds on the previous section so you can learn about the Sales window one step at a time. Occasionally a section may refer to features or options that will be covered in detail later in the chapter.

The following illustration of the Sales window outlines the key areas.

To enter the Sales window:

- Choose **Sales** from the **Main** menu.

Sales for Tuesday, September 12, 2000

Register Appt Schedule View Book Appts TimeClock Exit

☐ Print Receipt

Current Appointments

00000142

Services: \$0.00

SERVICES f1	CLIENT NAME	OPERATOR	SERVICE	PRICE
Services Window				

Products: \$ 0.00

TIPS f4	CLIENT NAME	SOLD BY	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PRICE	TOTAL
Product (retail) Window						

NOTES f5

SERIES f6

GIFT CERT f7

CLEAR Ctl+f8

PAYMENT f8

x Sales Tax Rate = 8.250

SUB-TOTAL 0.00

TOTAL 0.00

AMT PAID 0.00

On File

New

One Time

Hold

Client Info

Appts

History

Exit

Opening the Cash Register

The very first time you attempt to create a transaction *ProSolutions 8.0* will prompt you to allow you to add money to the drawer. This prompt only appears the very first time you are in the drawer. The drawer count can be changed each day by closing with whatever amount you want to leave in the drawer for the next day. For this reason it is not important to fill out the drawer count at this point.

Opening the cash drawer for the first time:

- 1 If you are not already in the Sales window, click **Sales** from the main menu.
- 2 As soon as you attempt to do a sale the opening cash register box appears.

OPEN CASH REGISTER

Date

Drawer No. 1

Cents

Nickles

Dimes

Quarters

Halves

Dollars

Fives

Tens

Twenties

Fifties

Hundreds

☐ Keypad

TOTAL

- 3 Fill in your starting cash.

This is optional at this point, since it is not typical to start using the system without first practicing.

A starting balance can be reset by either clearing out all transactions and starting over with transaction number 1, or, by just closing with the amount you would like to open with as your final register amount: See *'Closing The Register' in Chapter 6 Sales*.

- 4 Click **Accept**.

Processing Sales

This section describes how to process sales. When a client comes up to the front desk to pay their bill, they will most likely fall under one of four different categories.

The four categories are:

- 1 An existing client who has an appointment booked in the system that day. *ProSolutions 8.0* provides a list box labeled "Current Appointments" containing all the clients with appointments that day that have not yet been processed, in order of appointment time. You can select a client from the list. This automatically adds the clients name, Operator, Service and the price to the Point of Sale screen. This is the easiest and most efficient way to process a client. It saves you the trouble of filling in the same information manually.

- 2 An existing client who doesn't have an appointment.

For a client that didn't book an appointment, use the client selection window to select the client. Then add the operator, service and price.

- 3 A new client.

You need to add a new client into the system before you can process the sale. *ProSolutions 8.0* gives you the ability to add new clients while in the Sales window.

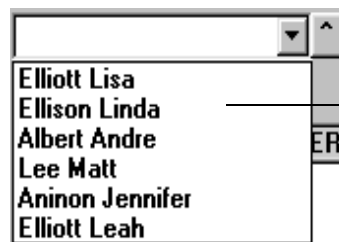
- 4 A one time client.

One time clients are clients that you do not want to create a file for such as a tourist that is just in the area and will never return.

The following section describes how to process each of the above categories. If you are not in the Sales window, click **Sales** from the main menu.

To process a client with an appointment:

- 1 Click the **Current Appointments** list box. See illustration.



— All Clients with appointments that day.

The list of clients with appointments booked for that day will appear in the current appointments list box.

- 2 Select a client.

The client's name, operator's name, services rendered and price will be transferred to the services window.

You then complete the sale. Add any additional transaction information such as a retail product or a tip, select a payment type and accept the sale.

To process existing clients with no appointment:

- 1 Select **On File**.

The Client Selection window appears.

- 2 Select a client.

The client's name will be transferred to the **Services** window.

- 3 Click the **Services** button.

The **Services Selection** window appears.

- 4 Select an operator.
The Services list box appears.
- 5 Highlight the service or services the client is paying for.
- 6 Click **Last** to add your selections to the Services window or Click **More** to add services for another operator. To return to the Sales window without making a selection, click **Cancel**.

Complete the sale, adding any additional transaction information such as a retail product, by selecting the retail button, tip or any necessary modifications. Enter a payment type by selecting the "payment" button and accept the sale by selecting the "Accept" button that appears after you select the payment type.

To process a New client:

- 1 Click the **New** button.
The Add New window appears. Enter the client's name and phone number if desired. To add more information about a new client, click the **More** button, otherwise just click **Add New**, this creates the client record and places the client's name in the sales window.
- 2 Click **Accept** to enter the new client into the Services window.
- 3 Click the **Services** button.
- 4 Select an operator.
- 5 Highlight the service the client is paying for.
- 6 Click **Accept** to add your selections to the Services window. To return to the Sales window without making a selection, click **Cancel**.

Complete the sale, adding any additional transaction information such as a

retail product, tip or any necessary modifications. Enter a payment type and accept the sale.

To process a One Time client:

- 1 Click the **One Time** button.
The words **One Time** under the **Client Name** heading will appear in the services window.
- 2 Click the **Services** button.
- 3 Select an operator.
- 4 Highlight the **Service** the client is paying for.
- 5 Click **Accept** to add your selections to the Services window. To return to the Sales window without making a selection, click **Cancel**.

Complete the sale, adding any additional transaction information such as a retail product, tip or any necessary modifications. Enter a payment type and accept the sale.

Placing a Transaction on Hold

Placing Client on Hold

Sometimes you need to interrupt a transaction while you're in the middle of it. Perhaps the client wants to view some of your merchandise before completing the sale and there is an impatient client behind them. Or any other of many scenarios that involve placing a client and their transaction on hold.

- 1 If the transaction is on the screen but you have not accepted their method of payment in the "Payment" window and the "ACCEPT" button has not yet appeared.

If you see this button it's too late to place on hold. →



- 2 At any time during the transaction prior to reaching the ACCEPT button, you can press the **"Hold"** button. The transaction will be completely cleared and you are ready to process somebody else.
- 3 Once the client on "Hold" come back, you can pull back up their transaction for completion by pressing the the "^" button next to "Current Appointments".



Press this button to view client's on hold.

- 4 Use the Scroll down arrow and select the client on hold you wish to pro-

cess. Then simply continue the transaction process as normal.

Selling Retail Products

You can sell products separately or add products to a service(s) sale.

Selling a retail product:

- 1 From the **Sales** window, select the **client**.
If you don't want to add a client, *ProSolutions 8.0* will treat the client as a **One Time** sale.
- 2 Click the **Retail** button.
The **Retail Purchases** window appears.

From this window select the product you want to add to the Sales window.

- 3 Enter the part number into the **Product #** field.
If you enter a valid part number, the description, quantity on hand and price appear in the respective fields. If you enter an invalid part number, *ProSolutions 8.0* will alert you. You can use the Search button to find a product that you don't know the part # of. If you have a Barcode Scanner, scan it now.

To learn more about the Search feature: See 'To search for a product:' in *Chapter 4 Inventory*.

- 4 To search by the vendor part number click the Use Vendor Part Number check box, then enter the vendor part number.
This allows for use of a manufacturer's barcode. To activate this if you have already added inventory, go to the main menu then select **[Utilities] [Database Repairs] [Most Common Repairs]** and run the Database Repair Utility labeled Rebuild Vendor Part Number Index.

There is a preference setting to use vendor part numbers as the default: See 'System Preference Settings' in Chapter 2 Setup.

- 5 Enter the quantity.
- 6 To select a product using the list boxes select the manufacturer and category. Products will appear in the Product Description list box.
- 7 To add another product, click the **More** button.
- 8 Choose a commission (optional). If you don't pay commissions, the system credits the salon by default. Notice that the selection **Salon Sale** appears automatically.

NOTE: As a preference you can have *ProSolutions 8.0* automatically post the operator that sold a particular product to a particular client. If you would like to invoke this preference: See 'System Preference Settings' in Chapter 2 Setup.

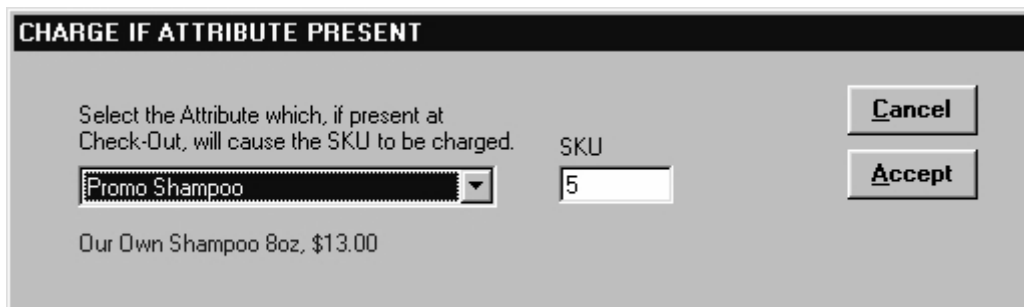
- 9 When you have made your selections, click the **Last** button.

Complete the sale, adding any additional transaction information such additional retail products, tip or any necessary modifications.

Charge if Attribute Present at POS

This feature assumes that you have set up attributes (Chapter 3) and that you have assigned an attribute to an appointment (Chapter 5).

- 1 Go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Appointments]**
- 2 Place a check next to **Charge if Attribute Present at POS**
- 3 The following Window will appear:



- 4 Select the Attribute in the drop down menu.
- 5 Select the SKU # of the Product you wish to "auto-charge" for this particular appointment.
- 6 Press ACCEPT.

Now, when you pull a client up through the "Current Appointments" list, if they have this attribute present on their appointment then the "Retail" portion of the POS screen will automatically apply the product referenced by

the SKU to the sale. That's all there is to it!

Processing Professional Products

A Professional product (Back Bar product) can be processed with the sale like a retail product, however, no price is added to the sales totals unless the preference setting Charge Professional Products is set: *See 'System Preference Settings' in Chapter 2 Setup.*

To add a professional product to a transaction:

- 1 Click the **Professional** button.
- 2 Follow the same steps to add a retail product.

The Professional item is added to the **Products** window.

If a price is posted no sales tax is applied.

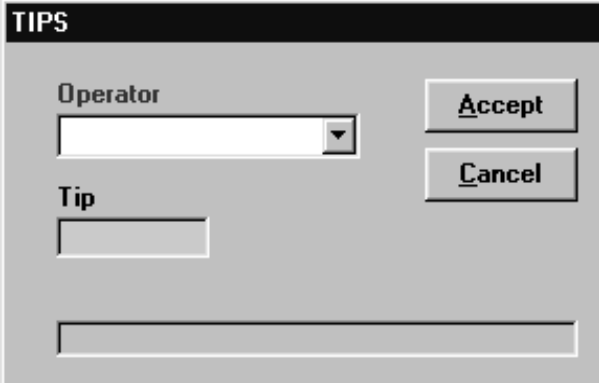
Note: The **Professional** button can be removed from the sales screen by setting an advanced preference setting under the Sales Register Settings. For information on preference settings: *See 'System Preference Settings' in Chapter 2 Setup.*

Adding Tips

You can add a tip to the transaction.

To add a tip:

- 1 Click the **Tip** button.
The Tip window appears.



- 2 From the **Operator** list box, select the operator receiving the tip.
By default, the operator appearing in either the service or product windows is selected.
- 3 Enter in the amount.
- 4 Click **Accept**.

The tip is entered into the **Services** window.

Note: The **Tips** button can be removed from the sales screen by setting an advanced preference setting under the Sales Register Settings. For information on preference settings: *See 'System Preference Settings' in*

Chapter 2 Setup.

Adding a Note To A Service Transaction

You can add notes to each individual service and retail entry. These notes will become a part of the client history file.

To add a note to a service:

- 1 Click the **Notes** button.
The **Service Notes** window appears.



- 2 Type in a note.
- 3 To save the note, click **Accept**.
The Service Notes window disappears and the note is now part of the transaction. You can view and/or modify notes from the Transaction View window, high-lite the transaction and any notes for that transaction will appear.

Series

About Series

This section describes how to sell and redeem a Series. To set up a Series you need to review Chapter 2.

A Series is made up of one service that is sold in units. Series are primarily sold in Tanning Salons, but can be used for any service that you sell in units. When you sell a Series, it is added to the sale like any other item. The following gives an overview of the Series features.

- 1 You sell a series to one of your clients consisting of five units of a particular service called Series One. Each service is normally sold at \$40.00. You sell Series One for \$160.00, including a 20% discount.
- 2 The client comes back to the salon to redeem one of the services in Series One.
- 3 The receptionist can either check the status of Series One or select Series as a Payment Type to ring up the sale. The unit decreases by one. The value is entered into the transaction as the regular price.

To Sell a Series:

- 1 Click the **Series** button.

- 2 Select a **Client** from the **Client Selection** window.
The **Series** window appears.

The screenshot shows a window titled "SERIES". Inside, it says "Purchase for Client JUNIOR LEE". There is a "Series Name" dropdown menu, which is pointed to by a label "Series List Box" with an arrow. To the right of the dropdown is a "For Service" text field. Below these are four input fields: "Qty", "Unit Value", "Series Price", and "Expires On". At the bottom right are "Cancel" and "Accept" buttons. The "Accept" button has a dashed border.

- 3 From the **Services** list box select the service that this Series includes.
- 4 Enter in the expiration date this series is good for. You can go as far into the future as you like, but you **MUST** enter an expiration date.
- 5 Click **Accept**.

The series will be transferred to the Services window. Complete the sale.

Viewing a Client's Series Status

This section describes how to view a client's Series status.

To view Series status for a client:

- 1 From the main menu go to **[Sales] [View] [Client Series Status]**.
The **Client Selection** window appears.
- 2 Select the Client you want to check the Series status for.
The **Client Series Status** window appears.

CLIENT SERIES STATUS			
Client Name JUNIOR LEE		Series Number 2 Mass-30	<div>Exit</div> <div>Void</div>
For Service Mass-30		Expiration Date 	
Qty Bought 5	Qty Used 1	Dates Used 	
Purchase \$ 135.00	Value Each 30.00	Active	

The current Series status for this client consists of the client's name, the service, the quantity bought, the quantity used, the purchase price of the Series and the value of each Series. The Series list box will list any other Series this client may have. This window also shows the expiration date, if any, and the dates the client redeemed each unit.

Redeeming a Series

This section describes how to use the **Series Payment** type when a client redeems a Series.

To setup a series: See '*Setting up Package Deals*' in *Chapter 2 Setup*.

To redeem a Series:

- 1 Select a client.
- 2 Select the operator and service.
- 3 When you are ready, click the **Payment** button located at the bottom of the Sales window.

The **Payment** window appears.

4 Choose **Series**.

Two list boxes appear in the **Payment** window: **Series on File** and **Quantity to Use**.

5 From the **Series on File** list box, select the **Series**.

6 From the **Qty to Use** list box, select the **Number of Units** the client is redeeming.

The amount tendered field changes to reflect the Tendered Value. **Note:** **The tendered value is not reflected in the register as money in.**

7 Click **Accept**.

8 Complete the sale.

Gift Certificates

This section describes the Gift Certificate features.

About Gift Certificates

A gift certificate is similar to a Series. They are both sold as items, can be referenced, and appear as payment types. The key difference is that a gift certificate is a dollar for dollar exchange and the purchaser is usually not the person who redeems the certificate.

If you already have outstanding gift certificates in other words certificates that have been sold prior to installing ProSolutions 8.0 you should See *'Redeeming a gift certificate'* later in this Chapter.

To sell a gift certificate:

- 1 Click the **Gift Certificate** button.

The **Gift Certificate Purchase** window appears.

GIFT CERTIFICATE PURCHASE

PURCHASED FOR: ☐ Male ☒ Female

First Name: Last Name:

Street Address:

City: St:

Zip: Phone:

PURCHASED BY:

First Name: Last Name:

Street Address:

City: St:

Zip: Phone:

Gift Package:

Sales Source:

Sold By:

Cert \$ Amount: Expires:

Certificate No. **000008 A**

Mail To: ☒ Do not mail ☐ Recipient ☐ Purchaser

Special Handling: ☐ OverNite ☐ Pickup ☐ Blank Envelope ☒ None

- 2 Enter the name of the person the gift certificate is being purchased for.
A preference setting will enable *ProSolutions 8.0* to automatically add the recipient to your client data base. See 'System Preference Settings' in *Chapter 2 Setup*.
- 3 Select a Gift Package.
- 4 Modify or type in an **expiration date** (optional).
- 5 Modify or type in a **Cert \$Amount**.
- 6 Click either Do Not Mail, Recipient or Purchaser.
 - If you choose **Do Not Mail**, then no gift certificate will be printed.
 - If you choose **Purchaser**, the gift certificate will be printed and addressed to the purchaser.
 - If you choose **Recipient**, the gift certificate will be printed and addressed to the recipient.

- 7 You can choose a **Sales Source** and/or give credit for the sale.
- 8 If you do not want to print this certificate you should click the Print On button and it will read Print off. You can set a preference setting to always be set to Print off: See 'System Preference Settings' in Chapter 2 Setup.
- 9 When you have finished and are ready to collect the money for the certificate you should click the **Accept** button.

Note: If you cancel the certificate, the number displayed for the certificate will be voided automatically. This is necessary to accommodate *ProSolutions 8.0* on a network.

To add a Message to the gift certificate:

- Click the **Message** button.
- Add a message
- You can also override the **From** field.

To check a gift certificate status:

- 1 From the Sales Screen go to **[View] [Gift Certificate Satus]**.
The **Gift Certificate Status** window appears.

- 2 In the **Cert. #** field, enter the number of the gift certificate you want to check.
You can use the arrow buttons to scroll through the gift certificate numbers.
- 3 When you are finished viewing, click **Exit**.

Modifying a gift certificate:

- 1 From the Sales Screen select **[Register] [Gift Certificates] [Gift Certificates Modify]**.

- 2 Click on **Modify the Certificate**.

This will bring up the gift certificate # screen. Enter the gift certificate # and select "Accept" This will bring up the Gift Certificate.

- 3 Make necessary changes to the gift certificate.

Note: Do not change the total price.

Modifying a gift certificate's balance:

- 1 From the Sales Screen select **[Register] [Gift Certificates] [Gift Certificates Modify]**.
- 2 This will bring up the gift certificate # screen. Enter the gift certificate # and select "Accept".
- 3 Click on **Modify the Balances**.

This will bring up the **Modify Gift Certificate Balances** box.

MODIFY GIFT CERTIFICATE BALANCES

GIFT CERT. # 00001
Tommy

Orig. Amt
300.00 ☐ Void Certificate

Date	Amt Used	Printed On
06/06/00	98.27	
06/07/00	117.58	
06/08/00	72.98	

Expires
06/06/01

- 4 Make necessary changes to the gift certificate balances.

Redeeming a gift certificate:

- 1 From the Sales Screen, enter the **Client**.
- 2 Enter in any service or retail items.
- 3 Click the **Payments** button.

This will bring up the Payments window.

- 4 Select **Gift Certificates**.

The Payments window displays the **Certificates on File** list box.

- 5 Type in the certificate number for that customer.

The **Balance** field displays the balance left on that certificate. The **Purchased For** field displays the client's name. If no name was entered, no name will be displayed.

- 6 Enter the **Amount** to be paid from this certificate in the **Amount Tended** field.

- 7 Click **Accept**.
Finish processing the sale.

Redeeming a prior gift certificate:

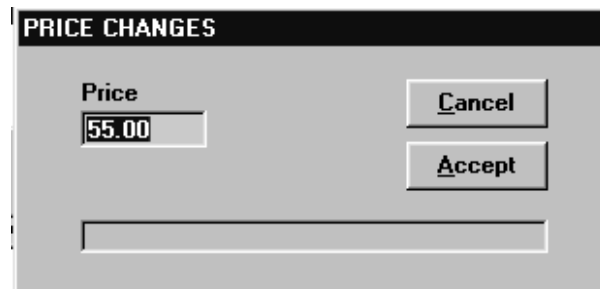
Although there is no perfect way to deal with certificates sold prior to using *ProSolutions 8.0*, we recommend redeeming old gift certificates that were sold prior to using *ProSolutions 8.0* with the payment type labeled Coupons. When you click on Coupons as a payment type you are provided with a text field or space to write in information to reference, in this case the old gift certificate. By redeeming the gift certificate this way you can still give credit to the operator without issuing a new certificate to the customer.

Modifying Sales Items

This section describes how to modify selected service and/or retail items. The Modify Item feature allows changes in a price, operator, service, and/or product.

To modify the price of an item:

- 1 Highlight the **Item** you want to modify. When you high-lite the item from the Point of Sale screen, new buttons for selection will appear. Among these new buttons is "**Modify Price**"
- 2 Click the **Modify Price** button. The Modify Price button will appear once you highlight a sales item.
The **Price Changes** window appears.



- 3 Enter the **New Price**.
- 4 Click **Accept**.

To Modify an Operator and/or Service:

- 1 Highlight the **Service Item**.
- 2 Click the **Services** button.
The Services Selection window appears.
- 3 Select the new **Operator** and/or **Service**.
- 4 Click **Accept**.

To bring up a client's file directly from the Sales window:

- 1 Highlight an item containing the **Client's Name**.
- 2 Click the **Client Info** button.

The Client's file will appear. You can view and/or modify information.

To remove an item from the Sales window:

- 1 Highlight the item to be removed.
- 2 Click the **Remove Item** button.

This will clear the item from the screen.

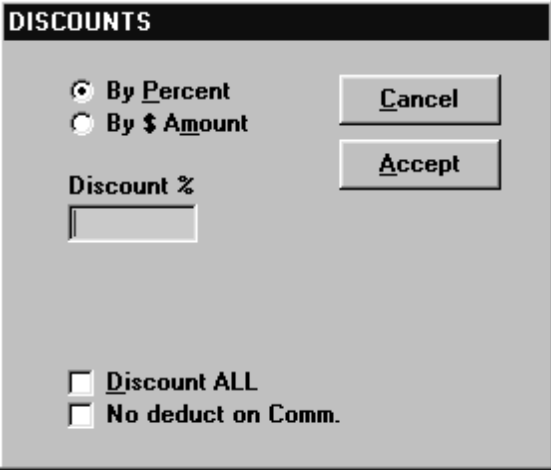
To unselect an item:

- 1 To unselect a highlighted item.
- 2 Click the **Unselect Item** button. The Unselect button will appear once you highlight a sales item.

To Discount items:

- 1 Highlight an item in either the Service or Retail window.
- 2 Click the **Discounts** button. The Discounts button will appear once you highlight a sales item.

The **Discounts** window appears.



DISCOUNTS

☒ By Percent
☐ By \$ Amount

Discount %

☐ Discount ALL
☐ No deduct on Comm.

- 3 Enter the discount **Percentage** or you can select to discount by a **Dollar Amount** by selecting the **By \$Amount** selection.
- 4 If you click the **Discount All** checkbox, the discount will be applied to all services (if that is what was originally highlighted) or to all products.
- 5 You can also select **No deduct on Comm.** which will not reflect the discount on the commission, if any, paid to the operator.
- 6 Click **Accept**.

To Clear all items:

- Click the **Clear** button.

To Set a Pop message for a client:

- 1 Highlight an item in either the Service or Retail window.
- 2 The **Set PopUp** button appears. Click the **Set PopUp** button.
The **Set Popup** box appears.

- 3 Select the **Operator** if this message is from a different operator than the one listed in the above sales screen.
- 4 Type in the **Message**.
- 5 Click **Set**.
- 6 Click **Exit**.

Reversing A Service Sale

You can reverse a service sale by ringing up the service with a negative price. This is useful when an unhappy client wants to either get a refund or have the service redone by another operator. In the latter case you can reverse the credit from one operator to another. The following section describes how to reverse a service sale.

To reverse a service sale:

- 1 Enter the **Service** you need to reverse in the service window.
- 2 Highlight the **Service**.
- 3 Click the **Modify Price** button.
- 4 Enter in a negative dollar amount, for the amount of the service you wish to reverse.
- 5 If crediting another operator for the service enter the item in the service window.
- 6 Complete the transaction as normal.
The service will be deducted from the operators service sales.
- 7 If you are going to refund the customer for the service and do not wish to credit another operator then the change due field will show the refund.

Updating a Client's Service Formula History

ProSolutions 8.0 allows you to update a client's formula history with new or existing formula.

To use this feature you must first configure *ProSolutions 8.0* with the services that require formulas and to prompt you at the point of sale when a service formula is selected. For more information about service formulas, *See Chapter 2: Preferences.*

To update a client's Service Formula history file:

- 1 Add a **Service** requiring a formula to the Service window.

When a service requiring formula information is added to the Service window, the Service Formula's window appears.

Formula
List Box

Prod No.	Description	Qty	Unit of Meas

- 2 Select an **Existing Formula** from the list box or add a **New Formula**.

Follow the same steps covered in Chapter 3, Clients: *See 'To Add & Modify Client Service Formulas' in Chapter 3 Clients.*

- 3 If this is a new formula, click **Add New** and the client's file will be updated.
- 4 If an existing formula is selected, click **Accept** and the client's file will be updated.
- 5 To disregard the Service Formula window, click **Cancel**.

Accepting a Sale

This section describes how to complete a sale after you have made all entries.

An overview of processing and accepting a sale:

- 1 The client is ready to leave the salon or purchase an item.
- 2 The client's name, service and product information are entered in the Sales window.
- 3 Any necessary modifications are made.
- 4 Receive payment type.
- 5 Click the **Accept** button.

To receive and select a payment type:

- 1 Click the **Payment** button.
- The **Payments** window appears.

This window lists payment types on the left side. The Payee or client's name is listed across the top. The dollar amount is entered in the top right Amount Tendered field. The following briefly describes each payment type.

Cash Type

- 1 Enter the **cash amount** received from the client in the **Amount Tendered** field.
- 2 Click **Accept** button.

The amount is now transferred to the Amount Paid field. Any change due

appears in the **Change** field in the Sales window.

Check Type

To receive checks:

- 1 Select **Check**.

When check is selected, the Payments window displays two extra fields for the account number and/or check number and bank name

- 2 Enter in the **Check** and **Bank** information
- 3 Enter the **Check Amount** if different from the total.
- 4 Click **Accept**.
- 5 The amount tendered is transferred to the sales total.

Credit Card Type

To receive credit cards:

- 1 Select **Credit Card**.

The Credit Card list box appears. To add credit card information, see **Chapter 2, Configuration**.

- 2 Select the desired credit card from the credit card list box.
- 3 Type in reference information in the blank field provided.
- 4 Click **Accept**.
- 5 If processing credit cards through the system using the PCCharge interface, please contact ProSolutions Software, Inc. for setup and installation.

Series

See Series in Chapter 2, Setup.

Gift Certificates

See Gift Certificates in Chapter 2, Setup.

The On Account type

This type creates an account for the client, i.e. credit with your spa.

The Hotel charge

When you select hotel charge, the payment window displays a hotel room number field. This is for use with a salon or spa that is integrated into a

Hotel room.

The Travellers Checks Type

Follow the same steps used to process a regular check.

Other

Enter in the coupon number or description of other form of payment. You can also type text in the space or field provided.

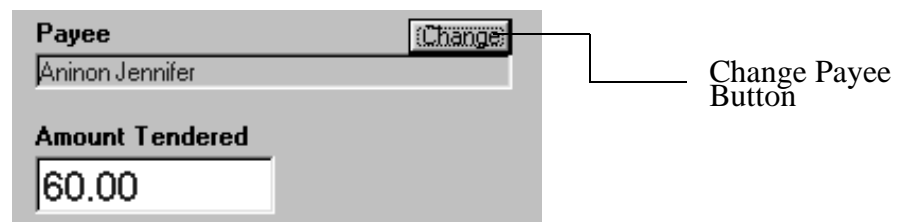
Gift Card

Used like a charge card. It is a gift certificate on a credit card type surface. It has a precise amount of money on it, and each time you swipe it through (like a credit card) it loses the amount of value that corresponds to the service or retail purchased.

To change a Payee:

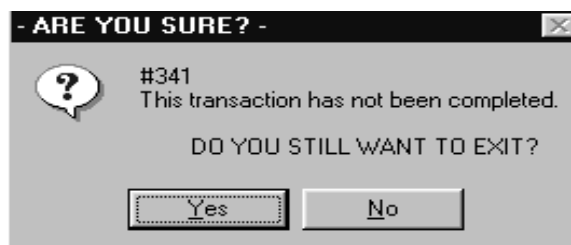
- Click the **Change Payee** button.
- Select a client from the client information window.
- 6 Click the **Accept** button.

A large **Accept** button appears in the **Sales** Window. See Illustration.



- 7 To complete a transaction, click the large Accept button.

If you try to exit the sales screen while in the middle of a transaction, the following message appears asking “Are You Sure?”.



- To exit the sales screen and lose the existing transaction, click **Yes**.

- To continue with the transaction, click **No**.

Printing Sales Receipts

If you want a receipt to print immediately upon accepting a sale you must indicate it prior to accepting the transaction.

To print a sales receipt:

- 1 Check the **Print Receipt** check box located at the top left of the screen.
- 2 Click the **Accept** button.

To print duplicate receipts after accepting a sale, see Printing Duplicate Receipts later in this chapter.

Register Options

This section describes all the Register window options except for the close option which will be covered in the last section

Register Roll Back

The Roll Back lets you remove all transactions back to the last closing of the register. This is handy if you inadvertently close the register and want to reopen on the same day.

Another reason you may want to use the Roll Back would be to go back to a previous day, although keep in mind that you will lose all transactions for any given day you do a Roll Back.

End-of-Day Report

This report prints out service and retail sales for the day for each operator.

- To view or print the End-of Day report, click **End-of-Day** from the **Register** menu.

See Appendix A, to see a sample of the End-of-Day report.

Service Sales

This report prints out the service sales totals for all operators for the current day.

Retail Sales

This report prints out the retail sales totals for all operators for the current day.

Bank Deposits

- 1 Choose **Deposits** from the **Register** menu.
The **Bank Deposits** window appears.

BANK DEPOSITS

Date Thursday, September 14, 2000

Deposit No.

☐ Print receipt

Cash

Checks

Trav Chks

Credit Card 1

Credit Card 2

Credit Card 3

Credit Card 4

TOTAL DEPOSIT

The **Bank Deposit** window displays the current date across the top.

- 2 Enter in **Deposit Number** in the **Deposit NO** field.
- 3 Enter in the amount of cash, checks, etc.

As each amount is entered, it is added to the deposit total.

Note: Only one credit card type may be included per deposit.

- 4 Click **Accept**.

In-Salon Use

This option records an operators Retail and Professional (Backbar) product use. For example operator Jane takes two hair sprays to be used in her station. In order to record this so that one, you know that Jane took the hair sprays, and two, to have the hair sprays deducted from inventory. Also products can be marked as promotional if the operator gave it away to a client.

To record a product as In-Salon Use:

- 1 Choose **In-Salon Use** from the **Register** menu.

The **In-Salon Use** window appears.

- 2 Select an operator.
- 3 Select the product and quantity.
- 4 Choose selling setting, cost, list or sell.
- 5 Select a discount percentage if any.
- 6 If the product is being given away as a promotional item, check the **Promotion** setting.
- 7 To save an operator's sell settings, click the **Save Option Setting**.
- 8 When you have made your selections and want to record the product as an In-Salon item, click **Accept**.

Items recorded here can be printed out in report called In-Salon Use. Information regarding this report can be found in Chapter 7: *See 'In-Salon Use & Expense' in Chapter 7 Reports.*

- 9 Click **Accept**.

Merchandise Return and Exchange

- 1 Go to SALES
- 2 Select RETAIL just as though you were going to sell a retail product.
- 3 Select the product to return and enter a **NEGATIVE -1** in the quantity field and click "Last."
- 4 *You will now see the product in the window for a negative dollar amount denoting the fact that money is owed to the client for the return.* Select the payment button and select which method you wish to use to refund the client, i.e. cash or credit card.
- 5 Click the final "Accept" button, you will then be prompted whether you

with to add the product back to stock.

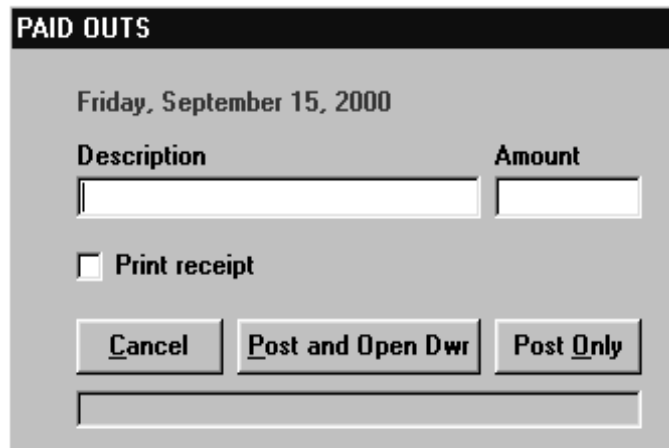
That's all there is to it!

Paid Outs

This section describes how to record a Paid out transaction.

To record a Paid Out transaction:

- 1 Choose **Paid Out** from the **Register** menu.
The **Paid Outs** window appears.



PAID OUTS

Friday, September 15, 2000

Description	Amount
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

☐ Print receipt

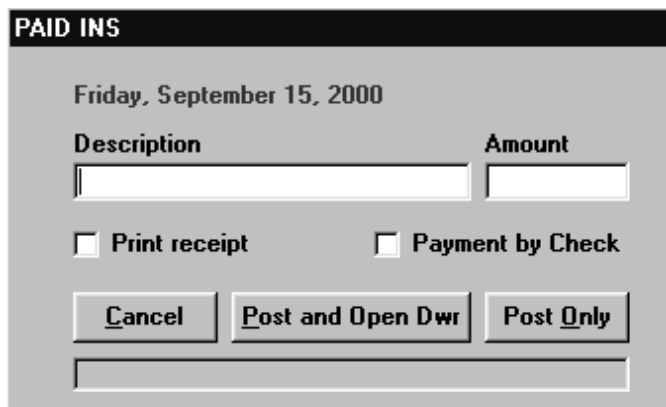
- 2 Type in the paid out description.
- 3 Enter the amount of the pay out.
- 4 Click **Post Only** to post the paid out, or click **Post and Open Dwr** to post the paid out and open the cash drawer.

Paid Ins

This section describes how to record a Paid In transaction.

To record a Paid In transaction:

- 1 Choose **Paid In** from the **Register** menu.
The **Paid Ins** window appears.



PAID INS

Friday, September 15, 2000

Description	Amount
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

☐ Print receipt ☐ Payment by Check

- 2 Type in a paid in description.
- 3 Enter the amount being Paid In.
- 4 Click **Post Only** to post the paid out, or click **Post and Open Dwr** to post the paid out and open the cash drawer.

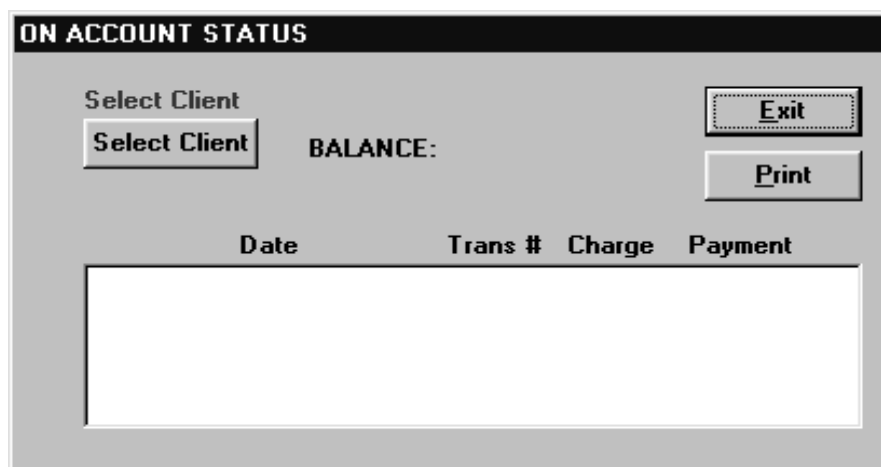
On Account

You can track clients that owe money or have a credit.

To create an account for a client all you need to do is choose the payment type **On account**. Once you accept the transaction the amount due will be the new account balance for the client selected for the transaction.

To view a client's Account status:

- 1 Choose **On Account Status**, from the **View** menu.
The **On Account Status** box appears.



ON ACCOUNT STATUS

Select Client BALANCE:

Date	Trans #	Charge	Payment
<input type="text"/>			

- 2 Click the **Select Client** button to find the client you want.
The clients balance is displayed including beginning balance, transaction number, charge and payments made with date of the payment.

To adjust a client's balance:

- 1 Choose **On Account** from the **Register** menu.
- 2 Next, select **Adjustments**.
- 3 Select the client.

The **On Account Adjustments** box appears.

You can either simply adjust the balance due the Beginning Balance. Either way the balance will adjust by the amount entered.

- 4 When you have made your selections, click **Accept**.

To post a payment against a client's balance:

If you want this payment to be part of your daily drawer balance you should use the following method.

NOTE: No new services or retail items may be part of an account payment transaction.

- 1 Select the client that is making a payment.
- 2 Click **Payment** button.
- 3 Answer **Yes** to zero sale message.
- 4 Select **On Account** for payment type.
- 5 Enter payment as a negative number (i.e. -100.00).
- 6 Click **Accept**.

The sales screen will now show a balance equal to the amount of the payment.

- 7 Click the **Payment** button again
- 8 Select the appropriate payment type (Cash, Check, etc.).

The balance amount is already in the input field. Split payments are not allowed.

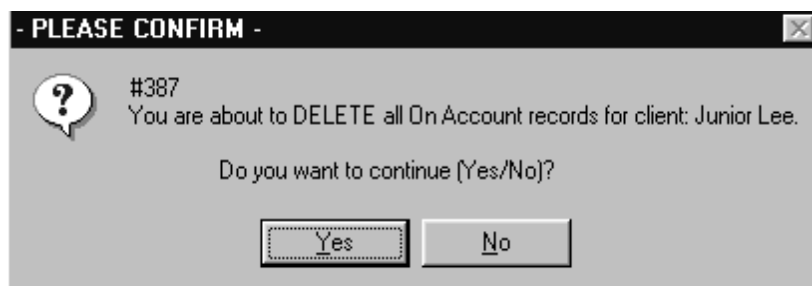
- 9 Click **Accept**.
- 10 Click the big **Accept** button to complete the transaction.

By posting the payments this way the cash drawer totals are updated correctly.

Deleting a client's on account balance:

- 1 Choose **[Register] [On Account] [Delete All For A Client]**.
- 2 Select the **Client**.

The following message appears.



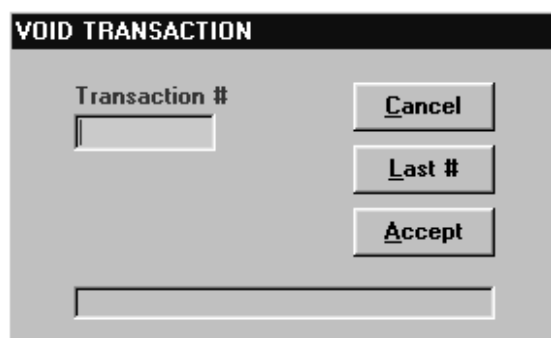
- 3 If you choose **Yes**, all balances are deleted for the client you selected.
- 4 Choose **No** if you do not want the balance deleted.

Voiding a Transaction

This section describes how to void a transaction. This option can be password protected.

To void a transaction:

- 1 Choose **Void Transaction** from the **Register** menu.

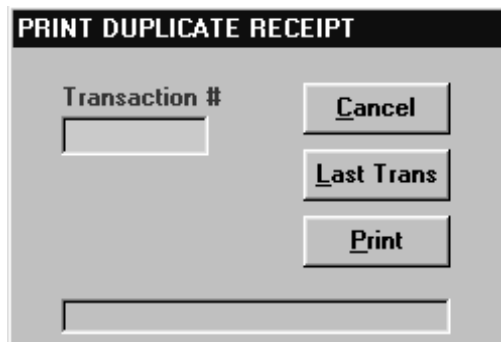


- 2 Enter the transaction number to be voided.
The transaction is marked as voided, but not deleted.
- 3 Click **Accept**.

Printing Duplicate Receipts

To print a duplicate receipt:

- 1 Choose **Duplicate Receipt** from the **Register** menu.
The **Duplicate Receipt** window appears.



- 2 Enter a transaction number or click, the **Last Transaction** button.
- 3 Click the **Print** button.

No Sale

The **No Sale** function opens the cash drawer without recording a transaction. This option can be password protected

To open the drawer without recording a transaction:

- Choose **No Sale** from the **Register** menu.

Clear File Busy

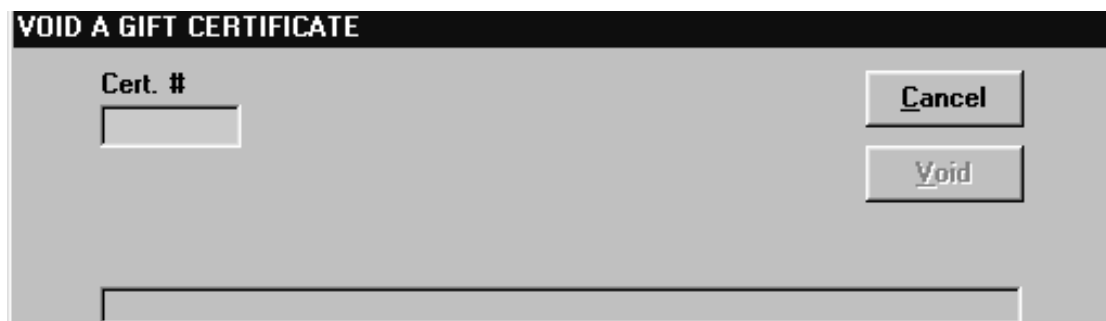
If you are running on a network you can clear the busy message if for some reason a transaction was left open. Simply click on File Busy and answer Yes. This function is also available in the Utilities section. For more information on this function: See 'To delete FileBusy files:' in Chapter 8 Utilities.

Voiding a Gift Certificate

To Void a Gift Certificate:

- 1 Choose **[Gift Certificates] [Void Gift Certificates]** from the **Register** menu.

The **Void A Gift Certificate** window appears.



- 2 Enter the number of the Gift Certificate you want to void.
A message box will confirm that you have selected the correct certificate.

- 3 Click the **Void** button.

The certificate will be marked as void.

To Delete Gift Certificates: See *'To delete Gift Certificates:'* in Chapter 8 Utilities.

Note: If you cancel a certificate before processing it through the sales screen it will automatically be marked as void.

Closing the Register

This section describes how to close the register for the day. It's a good idea to practice closing so until you are familiar with this procedure. The only function of the closing procedure is to tell the system how much cash (if any) you are leaving or have left in the drawer before starting a new day and to post a close transaction. Everything else on the screen is reference information about that day's sales and drawer activity

Only the counted total and other money fields will accept entries. All the other fields are for display only and can't be changed.

- **Begin Register** - Refers to the previous business day's final register total.
- **Cash Receipts** - Is all the cash, credit cards, checks and travelers checks collected for that day.
- **Total Deposits** - Self Explanatory. To create a deposit, See: *'Deposits'* earlier in this Chapter
- **Other Transactions** - These include Paid outs and Paid ins.
- **Expected Total** - Includes the begin register amount and all sales & paid ins for that day less any deposits.
- The **Final Register Total** is what was actually accounted for by inputting the cash and other money (Credit card, checks, etc.)

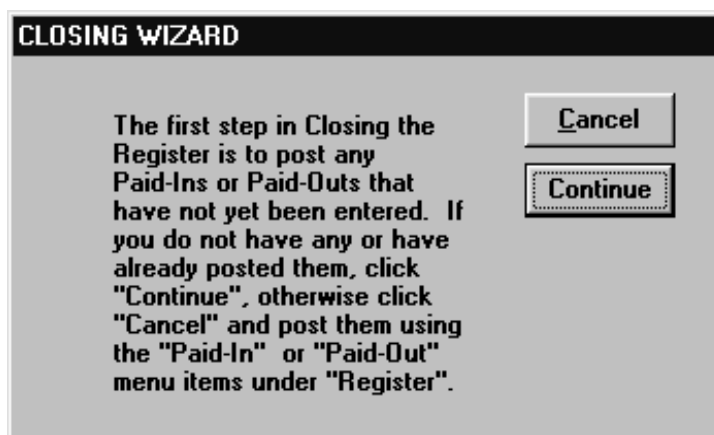
The Final Register total is the amount that will appear the next business day as the **Begin Register** amount.

- The **Over/Short** amount indicates any discrepancies.

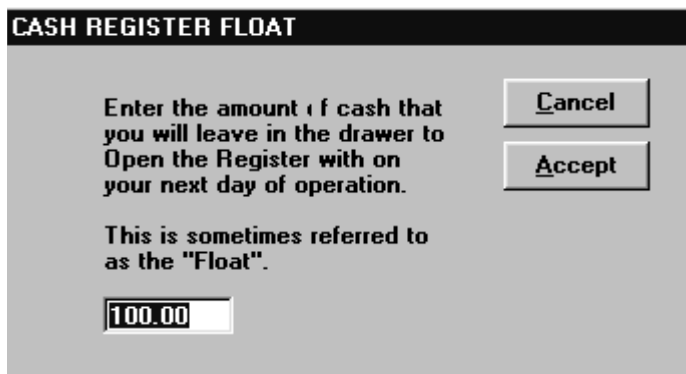
To close the register:

- 1 Choose **Close** from the **Register** menu.

The **Close Wizard** window appears.



- 2 Click "Continue" after you have read the note "The first step in Closing the Register is to post any Paid-Ins or Paid-Outs that have not yet been entered. If you do not have any or have already posted them, click "Continue", otherwise click "Cancel" and post them using the "Paid-In" or "Paid-Out" menu items under "Register." After Clicking Continue:
- 3 The **Cash Register Float** Window appears:



This is the amount of cash that you will leave in the drawer to open the Register with on the next business day. Click Accept after putting in the amount you wish.

- 4 The **Bank Deposits** Window appears: See 'Deposits' earlier in this Chapter. Click Accept after you have made any adjustments necessary to the Deposits window.
- 5 The **Close Register #, Drawer #** Window will appear:

CLOSE REGISTER 1, DRAWER 1 09/15/00																																																			
<input type="button" value="ACCEPT"/> <input type="button" value="Print"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">SALES RECEIPTS</th> <th colspan="2">DEPOSITS</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>* Cash</td> <td>30.00</td> <td>Cash</td> <td>30.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>* Checks</td> <td>.00</td> <td>Checks</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>* Credit Cards</td> <td>.00</td> <td>Credit Cards</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>* Traveller Checks</td> <td>.00</td> <td>Traveller's Checks</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Gift Certificates</td> <td>.00</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>On Account</td> <td>.00</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Series Sales</td> <td>.00</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Hotel Charge</td> <td>.00</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other</td> <td>.00</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">TOTALS 30.00</td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">TIPS .00</td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		SALES RECEIPTS		DEPOSITS		* Cash	30.00	Cash	30.00	* Checks	.00	Checks	.00	* Credit Cards	.00	Credit Cards	.00	* Traveller Checks	.00	Traveller's Checks	.00	Gift Certificates	.00			On Account	.00			Series Sales	.00			Hotel Charge	.00			Other	.00			TOTALS 30.00				TIPS .00			
SALES RECEIPTS		DEPOSITS																																																	
* Cash	30.00	Cash	30.00																																																
* Checks	.00	Checks	.00																																																
* Credit Cards	.00	Credit Cards	.00																																																
* Traveller Checks	.00	Traveller's Checks	.00																																																
Gift Certificates	.00																																																		
On Account	.00																																																		
Series Sales	.00																																																		
Hotel Charge	.00																																																		
Other	.00																																																		
TOTALS 30.00																																																			
TIPS .00																																																			
BEGIN REGISTER <input type="text" value="100.00"/> * CASH RECEIPTS <input type="text" value="30.00"/> TOTAL DEPOSITS <input type="text" value="30.00"/> EXPECTED TOTAL <input type="text" value="100.00"/> CASH DRAWER COUNT <input type="text" value="100"/> Money in Drawer (Float) FINAL REG TOTAL <input type="text" value=".00"/> Over/Short <input type="text" value="-100.00"/>		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">SALES BREAKDOWN</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Services</td> <td>20.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Retail</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Returns</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Professional</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>In Salon</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Sales Tax</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Service Dsc</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Retail Dsc</td> <td>.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Paid Ins</td> <td><input type="text" value=".00"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Paid Outs</td> <td><input type="text" value="-15.00"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>On Acct Pmts</td> <td><input type="text" value="25.00"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		SALES BREAKDOWN		Services	20.00	Retail	.00	Returns	.00	Professional	.00	Other	.00	In Salon	.00	Sales Tax	.00	Service Dsc	.00	Retail Dsc	.00	Paid Ins	<input type="text" value=".00"/>	Paid Outs	<input type="text" value="-15.00"/>	On Acct Pmts	<input type="text" value="25.00"/>																						
SALES BREAKDOWN																																																			
Services	20.00																																																		
Retail	.00																																																		
Returns	.00																																																		
Professional	.00																																																		
Other	.00																																																		
In Salon	.00																																																		
Sales Tax	.00																																																		
Service Dsc	.00																																																		
Retail Dsc	.00																																																		
Paid Ins	<input type="text" value=".00"/>																																																		
Paid Outs	<input type="text" value="-15.00"/>																																																		
On Acct Pmts	<input type="text" value="25.00"/>																																																		
VOIDS <input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="text" value="0.00"/>																																																			

This window breaks down the current day's receipts. The date and drawer number are displayed in the bar on top.

- 6 Enter in the amount you want to close with in the **Cash Drawer Count** field. Next click **Accept**

- 7 If you would like a print out the figures, click the **Print** button.

If you would like to view and print a closing from a previous day: See: 'View a Prior Closing' Chapter 6, Sales.

View Options

This section describes the sales view Options.

Transaction

To View a Transaction:

- 1 From the Sales Screen select **[View] [Transaction]**.

The **View Transaction** window appears.

[illegible]

The Transaction number field appears at the top left of the window. The transaction list box includes the following columns: Date, T (Type), P (Pay), Client Name, Operator, Transaction Description, SKU, Quantity, Price, R (Register), D (drawer) and Who (who recorded the transaction).

There are various buttons across the top of the View Transaction window. The following describes what each button does.

The **Last Transaction** button: This is good button to start with.

To view the last transaction posted in the system, click the last transaction button.

The <<Prev button:

To view the previous transaction, click the <<Prev button.

The **Next>>** button:

To view the next transaction, click the Next>> button.

The **1st Today** button:

To view the first transaction on the current day, click the 1st Today button.

At the bottom of the View Transaction window are the breakdowns of the highlighted transaction. They include the Service totals, retail totals, professional totals, any other charges, taxable item totals, sales tax totals and

the grand total.

- 2 When finished, click **Done**.

To view a transaction by operator:

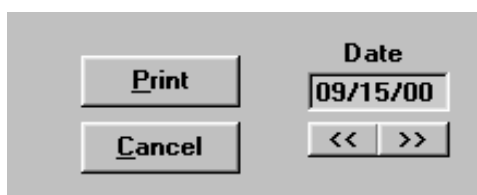
- 1 Select an Operator from the Operator list box.
- 2 Now you can use the view buttons to move through an operators transactions, rather than through the entire spa's transactions.

Prior Closings

To view a Prior Closing:

- 1 Choose **Prior Closings** from the **View** menu.

The close register screen will appear. In the upper left hand corner of the screen is a date field and two arrow buttons, see illustration.



- 2 Use the arrow keys to move between prior closing days.

As you move to a prior closing day the closing screen displays that day's closing figures.

- 3 To print a prior closing, click **Print**.

No adjustments can be made of any kind to a prior closing day.

Client History

To view a Clients History:

- 1 From the Sales Screen, Select **[Client Info]** select a client and when the **Client Information** screen appears, click on the button on the far right side titled **[Client History]**.

From this window you can view all of a client's history your salon. The history is divided into two sections: **Service History** and **Retail History**. This information is updated from the Sales screen every time this client is involved in a transaction. If a client has not had a previous transaction with the salon, the words "no history" will appear in each of the history sections.

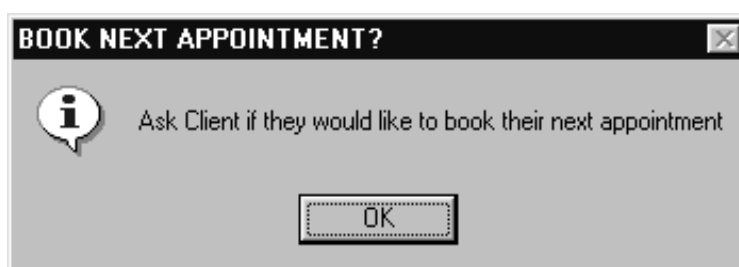
The service and retail history sections have similar displays. Both have the following column headings: Transaction Number, Date, Operator, and Price. The Service History section also includes a Services Rendered column heading. The Retail section includes a Product Description column heading. Each line of history shows a separate transaction.

Cash Register Prompt Options

You can set preferences settings to enable various prompts. For example you can select a preference that will remind your receptionist to book a clients next appointment. Another setting will allow you to tell the computer if a client is a new client, repeat client, etc. The following section describes all the cash register prompt options available in *ProSolutions 8.0*.

Book Next Appointment Reminder

When you set the book next appointment setting *ProSolutions 8.0* will display the following prompt immediately after entering a payment type.

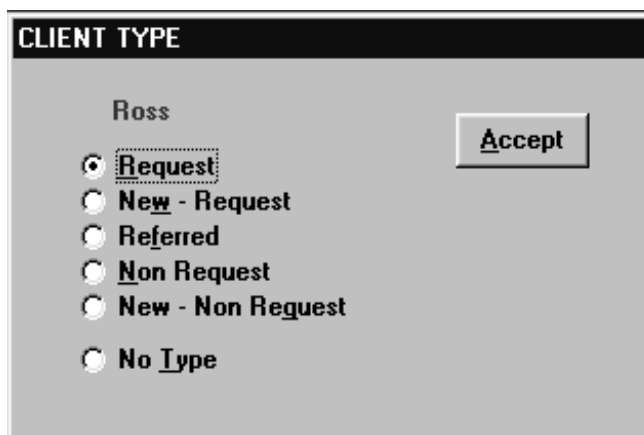


- To remove the message from the sales screen click **OK**.
To have the "Next appointment reminder" appear you need to set the preference setting labeled Prompt for Appt. Booking located in the **[Setup] [Preferences] [Sales Register]** part of *ProSolutions 8.0*.

Prompt For Client Type Option

When you enable this option you can track an operator's clients by: One-time, New, New-Request, Salon Client or Repeat-Request.

When you set the Prompt For Client Type setting *ProSolutions 8.0* will display the following prompt immediately after accepting a sale.



- Click a client type or **No Type**.

- 2 Click **Accept**.

The message box disappears and the operator's file is updated.

To have the Client Type prompt appear you need to set the preference setting labeled Prompt For Client Type located in **[Setup] [Preferences] [Sales Register]** part of *ProSolutions 8.0*.

You can generate a report for a given date range of each operator's client breakdown. The report will reflect the Client Type prompt that you use.

Change Due Reminder

With the Change Due setting on, *ProSolutions 8.0* will display a message box that reminds you that change is due. The transaction information remains on the screen until the message box is removed.

When you set the Change Due setting *ProSolutions 8.0* will display the following prompt immediately after accepting a sale.



- Click **OK** to remove the Change is Due reminder.

BookAppts from the Sales Window

All the AutoBook functions can be executed from the **Sales** window under the **BookAppt** menu selection. Appointment functions are described in Chapter 5, **Appointments**. You can leave the **Sales** window at any point during a sale and execute any of the **Book Appts** menu selections. When you have completed the appointment selection you can return to where you left off in the **Sales** window.

Partnership Program

This is a way to pay commission to somebody who refers clients to you.

- 1 From the Main Menu select **[Setup][Preferences][Sales Register]**. Check the box labeled "Enable Partnership Program." Click the "Save" button to exit the screen.
- 2 From the Main screen, select **[Setup][Configuration][Sales Register]Setup Partnership Program]**.
 - Check the box in front of each service for which a commission will be paid.

- Click the button "Set Partners" to enter the name and address of each partner that is to receive commissions. Select either "Primary" or "Secondary." Click the "New" button to get the next number. Enter the name and address information, then click "Save."
- 3 When a client comes in with a coupon.
- Bring up the client's information screen.
- Click the button labeled "Partners" and enter the Primary and Secondary numbers. After typing in each number, press the "Enter" key on your keyboard.
- 4 Ring up sales normally.
- 5 To print the commission report, from the Main screen, select **[Reports][Sales][Operator Reports][Commission Reports] [Partnership Commissions]**. Select the date range.
- 6 To print the commission summary report, from the Main screen, select **[Reports] [Sales] [Operator Reports] [Commission Reports] [Partnership Comm Summary]**. Select the date range.

Using Gift Cards

To purchase gift cards, contact ProSolutions at 800-710-3879 and ask for Sales!

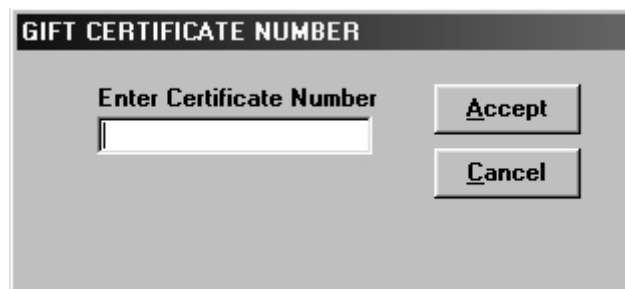
Gift cards can be used with a credit card swiper integrated into ProSolutions or can have their information manually entered.

- 1 Go to **[Setup] [Preferences] [Gift Certificates]**
- 2 Place a check in the box (*Manually Assign Gift Certificate Numbers*)
- 3 Press SAVE

Selling a Gift Card

Selling a Gift Card is essentially the same as selling a Gift Certificate

- 1 Go to **[Sales]**
- 2 Select the name of the client who is purchasing the Gift Card.
- 3 Select GIFT CERT or F7
- 4 A new window will appear that says "Enter Certificate Number"



- 5 Enter the number of the Gift Card or *swipe* the card through the reader and the number will be automatically entered.

- 6 Accept the number and the Gift Cert/Gift Card window will appear for standard Gift Cert/Card sales.
- 7 Fill out the necessary information (usually gift cards are for monetary value only, not for services or packages) and process the sale. It's that simple

When the client enters your salon/spa to use the Card, simply accept the method of payment as GIFT CARD and it will ask for the card number. Swipe the card or manually enter the number and the card will be debited. The remaining value on the card will still be available for use, or, if they use it all, the card will be vacated. You can take the card back and re-sell it if you like!

Chapter 7 - Reports

About Prosolutions Reports

This chapter covers most of the reports that can be generated from the Reports menu.

Most reports allow you to view them before printing.

The following is a list of each report title described in this chapter. [View] means that the report listed can be viewed as well as printed.

List of Reports

Report Numbering

Each report has an individual number for easy accessibility! This number will be listed on the printed report as well. *Don't forget, later in this Chapter you will learn how to do Batch Reporting!*

Sales Reports

- Service Sales
 - All Services [View] -21
 - For Selected Operator [View] -23
 - Group Summary [View] -74
 - Group Sales Breakdown [View] -22
 - Quantity of Services [View] -82
 - Service vs. Retail Client Count [View] -134
 - Services vs. Retail by Operator -136
- Retail Sales
 - Product Sales [View] -24
 - Salon Sales [View] -57
 - Product Sales by Vendor -129
 - Product Sales by Manufacturer -128
 - Product Sales by Category [View] -56
 - Product Sales by Department [View] -101
 - Gross Margins Report -25

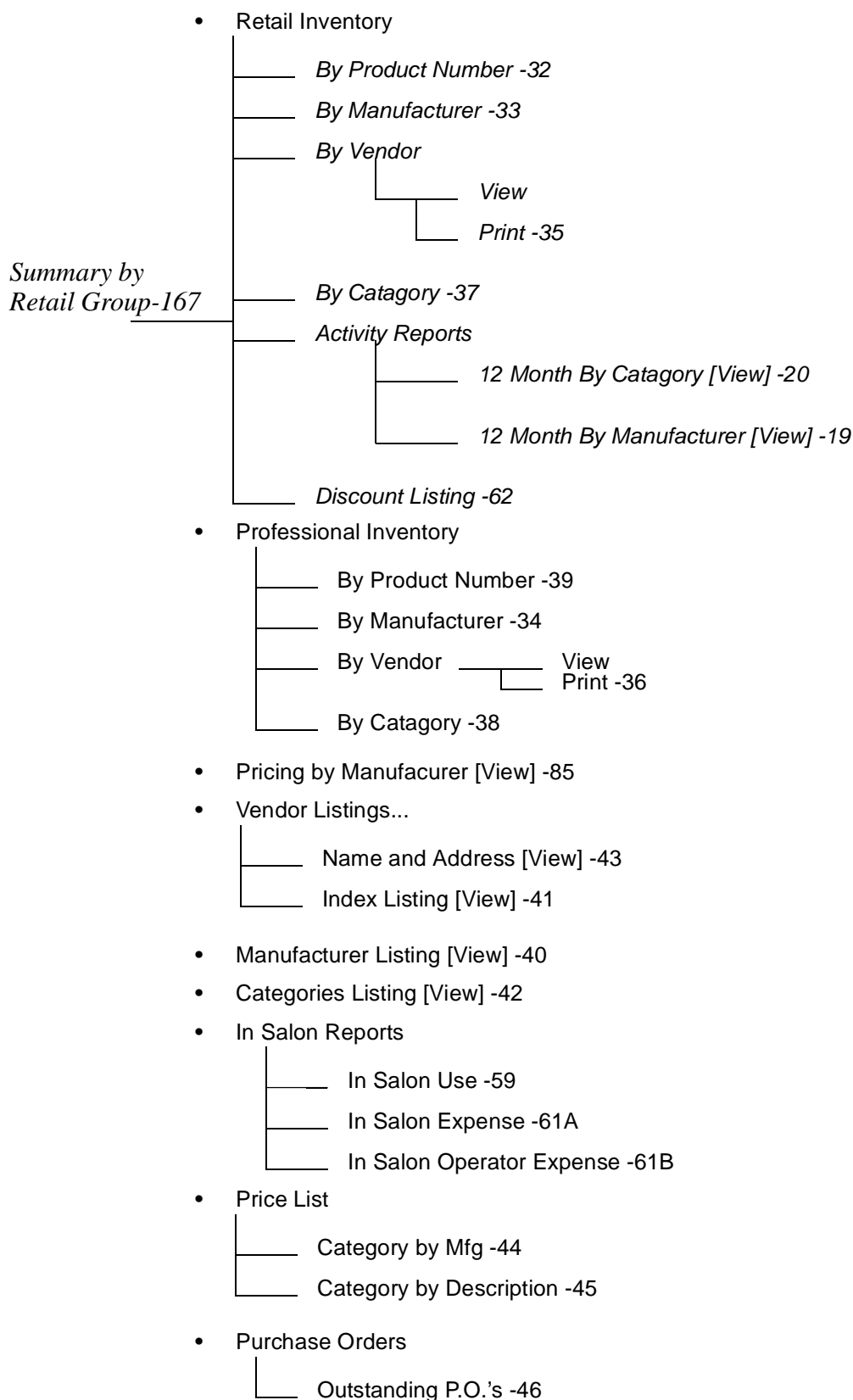
- Weekly Reports
- Operator Reports
 - Operator Sales Summary [View] -60
 - Sales Detail w/Client Names [View] -116
 - Average Ticket [View] -153
 - Credit Card Service Sales -138
 - Operator Tips Report [View] -70
 - Operator Comparison [View] -27
 - Sales Discounts [View] -28
 - Discount Report -132
 - Consolidated Totals -29
 - End-of-Day Report [View] -58
 - Service Count by Sub Category -102
 - Blockout Summary -18
 - Operator Names -200
 - Service Pricelist -26
 - Productivity Reports
 - Daily Recap Report [View] -113
 - Monthly Recap Report [View] -114
 - Recap Comparison Report [View] -115
 - Prices and Times
 - Salon/Custom -89A
 - Custom Only -89B
 - Commission Reports
 - Comm. Sales Analysis -121
 - On Service Sales -105
 - On Retail Sales -106
 - Sliding Scale/No Backbar -103
 - Sliding Scale W/Backbar -104
 - HighScale With/Without Backbar -151
 - Percent Retail to Service -108
 - Percent Retail to Total -137
 - Cashier Commissions -109

• Transactions	
Sales Tax Report -30	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Today's Transactions [View] -8 By Trans # Range [View] -10 By Date Range <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Consolidated Closing Report -117 All Transactions [View] -2 By Transaction Type [View] -4 Deposits <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cash Deposits [View] -154 Credit Card Deposits [View] -155 Paid Outs [View] -156 Cash Register Audit By Cashier -122 Cash Transactions -71 Operator Sales [View] -73 By Client [View] -5 By Register, Drawer [View] -6 By Operator [View] -3 Daily Activity by Client [View] -92 Recap [Print Only] -76 Sales By Marketing Group -148 Modified Price Report -149
• Special Sales	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Special Sales Summary -123 Special Sales Detail -139
• Coupon Reports	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Coupon Redemption Breakdown [View] -84 Coupon Discount Report [View] -87
• Series	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Series Sales by Date Range -120 Series Status -50

- Gift Certificates
 - Print a Certificate
 - Print All Certificates
 - Certificate Status -49
 - Balances by Package Type -16,17
 - Cert Balances for a Date Range
 - View
 - Print -94
 - Open Certificates for Date Range
 - View
 - Print -95
 - Pending Certificate Status -72
 - Open Pending Certs
 - View
 - Print -96
 - Sales By Type -55
 - Sales By Source -125
 - Sales By Operator -142
 - Sales Year-to-Date -91
 - Certs w/3 Redemptions -140
 - Expired Cert Redem -157
 - Reset Cert for Print
- Gift Card
 - Gift Card Sales -144

Inventory Reports

- **All products**
 - 1 *Summary Totals {View}*
 - *By Vendor -86A*
 - *By Manufacturer -86B*
 - *By Catagory -86C*
 - 2 *By Part Number -31*



- Recv Transactions
 - All PO's [View] -47A
 - Single PO -48
 - Number Range -47B
 - Date Range [View] -47C
- Work Sheets
 - All Products -51A
 - For a Manufacturer 51B
 - For a Catagory -161

Marketing Reports

- Create a List
- Edit List File
- Special Sorts
 - Sort by Zip Codes
 - Sort by First Name
- Print
 - Standard Mailing Labels
 - Return Mailing Labels
 - Post Cards
 - Birthday
 - Anniversary
 - Service Promo
 - Retail Promo
 - Not in Since (Date)
 - New Client
 - Recent Client
 - No. of Referred Clts
 - Misc #1
 - Misc #2
 - Misc #3
 - Phone Listing
 - Client Count by Referral
- Export File
- Form Letters

Client

- Client Count -64
- Client Type -75
- Client Ranking [View] -99, 100
- Returning Clients Report -135
- Client Retention -69
- Clients with Discounts -133
- Client Zipcode Counts
 - └─ All Zipcodes -88A
 - └─ Only with Activity -88B
- On Account Aging Report -141
- On Account Status [View] -81
- Client Referral Detail [View] -52
- Missed Cycle Report [View] -83
- Export Name and Address
- Client Formulas -63

Goals

- Operator Goals
- Set Operator Goals

Day Runner

- Appointments
- Client Phone Book
- Client History
- Forms Print Setup
 - └─ Appointments
 - └─ Phone Book
 - └─ Client History

Graphs

- Salon Sales
- Service Sales Breakdown
- Operator Sales Comparison

Miscellaneous

- Operator Work Schedule
 - Operator Order
 - Grouped by Title (print only)
- Appointments List - 68-98
- Appointments by Client - 145
- Standing Appointments by Client (View) - 165
- Appointments Waiting List - 147
- No Show Report
- Non Check-In Report (View) - 159
- Non Check-Out Report (View) - 160
- Booking Comparison by Service - 118
- Booking Comparison by Marketing Group - 152
- Appointment Backlog
- Travel Card Audit - 97
- Business Cards
- Create "The Club @" Files

Sales Reports

This section describes each sales report. Many of the reports can be viewed on the screen with an option to print. If a report is viewable on the screen it will be labeled so. For example the report All Services appears this way

All Services (View).

Service Sales

1 Sales breakdown for All Services.

You can see the total amount of sales for *all operators* and for each service and the percentage each service contributes to total service sales. The net amount is displayed along with any discounts.

2 Sales Breakdown for Selected Operators.

You can see the total amount of sales for *one operators* and for each service and the percentage each service contributes to total service sales. The net amount is displayed along with any discounts.

3 Sales breakdown for All Groups.

This report prints out each service groupings total sales for all groups and includes year to date totals.

4 Group Sales Breakdown.

This report prints out total sales by groups by all operators or a particular operator.

5 Quantity of Services.

This report prints service sales by operator, comparing one period with another.

6 Service vs. Retail Client Count

This report prints the actual count of how many clients received Only Services, Only Retail and/or Services and Retail combined.

7 Services vs. Retail by Operator

This report prints the actual count of operators that performed services, sold retail and/or both combined.

To print Service Sales reports:

- 1 Choose one of the three service sales reports from the **Sales** menu.
- 2 Enter a date range.
The reports will be displayed on the screen.
- 3 Click **Print**.

Retail Sales

This section describes each retail sales report.

1 Product Sales.

This report prints out all products sold in a date range by operator.

2 Salon Sales.

This report prints out all products sold in a date range for the salon only.

3 Product Sales by Vendor.

This report prints out product sales broken out by Vendor.

4 Product Sales by Manufacturer.

This report prints out product sales broken out by Manufacturer

5 Product Sales by Category.

This report prints out product sales broken out by product category.

6 Product Sales by Department.

This report prints out product sales broken out by product department.

7 Retail Gross Margins.

This report shows the gross margins on all retail sales.

Weekly Reports

While these reports can be run elsewhere, this feature will automatically load a week from any starting date set for the following:

- 1 Operator Recap Comparison
- 2 Operator Tip Report
- 3 Client Type Report
- 4 End of Day Report

5 Free Work Report

Operator Sales Reports

This section describes each operator sales report.

1 Operator Sales Summary

This report shows each operator's total service and retail sales by date range.

2 Sales Detail w/Client Names

This report shows what was sold to whom

3 Service Detail w/Client Names

This report shows what services were sold to whom

4 Average Ticket

This report shows the Average Ticket for an operator by date range

5 Credit Card Service Sales

This report shows what services were paid for with Credit Cards by Operator and by Date Range. (May include All Operators)

6 Operator Tips Report

This report shows each operators tips by date range.

7 Operator Comparison Report

This report lists every operator and compares services performed during a set period. The total dollar amount and percentage of the salon total for a given service is also listed.

8 Sales Discount Report

This report lists each operator's service and retail discounts for a given date range.

9 Consolidated Totals

This report gives weekly or bi-weekly service and retail totals for each operator broken down by DTD, WTD, MTD & YTD. The date you want this report to start from can be modified.

10 End of Day Report

This report recaps all operator sales by date range and is also available from the main sales screen, in the register menu.

Note: When printing this report from the sales screen it will only print sales information for the current day.

11 Service Count by Sub Catagory

Must have Sub Catagories created first. This report will count total services by Sub Catagory.

12 Blockout Summary

This report shows a summary of Blockout times and types used by operators (in the appointment book).

13 Operator Names

This report shows a list of all operators in the system.

14 Service PriceList

This report shows the prices for each service offered by the salon/spa.

Productivity Reports

There is currently only one report related to productivity. It is called "Clients by hour of day". This reports on the number of clients serviced by hour, per day. This report only has data available if you are using the waiting list feature. See "Client Waiting List" in Chapter 3, Clients. More reports are in the works.

Operator Prices and Times Report

This report will print out service prices and times by operator.

Commission Reports

These reports will allow you track commission on Percent, Sliding Scale, with or without back bar, by date range, by Operator, for the Cashier, On retail and services. These are the reports that will give you an accurate picture of what is owed to your employees.

Transaction Detail Reports

There are several different breakdowns of transaction reports available. Each transaction report has the following headings:

T stands for Type

P for Payment Type

Product #

See Table Below For these Definitions

Transaction #	DATE	T	P	CLNT	OP	TRANSACTION DESCRIPTION	SKU	QTY	PRICE	TRDO
000187	09/21/00	0	0		0	Open Cash Register			100.00	011
000188	09/21/00	S	0	00055	2	Mass-30		1	30.00	011
000188	09/21/00	\$	6	00055	0	On Acct On Account			30.00	011

Operator #

Quantity

The following table describes each transaction heading.

Transaction Heading	Description
\$	Payment

Transaction Heading	Description
%	Discounts
@	Tips
<	Merchandise Returns
D	Deposit
F	Gift Cards
G	Gift Certificates
Transaction Description	Self Explanatory
I	Paid In
K	Series
N	In Salon Use
P	Professional Sales
R	Retail Sales
S	Service Sales
T	Sales Tax
U	Paid Out
V	Void

The following describes each transaction report.

1 Consolidated Closing Report

This combines closing reports for multiple registers or drawers or for a time frame rather than a single day.

1 All Transactions

This report will print a list starting with the transaction number 1 to the last transaction number.

Note: This report could take a few minutes to gather data depending on the number of transactions you have.

2 Today's Transactions

Self explanatory.

3 By Transaction # Range

Prints transactions within a given number range.

By Date Range transaction reports:

The following transaction reports can all be printed within a given date range.

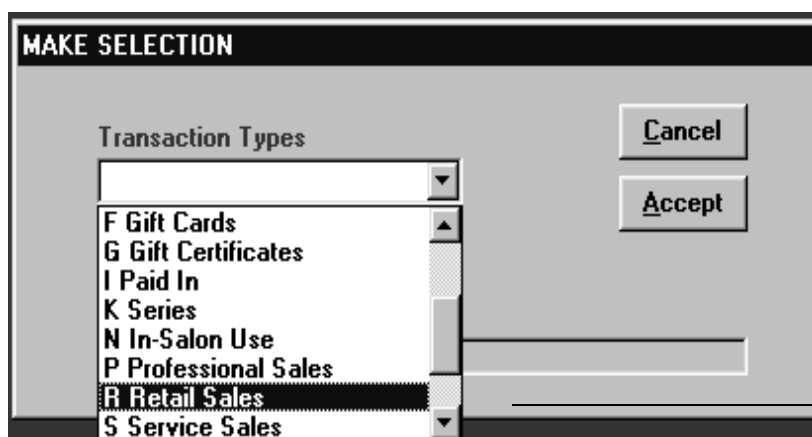
4 All Transactions

5 By Transaction Type

You can print a transaction report for one particular type of transaction from a list box. For example, if you wanted to see transactions that contain retail sales, you would select from the following list box that is displayed when you choose this report.

Each transaction type, along with the corresponding symbol, can be selected from this list box.

For a retail sales trans. report you would select the retail type.



6 Deposits

7 Paid Outs

8 Cash Register Audit by Cashier

This report allows you to audit individual registers and cashiers.

9 Cash Transactions

You can print a transaction report for one particular type of cash or payment type from a list box.

10 Operator Sales

Prints transactions by operator or all operators and provides summary totals for retail and service sales.

11 By Client

Prints transactions for a particular client.

12 By Register & Drawer.

Prints transactions by register and drawer number.

Note: You would only use this if you had multiple drawers or multiple

physical cash registers.

13 By Operator

Prints transactions by operator only.

14 Daily Activity by Client

This report shows you a particular clients activity for a particular day.

15 Recap

Prints a breakdown for each client with their name and breaks out each sale by retail and service purchases.

Note: This report has to be printed because it is formatted differently and also must be printed on a graphic (laser or inkjet) type of printer. Allow a little extra time for this report.

16 Sales by Marketing Group

This allows us you to track sales by tracking criteria that you have previously assigned clients too.

17 Modified Price Report

This report allows you to see what, if any, sales were modified at the point of sale screen.

Special Sales

1 Special Sales Summary

This report lets you see what was spent in Cash, check, or CC and the totals for special sales, including the sales description.

2 Special Sales Detail

This report lets you see a special sales report BY OPERATOR

Sales Tax Report

The sales tax report gives a monthly report of the total sales tax due. It includes total service sales, total retail sales, total combined sales, any tax exempt items, the total taxable sales and the total tax broken down for each day of the month. On the bottom of the report is a summary that includes the total tax on any retail products that were used by the salon and not sold.

Coupon Reports

There are two coupon reports available.

1 Coupon Redemption Breakdown

This reports lists each coupon type that was redeemed in a given date range and the percentage of the total for each coupon. Referral types that are posted at the sales screen are also listed in this report.

2 Coupon Discount Report

This report lists the coupon code and description of each coupon used in a given date range. It also breaks out how much was used for both retail and service sales as well as the combined total.

Series Sales Reports

The Series report lists every client that has purchased a Series, the service the Series is made up of, the Quantity, the total Dollars Paid, the Regular Value of Each, the Quantity Used to date, and the Expiration date.

Gift Certificate Reports

The Gift Certificate reports list each certificate by number, who purchased it, the gift recipient (or other reference information), the dollar amount, the expiration date, and the dollars used to date. There are several gift certificated reports to choose from. A pending status simply means that the gift certificate was never printed.

Gift Card

Gift Card Sales

- This report allow you to track payments made with the "gift card" selection.

Point of Sale Reports

Many of the *Reports* in the *Reports Menu* can be found in the point of sale cash register as well. These reports are available from the *sales screen* in the **Register** menu.

Inventory Reports

This section describes each inventory report.

1 All Products

This report lists each product by part number.

2 All Products Summary Totals By Vendor, Mfg. & Category

Each report lists products broken out by either vendor, manufacturer or category. Each report contains the number of products, the dollar value and total for retail and professional.

3 Retail By Product Number

This report lists all retail products. Refer to All Products for heading descriptions.

4 Retail By Manufacturer

This report lists retail products by manufacturer. Under each manufacturer, the report lists product categories in alphabetical order. The headings include Product Number, Vendor Number, Product Description, Unit of Measure, Tax code, Quantity on Hand, Price and Total Value.

5 Retail By Vendor

This report lists retail products by Vendor. Under each Vendor, the report separates product categories in alphabetical order. The headings include

a Product number, Vendor Number, Product Description, Unit of Measure, Tax code, Quantity on Hand, Price and Total Value.

6 Retail By Category

This report lists retail products by Category. Under each Category, the report lists products in alphabetical order by Manufacturer. The headings include Product number, Vendor Number, Manufacturer, Product Description, Unit of Measure, Tax code, Quantity on Hand, Price and total value.

7 Professional By Product Number

This report lists all Professional products. Refer to **All Products, Retail** for heading descriptions.

8 Professional By Manufacturer

This report lists Professional products by manufacturer. Under each manufacturer, the report lists product categories in alphabetical order. The headings include Product number, Vendor Number, Product Description, Unit of Measure, Tax code, Quantity on Hand, Price and Total Value.

9 Professional By Vendor

This report lists retail products by Vendor. Under each Vendor, the report separates product categories in alphabetical order. The headings include Product number, Vendor Number, Product Description, Unit of Measure, Tax code, Quantity on Hand, Price and total value.

10 Professional by Category

This report lists retail products by Category. Under each Category, the report lists products in alphabetical order by Manufacturer. The headings include Product number, Vendor Number, Manufacturer, Product Description, Unit of Measure, Tax code, Quantity on Hand, Price and total value.

11 Pricing By Manufacturer

This report breaks down the quantities and pricing for each product by manufacturer.

12 Manufacturers Listing

This report lists manufacturers in alphabetical order.

13 Vendors Index Listing

This report lists vendors in alphabetical order.

14 Vendors Name and Address

This report lists each vendor(s) name and address in alphabetical order. Only vendors that have had addresses entered into *ProSolutions* appear on this report.

15 Categories Listing

This report lists product categories in alphabetical order.

16 In-Salon Use & Expense

The In-Salon Use report lists an operator's In-Salon product use, excluding formulas. The In-Salon Expense report lists by category each In-Salon Use product.

17 Price List Reports

There are two price list reports. One by manufacturer the other by

description both in alphabetical order.

18 Purchase Order Report

This report lists all outstanding purchase orders broken down by Purchase Order Number, Vendor Date, Any Reference notes, Required By Date, Back order status and the total outstanding order value.

19 Receiving Order Transaction Reports

There are four different Receiving Order Transaction reports.

- **All Po's**

This report lists all receiving order transactions to date.

- **Single PO**

This report prints a single receiving order transaction.

- **Number Range**

This report lists transactions in a set number range.

- **Date Range**

This report lists transactions within a set date range.

20 Inventory Worksheet Reports

There are two inventory worksheet reports, these worksheets are designed to help you manually record your inventory.

- **Worksheet for all of your products:**

- **Inventory worksheet for a manufacturer:**

Printing Client Lists

See "Marketing" in Chapter 3.

Goals

This section allows you to both set up and view specific goals that you set for your operators. Each time a transaction is processed, these numbers will be updated. It is an excellent way to see "where" your people are.

Dayrunner

This section describes the Dayrunner report options and setup features.
Appointments

You can print a list of appointments for a single operator, or print a list for all operators.

Printing an operator's appointment listings:

- 1 Choose **Appointments** from the **Dayrunner** menu,.
The **Dayrunner Appointment** window appears.

DAYRUNNER APPTS

Date

OPERATOR

☐ Print even if no appts

☐ Include Client Type

☐ Set for continuous run

Displays a List box of Operators
Single Operator or All Operators

- 2 Select an operator from the list Box.
- 3 Click **Print**.

To print an appointment list for all operators:

- 1 Choose **Appointments** from the **Dayrunner** menu.
- 2 Click the **All Operators** box.
- 3 Click **Print**.

Client Phone Book

This report prints a list of clients on pages from A to Z like a phonebook. You can print a single page or all pages.

To print a phone book listing:

- 1 Choose **Client Phone Book** from the **Dayrunner** menu.
- The **Client Phone Book** window appears.

DAYRUNNER PHONE BOOK

SELECT PAGES TO PRINT

☐ All Pages

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

PRINTER TYPE:

☒ Single Sheet ☐ Continuous Forms

Each letter represents a page heading This report can print all or selected pages.

- 2 To print all pages, click the **All Pages** Box.
- 3 To print Individual pages, click the letter(s) for the page you want to print.

The letters represent the first letter of the client's first or last name, depending on the default sort order you have set. Unless you changed the default setting, it will sort by last name.

Client History

This section describes how to print a report showing a client's service and or retail history.

To print out a client's history:

- Choose **Client History** from the **Dayrunner** menu.

This will bring up the **Client Selection** window. Choose a client. The history file will begin printing.

Dayrunner Forms Layout Options

This section describes how to layout Dayrunner reports.

To see the Forms Layout menu options:

- Choose **Forms Print Setup** from the **Dayrunner** menu.

To setup an appointment form layout:

- 1 Select **Appointments**.

The **Appointment Book Layout** window appears.

APPOINTMENT BOOK LAYOUT

Operator Appointment Form Set-up

Click on "Title Font", "Date Line Font" or "Detail Line Font" to set Font Name and Size.

Standard Layouts
 *Day Runner 3-3/4x6-3/4

150 Title Start
 580 Date Start
 900 Start Line
 250 Left Margin
 3000 Service Margin
 200 Line Space
 40 Lines per Page

Title Font
 Date Line Font
 Detail Line Font

Title Start
 Date Start
 Start Line
 Line Space

Remove
 Cancel
☐ Make Default
 Save

Left Margin Service Margin

Displays a List of Standard Layouts

Page Layout Settings

You can select from a list of Standard Layouts or create your own layout.

- 2 Select a standard or custom **Layout**.
- 3 To use Default settings, click the **Make Default** box.
- 4 To remove a layout, click the **Remove** button.
- 5 To save your Layout, click **Save**.

Note: See if the layout is the default setting (an * asterisk leading the layout description.) If you have two or more layouts beginning with an asterisk, you will get errors and not actually save your changes. To fix a description, take out the * and just save.

To select fonts and font sizes:

- 1 Follow the instructions in the yellow shaded area to bring up the Font Selection window.

The **Font** window appears.

You can select a font, font style or size. As you select font specifications, the Font Sample window will display a sample of the font.

- 2 When you have finished making your selection, click **OK**.

To setup a phone book form layout:

- 1 Select **Phone Book**.
The **Phone Book Layout** window appears.
You can select from a list of Standard Layouts or create your own layout.
- 2 Select a standard or custom layout.
- 3 To use Default settings, click the **Make Default** box.
- 4 To remove a layout, click the **Remove** button.
- 5 To save your Layout, click **Save**.

To select from different fonts and font sizes:

- 1 Follow the instructions in the yellow shaded area to bring up the Font Selection window.
The Font window appears.
You can select a Font, Font Style or Size. As you select font specifications, the Font Sample window will display the font specification.
- 2 When you have finished making your selections, click **OK**.

To setup the Client History form layout:

- 1 Choose **Client History** from **Forms Print Setup** menu.
The **Client Info Setup** window appears.

Enter the Starting Point For Services And Retail History in Inches

- 2 You can adjust the paper size, margin, font style and text size. The minimum settings for this form are 5.25" x 11".
If any part of the message appears to overlap, try a different paper, font or text size until the form is correct. See recommended settings in the next section.
- 3 If the history extends too far on the page, try another font.
- 4 Enter the starting point in inches for the service and retail history information to be printed.

- 5 Click **Accept**.

ProSolutions 8.0 will save this information.

ProSolutions Graphs

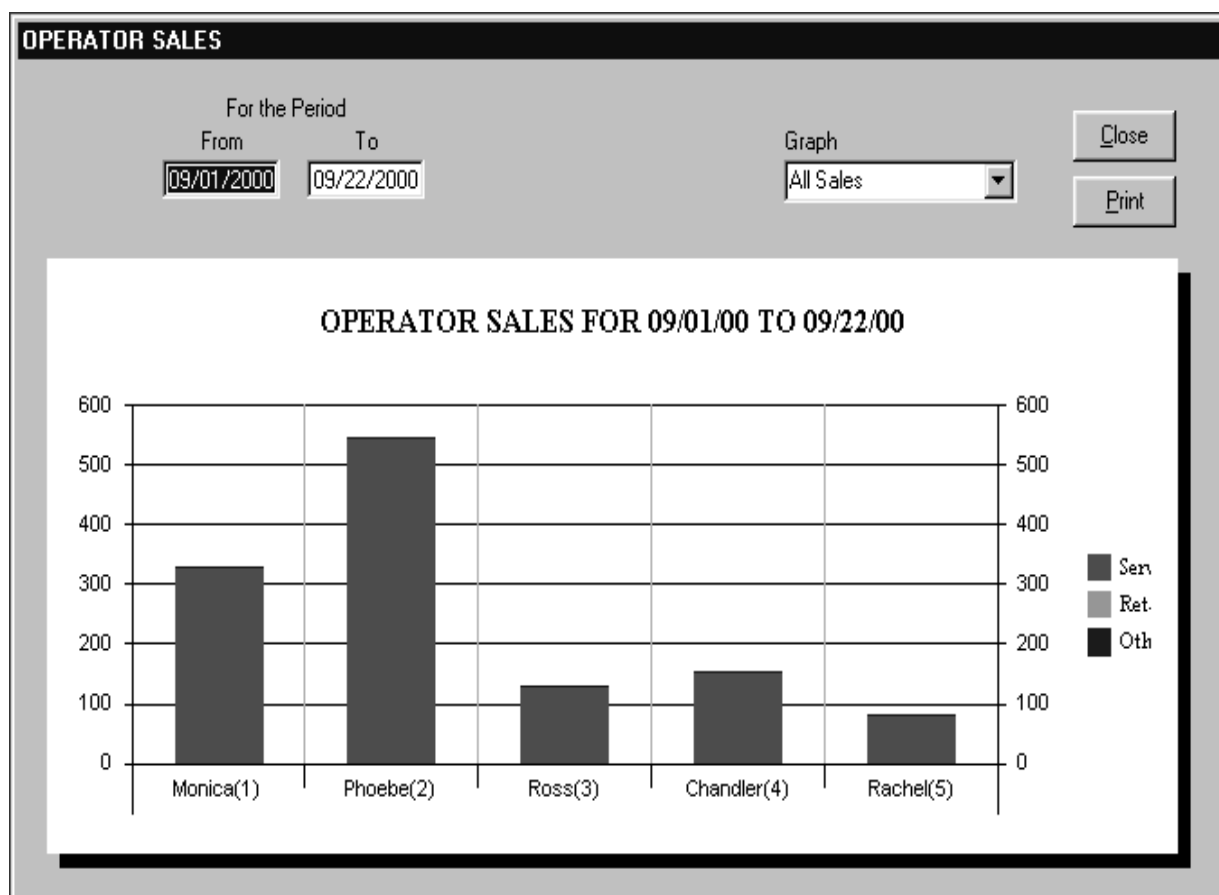
This section lists the graphs that you can view and print. You must have either sales or inventory data in order to view or print graphs.

To enter the Graphs window:

- Choose **Graphs** from the **Reports** main menu.
The **Graphs** main menu appears.

To view a graph:

- 1 Choose the **Salon Sales**, **Operators** or **Inventory** menu heading.
The following example is of the **Operator Sales Comparison** graph.



- 2 To print a Graph, click **Print**.

The Following is a list of each graph:

Sales:

- Daily sales service

- Daily sales retail
- Daily sales combined (service & retail)
- Daily Sales "All Others"
- Weekly sales service
- Weekly sales retail
- Weekly sales combined (service and retail)
- Weekly Sales "All Others"
- Twelve months sales service
- Twelve months sales retail
- Twelve months all sales

Service Sales

- Date Range service
- Date Range Retail
- Date Range by Operator
- Date Range All Operators

Operators:

- Sales Comparison
- Comparison, All Sales
- Comparison, Services Only
- Comparison Retail Only
- Comparison Services and Retail

Miscellaneous Reports

Miscellaneous

- Operator Work Schedule
 - _____ Operator Order
 - _____ Grouped by Title (print only)

These reports will list the Operator Order you wish your operators to appear in on the Appointment Book. The other "Grouped by Title" will place the operators in order of title.

- Appointments List

This report lists Appointments for all or individual operators during a given range of dates.

To print out the Appointment Listing report:

- 1 Choose **Appointment Listing** from the **Miscellaneous** menu.
- 2 Choose an **Operator** or select **All Operators**.

3 Enter a **Date Range**.

4 Click **Print**.

- **Appointments by Client**

This report will list the Appointments that a particular client has coming up in the future, including the current day.

- **Standing Appointments by Client**

This report will list all Standing Appointments a particular client may have.

- **Appointments Waiting List**

This will allow you to print out a list of clients on the waiting list for a particular date range.

- **No Show Report**

This report will allow you to see all those clients with a No Show in their history.

- **Non Check-In report**

A report of all clients who have failed to check in for a date range

- **Non Check-Out report**

A report of all clients who have failed to check OUT for a date range

- **Booking Comparison**

☐ By Service

☐ By Marketing Group

These reports will give you the number, the percent and the amount in dollars booked by Service or by Marketing Group.

- **Appointment Backlog**

This report will show you what appointments are currently backlogged and what their worth is by amount and percent. It will also display the service and the operator.

- **Travel Card Audit**

This report allows you to audit Travel Cards for clients.

- **Business Cards**

ProSolutions 8.0 prints out business cards for an individual operators. The following section describes how to create and print out employee/operator business cards.

To use this feature you need a laser or ink-jet printer. The business cards are designed to print with the laser/ink-jet business cards from the Paper Direct company, for a free catalog call 1-(800)- A- PAPERS.

To create and print out business cards:

1 Choose **Business Cards** from the **Miscellaneous** menu.

The **Business Card** window appears.

- 2 Choose an operator.
- 3 Fill in the Address and Phone Number.
After you enter the address and phone number it will be saved so that you do not have to type it in again.
- 4 Choose a font for the Salon Name.
- 5 Choose a font for the Other Text.
- 6 Choose the # of Sheets to print.
- 7 Click the **Update Info** button to save.
- 8 When ready click **Print**.

Create "The Club @" files

- 1 Marketing - Misc
- 2 Select the date range
- 3 Accept - this will create the files for your Club@ Group 3 Marketing feature.

Batch Reports

Batch Reports will allow you to create a template of the reports that are important to you, so you don't have to run them over and over again individually. Rather, with the simple selection of the template name, you can run all of your most commonly used reports.

Batch Reports - Making

- 1 Left Click on "Batch Reports"
- 2 Put a check mark in the box to the left of each report that is important to

you for this particular template.

- 3 Select the "Report Type"
- 4 Type a Name for the Template
- 5 Press Save.

Batch Reports - Using

- 1 Choose the name of the previously made Template.
- 2 Select the Operator or All Operators.
- 3 Choose the date range.
- 4 Press "Print"

Chapter 8 - Utilities

About ProSolutions Utilities

The Utilities part of *ProSolutions* is made up of a group of sub programs that provide necessary program maintenance and repair functions. You only use utilities if you are experiencing problems or need to change a specific parameter within the program. You should not use any of the Utility programs without first reading this chapter or contacting ProSolutions Software customer support.

Definitely **do not** run any utility function without first doing a complete back up of all of your data files. These utility functions are mainly designed to maintain *ProSolutions*. They do have the capability of removing critical data, so be careful and always do a backup before running any utility function.

Network Note: If you are running *ProSolutions* on a Network, DO NOT run Utilities when other workstations are logged in. If you have questions regarding running utility functions under a network environment, call ProSolutions's customer support line.

To enter the Utilities main menu:

- 1 Choose **Utilities** from the *ProSolutions* main menu.

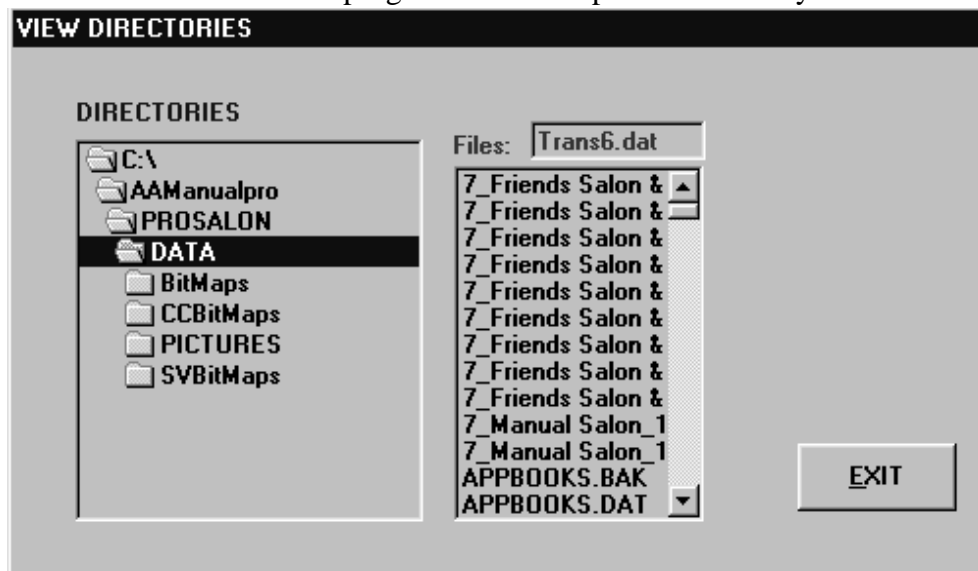
The **Utilities** main menu appears.



List of Utility Functions and their meanings

View Directories

This Utility allows you to view directories and files associated with the *ProSolutions* program. An example of this Utility's function is below:



Appointments Inquiry

This Utility allows you to view appointments for a particular client and also to see such things as "Who booked the appointment", "Who unbooked the appointment", When the appointment was "time stamped", and many other features of the appointment that you may have an interest in.

Simply Click on **Appointments Inquiry** and the Appointments Inquiry

window will appear:

Select "Lookup" For a Client

Click on Line To View Record

Always Matt

Client No. 50 Operator All Operators Service All Services

Lookup

Date Range

☐ Restrict by Date From To

* = Unbooked Click on line (or Detail button) to view record.

Date[*]	Operator	Service	Client Name	Time	Detail
09/11/00	Rachel	HC-Longtwn	Always Matt	09:00 AM	
09/11/00	Rachel	HC-Longtwn	Always Matt	09:00 AM	

Records found = 2

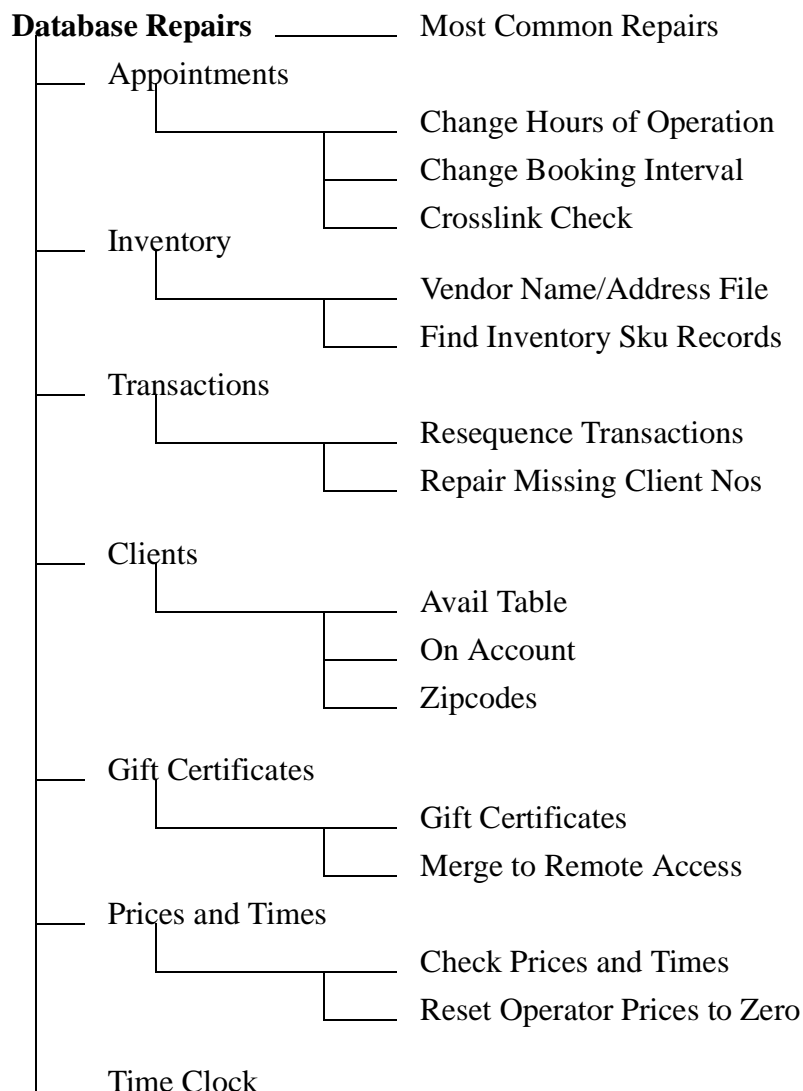
Displaying records 1 to 10, Page 1

Goto Last Page << >>

When you click on the line you wish to see a detail of, the Appointment Detail window will appear for that appointment only. Please note that the operator number will appear next to "Who Booked" "Who Unbooked", etc, not the operator's name.

Database Repairs

This Utility has many Sub Categories, the diagram of the subcategories is below. After the diagram, a description of what each does will follow.



1 Most Common Repairs

The "most common" database repairs are together here in one place for you to check off and run to solve many problems and technical errors that you may encounter. Repairs include: *Point of Sale Transaction repairs, Inventory repairs, Purchase Order repairs, Vendor No. Cross Reference File repairs, Client History repairs, Client Lookup, Client Notes, Client Formulas, Appointments and Series.*

AFTER doing a backup, the Most Common Repairs is a good place to start if you are suffering errors.

2 Appointments

- Change Hours of Operation; this allows you to adjust the hours that your salon opens and closes in reference to the appointment book.
- Change Booking Interval; this allows you to determine the time frame with which you book appointments and schedule times for each individual service. i.e. 10 minutes between each, or 15 minutes, or 30 minutes, etc.

-
- Crosslink Check; this repair will check for any appointments and client files that are crosslinked and may create an error. This repair automatically fixes such crosslink errors that it finds.

3 Inventory

- Vendor Name/Address File; This will "reset" the address file for a vendor
- Find Inventory Sku Records; Self Explanatory

4 Transactions

- Resquence Transactions; this repair will put "out of sequence" transaction numbers back into a recognizable sequence.
- Repair Missing Client Nos; this repair will assign proper client numbers to client files that have been crosslinked or corrupted.

5 Clients

- Available Table; When clients are deleted the client number is made available to re-assigned to another client. Sometimes this can cause errors. This repairs fixes those types of errors.
- On-Account; This repairs the information held by clients who have "On-Account" balances (or credits) on file.
- Zip Codes; This ensures that zip codes are properly assigned to the city they represent.

6 Gift Certificates

- Gift Certificates; repairs errors in the gift certificate data/table
- Merge to Remote Access; If you have multiple salons using the same certificates, this will place the certificates in a Remote Access file that will allow a secondary location to access the same table, thereby preventing duplicate certificate numbers and keeping the gift certificate data accurate.

7 Prices and Times

- Check Prices and Times; this rebuild will process the Prices and Times file, validating that all prices and times are within the range of legal numbers. You assign the highest price and maximum number of time interval divisions, i.e. 1 hour would be 4 divisions of 15, and the repair will list any that have errors.
- Reset Operator Prices to Zero; Self explanatory

8 Time Clock

- This repair will scan the time clock file and remove any records which have invalid values.

Groups and Services

- Modify Group Service Table
- Check Group Table
- Print Group Service Table
- Expand Group Limits
- Expand Service Limits
- Move Services
-
- Print Service Names

- 1 **Modify Group Service Table;** This allows you to make changes to the Group Service Table.
- 2 **Print Group Service Table;** This will print the group and service table for you to review.
- 3 **Expand Group Limits;** At some point you may get the error, Unable to Add Group, Group Limits Full. This means that you have reached the maximum number of Groups that has been pre-set at 10. However, by using this utility, you can increase your group limit. Prosolutions, Inc. recommends only increasing 5 increments at a time.
- 4 **Expand Service Limits;** At some point you may get the error, Unable to Add Service, Service Limits Full. This means that you have reached the maximum number of Services that has been pre-set. However, by using this utility, you can increase your service limit. Prosolutions, Inc. recommends only increasing 25 increments at a time.
- 5 **Move Services;** This utility permits you to move a service from one group to another
- 6 **Print Service Names;** This utility will print a list of all of your services.

File Modify

- Client File
- Modify Transaction Record
- Delete Transactions ————— By Date Range
- Pointer File ————— By Trans #
- Modify Client Series Record
- Delete a Series
- Special Sales
- Remove Client Occupations

- 1 **Client File;** This will purge all client files that have a number greater than the last valid client number you input.
- 2 **Modify Transaction Record;** This will allow a modification to be made to a valid transaction record.

- 3 **Delete Transactions;** You can delete by the exact transaction number, or a group of transactions within a date range.
- 4 **Pointer File;** This Utility is necessary if you notice that any client(s) are not appearing in the client selection box. You should run this utility if you change a client's first or last name or import a a client file from another program.
- 5 **Modify Client Series Record;** This will allow you to make changes to a series file of a particular client.
- 6 **Delete a Series;** Self Explanatory
- 7 **Special Sales;** This allows you to make "special" sales outside of your standard transactions for services and retail. For example, a booth renter must pay you rent each month for the space they occupy. Below is an example of a "special sale."

The screenshot shows a window titled "SPECIAL SALES MODIFY" with a standard Windows title bar. Inside the window, the title "Special Sales" is centered at the top. On the right side, there are two buttons: "Exit" and "Save". The main area contains a form with the following fields and values:

- Record No. 1 of 1
- Date 06/13/00
- Register 1 (dropdown)
- Operator Chandler (dropdown)
- Sale Type Booth Rental (dropdown)
- Description June Rent
- Amount 300.00
- Pay Type Cash (dropdown)
- Credit Card (dropdown)
- Posted By (dropdown)
- Next Pointer 0

At the bottom of the form, the date and time "06/13/00 01:02 PM" are displayed. Below this, there are navigation buttons: "<<", ">>", and "Last", followed by a "Go To" label and an empty text input field.

- 8 **Remove Client Occupations;** In the Client Information Screen, you can keep Client Occupations listed for each client to help you with marketing. This repair will clear those occupations you wish to delete.

File Deletions

This utility will allow you to completely clear the following files: *Appointments, Transactions, Client Files, Inventory, Purchase Orders, Gift Certifi-*

cates, Gift Cards, Internet Gift Card Orders. **Note:** Once one or more of these files is deleted, there is NO way to retrieve the lost information without a current backup.

This utility even give a warning in RED letters that says; "This screen deleted all files of the selected catagories. Remember, unless you have made a backup, there is no recovery possible.

File Import

ProSolutions can import client files from other programs. The files must be in an ASCII Comma Delimited format and only fields that reside in ProSolutions can be imported. For instance if you have a field labeled "Client Height", you wouldn't be able to import it because there is no such field in the our client file.

To import ASCII client files:

- 1 Choose [Utilities] [File Import] [Client Files] [From Ascii Files].

The **General Client Import** window appears.

The screenshot shows the 'GENERAL CLIENT IMPORT' dialog box. It features a list of 15 fields (Field 1 to Field 15) on the left, each with a dropdown menu under the heading 'FIELD TYPES:'. To the right of the fields is a 'Drive' section with radio buttons for 'A:', 'B:', and 'C:'. Below the drive selection is a 'File Name:' text box. At the bottom right are 'Cancel' and 'Import' buttons.

The way the general client import utility works is simple. Just enter the first field label from your exported file in the Field 1 list box. If you have a field that is not importable choose the Ignored selection. In the last field box

enter End of Record. All these selections are located in each field list box.

The following example shows how to import a typical ASCII comma delimited file with the following fields: First Name, Last Name, Address 1, Address 2, City, State, Zip, Phone 1, Phone 2.

To import a typical exported client file:

Click on the Field 1 list box.

- 1 Choose **First Name** from the list box.
- 2 Choose **Last Name** for **Field 2**.
- 3 Choose **Street Address 1** for **Field 3**.
- 4 Choose **Street Address 2** for **Field 4**.
- 5 Choose **City** for **Field 5**.
- 6 Choose **State** for **Field 6**.
- 7 Choose **Zip** for **Field 7**.
- 8 Choose **Phone 1** for **Field 8**.
- 9 Choose **Phone 2** for **Field 9**.
- 10 Since Phone 2 is the last field choose **End of Record** for **Field 10**.
- 11 Make sure that the file containing the client data is in THE ROOT of either your A, B or C drive.
- 12 Enter the File name that you are importing
- 13 Click **Import** to begin.
If the file is imported you will get a confirmation message.
- 14 In order to view the imported clients you will need to run the Data Base repair Client Look-up. *Covered Earlier in this Chapter. Most Common Database Repairs.*

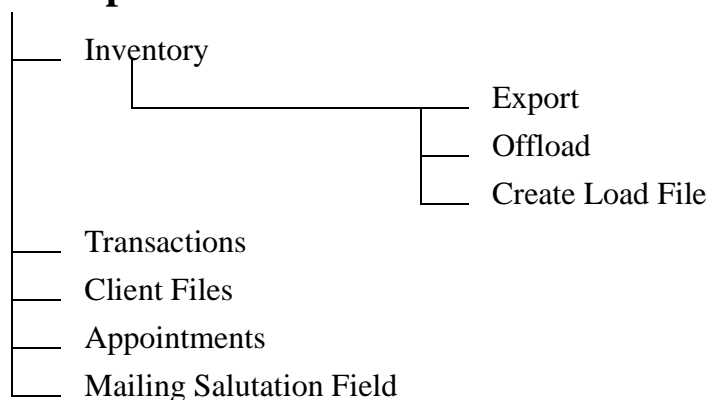
Inventory Import

- ☐ **Import**
- ☐ **Upload**
- ☐ **Restore after Upload**

- 1 **Import;** You must know the "Import File Path" and file name in order to import into ProSolutions. You can check off if you want to Print the items that are imported and also if you choose to use old part numbers. Once again, this must be done in Ascii comma Delimited format. Each field must be set off with quotations, i.e. "Product Name", "Product Price", "Product Cost" etc. If a field is blank, it MUST STILL BE SET OFF BY QUOTATIONS, i.e. "Product Name", "", "Product Cost", etc.
- 2 **Upload;** Some clients may have a corporate office or centralized location that may make changes to inventory, i.e. increase a price on several products, they would then send a disk with the changes made to their franchises, UPLOAD will make only those changes to the inventory that were "Offloaded" by the main office (*See Offload in Export*).
- 3 **Restore after Upload;** This will restore the inventory files after you have

uploaded them.

File Export



Inventory Export

You choose the Vendor, Manufacturer and Category then type in the file path, i.e. B:\Exportinv and press **Export**. The inventory that corresponds to the fields you have chosen will then be exported to the file you path you selected.

EXPORT INVENTORY FILES

File Path:

For Vendors:

For Manufactures:

For Categories:

Offload Inventory

Some clients may have multiple branches of their salon/spa. This feature allows a central branch (main branch) to make changes to the standard inventory file that each branch uses, i.e. increase the sell prices on several products. By Offloading inventory after these changes have been made to a disk, the lesser branches can then "UPLOAD" the inventory and only the changes will be uploaded.

Create Load File

This is a file that you can create, add to, or modify inventory files and records. By Creating a Load File of inventory, you can then use this file to export to another file path. You can also create multiple Load Files for differing uses.

Transactions

This routine will export all transaction file records, in ASCII comma delimited format, to a file named TFmmddyy.ASC, where mmddyy is the "From Date"

Client Files

This utility will export all Client file information to a file named "CLIENTS.TXT" which will be in the ProSolutions Data directory

Appointments

This utility will export a particular operators appointment information for a date range specified by you.

Mailing Salutation Field

This routine will check each clients file and if the Salutation field is not blank, it will export the file in ASCII format. An optional preamble and postamble string may be appended in front of and at the end of the Salutation field. An option "blank" may also be included. This will permit creation of an E-MAIL list if you so choose. By putting e-mail addresses into the salutation field of the Client information screen.

Manual History Input

For Services

Client History Input is available here by operator and service for the date you choose and the price.

For Products

Client History Input is available here by operator and product for the date you choose and the price.

Miscellaneous

Set Logo Name

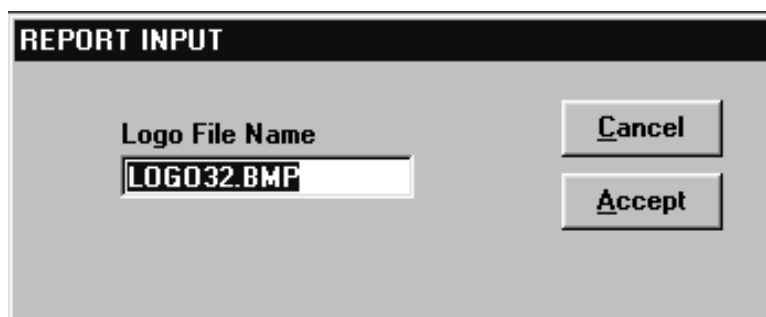
Do this if you wanted to insert your own graphic in place of the *ProSolutions* logo.

Changing the Logo Path

To Change the logo path:

- 1 Choose [Utilities] [Miscellaneous] [Set Logo Name].

The **Logo Path** window appears.



The existing logo path name is displayed

- 2 Enter the new logo path.
- 3 Click the **Accept** button.

Client File to Lower Case

This will convert all the client names to lower case. A warning screen will appear asking you if you "really want to do this" and if you must select Yes or No. Selecting Yes will do the conversion, selecting No will cancel the attempt.

Set Sales Tax Flag:

- 1 **For Retail Products;** This routine will set the Sales Tax code for all Retail products to "T". T means taxable and will apply at the point of sale.
- 2 **For Professional Products;** This routine will set the Sales Tax code for all Professional products to "T". T means taxable and will apply at the point of sale.

Clear All Passwords

This utility will reset the passwords. It is strongly urged if you use password protection, that you limit the use of this utility.

Process Appointment Log File

- 1 If you have been using the "Enable Appointment Logging" preference and have been logging your appointments to floppy disks daily, this is the utility that enables you to process them. By selecting this utility, the **Process Appointment Log File** window appears:

PROCESS APPOINTMENT LOG FILE

☒ Drive A:
☐ Drive B:
☐ Drive C:

Merge to C:

Process

View **Print**

<< **>>** **Exit**

REC#	DATE	OPERATOR	SERVICE	TIME	CLIENT NAME
------	------	----------	---------	------	-------------

To Process Appointments using the Appointment Logging feature:

For more information on using the appointment disk logging feature: See *Chapter 2, Process Appointments using Logging*.

- 2 If you haven't already insert the disk into the disk drive.
- 3 Select the drive, either A, B, or C.
- 4 Click on the **View** button.
- 5 If you like you can print this list by clicking the **Print** button.
- 6 If you want ProSolutions to rebook the appointments in the list, click the **Process** button. ProSolutions will rebook each appointment.
Have your printer turned on to receive a report of which appointments were rebooked.
- 7 You should now go back to appointment book to verify that the appointments were rebooked.
- 8 When you are finished click the **Exit** button.

If you are on a network:

If you have multiple computers booking and logging appointments on to disk you need to merge all the disks to the C: drive.

To merge multiple appointment log disks to the C: drive:

- 1 Enter one of the log disk into your disk drive, either A: or B:
- 2 Select the drive in the upper left hand corner. See illustration below.
- 3 Click the **Merge to C:** button.

- 4 Repeat steps two and three for each disk you have logged appointments to.
You can view this file by selecting Drive C: and then clicking the View button.
- 5 After you have merged each disk click the **Process** button.
Have your printer turned on to receive a report of which appointments were rebooked.
- 6 You should now go back to appointment book to verify that the appointments were rebooked.
- 7 When you are finished click the **Exit** button.

Quick Back-up

What is a backup? A backup is simply another copy of all the files that make up your data. When you “backup” all you are doing is making a copy of a file or files on either a floppy, a Zip disc, a tape, a recordable CD or another part of your hard disk drive.

Why backup? Because you don’t want to redo all your hard work. If something happens to your computer and it decides to not work or someone does something they wish they hadn’t, you can copy everything back to where it should be so that you don’t lose information or data.

How often should I backup? FREQUENTLY. You should do a back-up at least once a day. We recommend backing up at the end of each day or after you have completed entering a lot of new data. For example, if you add a hundred new clients or new inventory items, you should do a back-up immediately. *ProSolutions* includes a simple way to back up on zip discs, tapes, or CD’s or your hard disk drive without having to leave the program: To back up *ProSolutions* files to a floppy diskette(s), or to back up data files to your hard disk drive use the Quick Back-up feature.

WARNING! Quick Back-up clears all data from a path (disk or hard drive) prior to backing up new data.

You can select to back up only the data files (recommended). The data files are created by using *ProSolutions*. Data files do not include the program files contained on the installation disks that were shipped with *ProSolutions*.

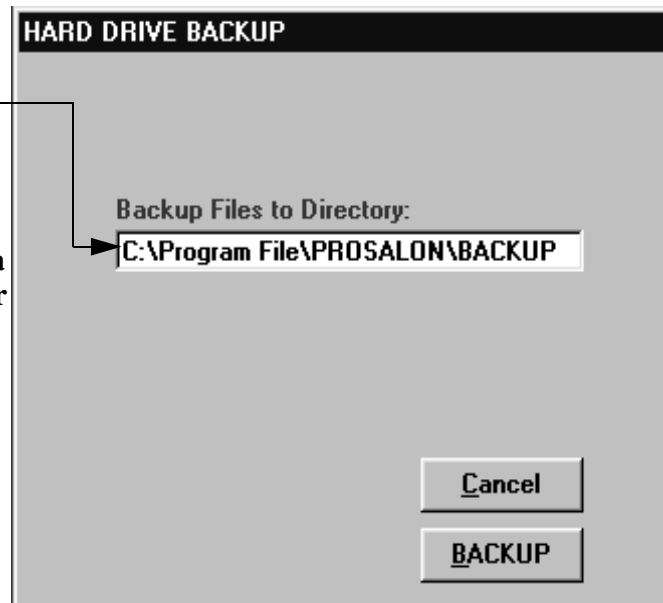
The program files are easily replaced. Data files are unique files and are crucial to your business. We recommend backing up regularly.

To do a Back-up to a Separate Media:

- 1 Choose **[Utilities] [Back-up To Hard Drive]**.
The **Backup To Hard Drive** window appears.

Choose the Drive to backup to, here.

Change the drive letter from C: to the letter of your Flash Drive, Zip Disk, or other separate media unless you wish to backup to your HD.



- 2 Change the drive letter to the one you want to back up to, i.e., C for the Hard Drive or B: for the Zip or E for the Burnable CD (**note:**) Your drive letter may be different from those stated, choose the drive designator that is correct for your system.

Restoring from Flash Drive

HD, Zip, CD or Other Media

- 1 Go to Utilities/QuickBackup/Restore/Restore from Hard Drive.
- 2 Change the drive letter to the one you want to restore from, i.e., C for the Hard Drive or B: for the Zip or E for the Burnable CD (**note:**) Your drive letter may be different from those stated, choose the drive designator that is correct for your system.
- 3 Click the **Restore** button.
- 4 It's that simple.

Chapter 9 - Payroll

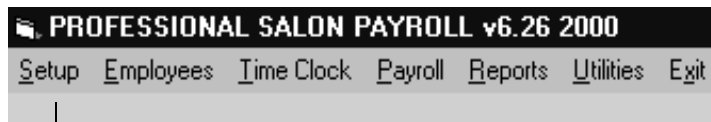
Accessing Payroll from within *ProSolutions*

To access Payroll from within *ProSolutions*:

- Main Menu - Other - Payroll.

The Payroll main menu appears.

Select "Setup" from
The Main Menu



Setup

Set Tax Year

- 1 Select "Set Tax Year" and the Set Tax year window appears:



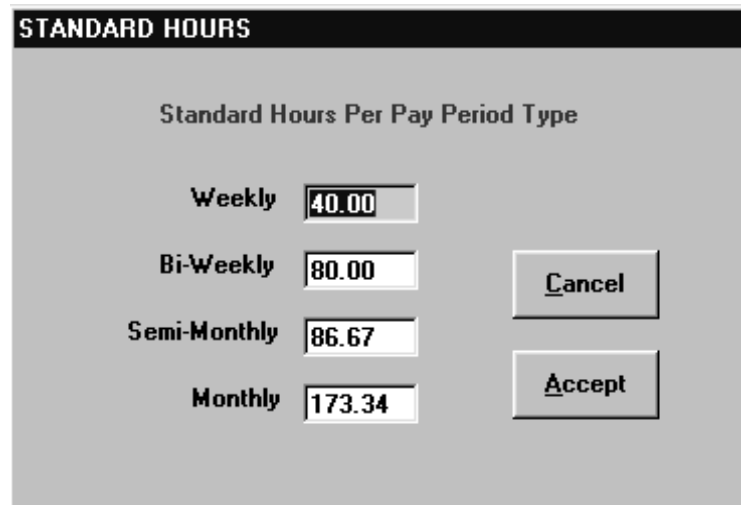
- 2 Select the Year you are starting and Click **OK**.
- 3 You will be required to have the current year's tax table. You can contact ProSolutions Software at the start of each year to order this table.

Define Standard Hours

Standard hours are used for salaried or commissioned employees and are set to the standard number of hours the employee will work per pay period. These hours are used to verify that employees receive at least the minimum

wage.

- 1 Enter your standard hours per pay period type.



The dialog box titled "STANDARD HOURS" contains the text "Standard Hours Per Pay Period Type". It features four input fields for different pay periods: Weekly (40.00), Bi-Weekly (80.00), Semi-Monthly (86.67), and Monthly (173.34). To the right of these fields are two buttons: "Cancel" and "Accept".

- 2 Click **Accept**.

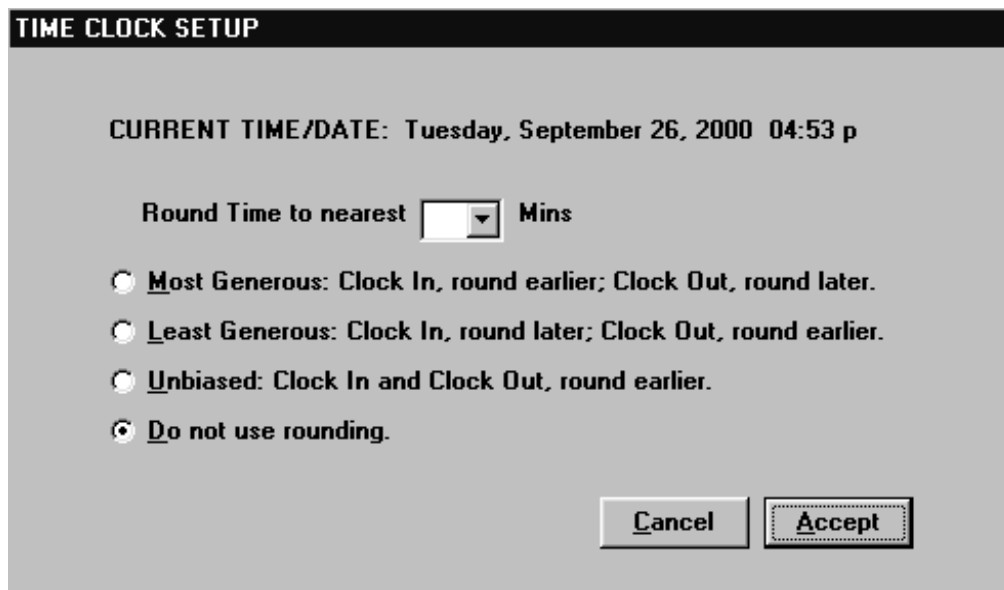
Time Clock Setup

In order to use the Time Clock you must first set up the time clock.

To Set up the Time Clock:

- 1 Choose **Time Clock** from the **Setup** menu.

The Time Clock Setup window appears.



The dialog box titled "TIME CLOCK SETUP" displays the "CURRENT TIME/DATE: Tuesday, September 26, 2000 04:53 p". Below this, there is a label "Round Time to nearest" followed by a dropdown menu showing "0" and the unit "Mins". There are four radio button options: "Most Generous: Clock In, round earlier; Clock Out, round later.", "Least Generous: Clock In, round later; Clock Out, round earlier.", "Unbiased: Clock In and Clock Out, round earlier.", and "Do not use rounding." (which is selected). At the bottom right are "Cancel" and "Accept" buttons.

Select one of the four settings:

- Most Generous will round off earlier when an employee clocks in and

round off later when an employee clocks out.

- Least Generous will round off later when an employee clock in and round off earlier when an employee clocks out.
 - Unbiased will round off earlier when an employee clocks in and clocks out.
 - Do not use rounding will not round off at all when an employee clocks in or out.
- 2 If you are using one of the rounding options you can also select whether you want the time clock to round off to nearest **five, ten, or fifteen** minute interval.
 - 3 When you have made your selections, click **Accept**.

Pay Rate Descriptions

Pay Rate Descriptions are names that you use to describe different rates to pay your employees. These could be names like “Standard Rate”, “over-time Rate” or “Double-Time Rate”

To set your pay rate description:

- 1 Choose **Pay Rate Descriptions** from the **Setup** menu.
The Pay Rate Descriptions window will appear.

The screenshot shows a window titled "PAY RATE DESCRIPTIONS". Inside the window, under the heading "Rate Description", there are three text input fields. The first field, labeled "Rate 1", contains the text "Standard Rate". The second field, labeled "Rate 2", contains the text "Overtime". The third field, labeled "Rate 3", contains the text "Holiday". To the right of these fields are two buttons: "Cancel" and "Accept".

- 2 Enter up to three rate descriptions in the text boxes provided.
- 3 Click **Accept**.

Tax Tables

This section describes how to enter your tax descriptions and tax calculations. Tax tables are used only for special local, city or county taxes. This disk comes free with all new purchases of *ProSolutions* on request.

Because many clients choose to do payroll using other means, the disk is only given to those who request it. Future disks for each new tax year can be purchased from *ProSolutions*. *Federal & State taxes can be set up later within each employees tax calculations option.*

To set up your tax descriptions:

- 1 Choose **Tax Tables** from the **Setup** menu.

- 2 Choose **Tax Descriptions**.

The Tax Descriptions window will appear.

TAX DESCRIPTIONS

Enter Tax Descriptions in the appropriate boxes:

Tax 1	<input type="text" value="County Tax"/>	Tax 6	<input type="text"/>
Tax 2	<input type="text"/>	Tax 7	<input type="text"/>
Tax 3	<input type="text"/>	Tax 8	<input type="text"/>
Tax 4	<input type="text"/>	Tax 9	<input type="text"/>
Tax 5	<input type="text"/>	Tax 10	<input type="text"/>

- 3 Enter up to ten tax descriptions in the text boxes provided.

- 4 Click **Accept**.

To setup your tax calculations

- 1 Choose **Tax Tables** from the **Setup** menu.

Be sure you have added your tax descriptions before attempting to set up tax calculations.

- 2 Choose **Tax Calculations**.

The Tax Calculations window appears.

TAX CALCULATIONS

Tax Descriptions	Tax Type
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

- 3 Select the **Tax** from the **Tax Description** list box.

- 4 Choose a **Tax Type** (A new field will appear for the “percent” or amount” to be entered..

- 5 Choose **Percent of Earning** from the **Tax Type** list box.
 - Enter percent to be applied against earning to compute tax as a decimal number, i.e. .05 for 5%..
 - Select earning type (i.e., salary, commissions, etc.)
 - Select calculation type (i.e. earnings only, earnings deductions, etc.) Depending on this selection enter deduction amount and/or exemption amount.
 - Set maximum and/or minimum tax if they apply.
- 6 Choose **Percent of SIT** from the **Tax Type** list box:
 The Percent of SIT is setup identically to the Percent of Earning window except that tax is calculated on State Income Tax amount.
- 7 Choose **Amount Per Hour** from the **Tax Type** list box.
 The Tax Calculation window appears as follows.
 - Enter amount per hour for the selected tax.
- 8 Select **Amount Per Pay Period** from the **Tax Type** list box.
 The Tax Calculations window appears as follows.
 - Enter a fixed amount per pay period.
- 9 Select **Tax Table Calculations** from the **Tax Type** window.
 The Tax Calculation window appears as follows.

TAX TABLE INPUT

FROM	TO	AMOUNT	EXCESS %
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00
.00	.00	.00	.00

- 10 Fill out tax table for the selected tax.

Deduction Descriptions

Use deduction descriptions for items like Savings Bonds, Loan Repayment, etc.

To set up your deduction descriptions:

- 1 Choose **Deduction Descriptions** from the **Setup** menu.
The Deduction Descriptions window appears.

DEDUCTION DESCRIPTIONS

Deduction 1

Deduction 2

Deduction 3

Deduction 4

Deduction 5

Deduction 6

- 2 Enter up to six tax deduction descriptions in the text boxes provided.
- 3 Click **Accept**.

Expense Reimburse Descriptions

These descriptions are used for items like car expense reimbursing.

To set up expense reimbursement descriptions:

- 1 Choose **Expense Reimbursement Descriptions** from the **Setup** menu.
The Reimbursement Descriptions window appears.

REIMBURSEMENT DESCRIPTIONS

Expense Reimburse 1

Expense Reimburse 2

Expense Reimburse 3

- 2 Enter up to three expense reimbursement descriptions in the text boxes provided.
- 3 Click **Accept**.

Check Format

- 1 From the **Setup** Menu, select **Check Format**
The **Check Format Window** will appear:

- 2 Choose the Check Type
- 3 Choose the Check Position

Check Layout

- 1 From the **Setup** Menu, select **Check Layout**
The **Check Layout Window** will appear: (settings are in “inches.”)

	From Top of Panel	From Left Margin
PAYEE NAME	2.00	0.50
CHECK DATE	1.75	5.00
CHECK AMOUNT	1.75	7.50
AMOUNT WORDS	0.00	0.00 *
Start Stub Information	0.00	

*Words will be right justified and will end at the position indicated.

- 2 Place the necessary spacing information in to line up the wording on the printed check. **note:** it is a very good idea to experiment with standard paper to be sure everything lines up properly before using the computer printer checks.
- 3 **Words and Amounts will be RIGHT JUSTIFIED and will end at the position you indicate!**

Setup for New Year

- 1 From the Setup Menu, select **Setup for New Year** and the following menu will appear. Please be aware that without a backup, these changes will be permanent.

Click on the following items to start at Zero for a new year. This will remove all previous activity from the year before.

- If this is NOT your first year of payroll, a “quick backup” is highly recommended.
- Delete Timeclock Files
- Delete Pay Dates Files
- Delete Pay Req Files
- Delete Fed Deposit Files
- Reset Earnings Records.

Printer Setup

- 1 From the **Setup** Menu select **Printer Setup**. This will allow you to adjust your printer settings to suit your needs.

Employees

Add A New Employee

To add a new employee:

- 1 Choose **Add New** from the **Employee** menu.
The Add New Employee window appears.

ADD NEW EMPLOYEE

EMPLOYEE # 0007 Status: New ☐ Male ☐ Female

First Name MI Last Name Operator Name

Street Address Start Date Term Date

 Birth Date

Phone SSN Pay Frequency

Pay Type Comm. Schedule Comm. Type

Salary Amount Std Hours Rate 1 Rate 2 Rate 3

Base Amount

- 2 Enter the employee's name, address, phone, social security number in the appropriate text boxes.
- 3 Select **Male** or **Female**.
- 4 Enter the employee's **Starting Date** in the **Start Date** field.
- 5 Enter the employee's **Birth date**.
- 6 Select the appropriate **Pay Type** from the **Pay Type** list box.
- 7 Select the appropriate **Commission Schedule** from the **Comm. Schedule** list box.
- 8 Select the **Commission Type** from the **Comm. Type** list box.
- 9 Enter their **Salary Amount** if any.
- 10 Enter the **Standard Hours** in the **Std. Hours** field.
- 11 Be sure to use the ENTER key after entering information into each field to format that field. "number only fields" such as the Social Security Number field, should be entered without dashes, slashes or dots.
- 12 Click the **Set Calculations** button to continue entering tax information for an operator.

The Set Tax Calculations window appears.

SET TAX CALCULATIONS		
CHECK ALL THAT APPLY:		
STANDARD TAX CALCS <input type="checkbox"/> Fed. Income Tax <input type="checkbox"/> Soc Security <input type="checkbox"/> Medicare <input type="checkbox"/> State Income Tax	OTHER TAXES <input type="checkbox"/> County Tax	DEDUCTIONS <input type="checkbox"/> Garnishment <input type="checkbox"/> 401K <input type="checkbox"/> Insurance
Pay State <input type="text"/>	REIMBURSEMENTS <input type="checkbox"/> Education <input type="checkbox"/> Travel <input type="checkbox"/> Miscellaneous	
Fed Filing Status <input type="text"/>	State Filing Status <input type="text"/>	
<input type="text" value="0"/> Fed exemptions	<input type="text" value="0"/> State exemptions	<input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Accept"/>

If you have entered tax, deductions or reimbursement descriptions, the will appear on the Set Tax Calculations window.

- 13 Check the appropriate **Standard Tax Calculations** for the employee.

If you have set up special Tax Tables check boxes they will also appear in this window and should be checked or unchecked as appropriate.

- 14 Check the appropriate **Taxes, Deduction** or **Reimbursement** setting (if any).
- 15 Enter the two character **Pay State Code** (standard state two character abbreviation).
- 16 Select the employee's **Federal Filing Status** from the **Fed Filing Status** list box.
- 17 Select the employee's **State Filing Status** from the appropriate list box.
- 18 Enter the number of **Federal Exemptions** for the employee in the **Fed Exemptions** field.
- 19 Enter the number of **State Exemptions** in the **State Exemptions** field.
- 20 Enter the **Estimated Exemptions** in the **Est. Exempt** field (California Only).
- 21 Click **Accept** to save the employee's file.

NOTE: After setting or modifying any tax calculations for an employee be sure to click **Accept** at the employee name and address window.

Deleting an Employee from Payroll

- 1 Go to [Other] [Payroll] [Reports] [Employee List]

- 2 This will print a list of your employees with **both** their record numbers and their employee numbers. ***It is the RECORD NUMBER you want!***
- 3 Once you have an employee's record number you can then delete them.
- 4 Staying in the Payroll menu, go to [Utilities] [EmployeeInfo Record Deletion]
- 5 The *Delete Employee Record Deletion* Window will appear.
- 6 When deleting multiple employee records, always delete the higher record number first, for example if deleting 2 and 4, you would delete 4 first.
- 7 Enter the Employee's RECORD NUMBER.
- 8 Press Delete.

View/Modify An Employee

To view and modify an employee's file:

- 1 Choose **View/Modify** from the **Employees** menu.
The View/Modify window appears.

MODIFY EMPLOYEE FILE

EMPLOYEE		Status:	Operator
BING, CHANDLER		New	Chandler
First Name	MI	Last Name	<input type="radio"/> Male <input type="radio"/> Female
Chandler		Bing	
Street Address		Start Date	Term Date
327 33rd St.		05/30/00	
		Birth Date	
Manhattan Beach	CA	90266	06/17/65
Phone	SSN		Comm. Schedule
(310) 837-2091	555-55-5555		Base + Comm.
Pay Type	Pay Frequency	Comm. Type	
Commissioned	Weekly	Graduated %	
Std Hours			
40.0			
Base Amount	Set Tax Calculations		Cancel Accept
250.00			

- 2 Select the **Employee's Name** you want to modify from the **Employee** list box.
- 3 The employee's file will be displayed.

- 4 Be sure to use the ENTER key after entering information into each field to format that field. "number only fields" such as the Social Security Number field, should be entered without dashes, slashes or dots.

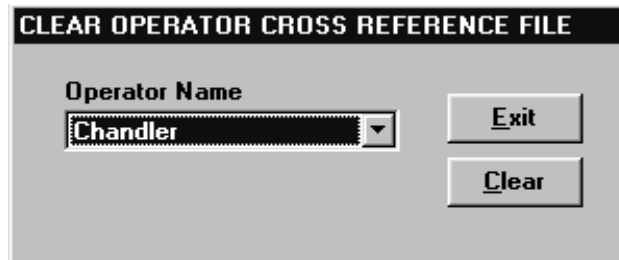
Any of the information in an employee's file can be modified.

- 5 When you are done click, **Accept**.

Clear Operator XRefs

- 1 From the **Employees** menu, select **Clear Operator XRefs**

The **Clear Cross Reference Files** window appears:



- 2 Select the Operator from the list box that you wish to Clear.
- 3 Click Clear
- 4 Click Exit

Employee Year to Date Earnings

- 1 From the Employees Menu select Employee YTD Earnings

The Employee YTD Earnings Window appears.

EMPLOYEE YTD EARNINGS					
EMPLOYEE	Geller, Monica				
	Year-to-Date	Qtr 1	Qtr 2	Qtr 3	Qtr 4
Gross	1,084.00	.00	1,084.00	.00	.00
Gross Wages	1,000.00	.00	1,000.00	.00	.00
Salary Hrs	40.00	.00	40.00	.00	.00
Other Pay	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Other Hrs	.000	.000	.000	.000	.000
Hours 1	.000	.000	.000	.000	.000
Hours 2	.000	.000	.000	.000	.000
Hours 3	.000	.000	.000	.000	.000
Gross Comm.	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Serv. Comm.	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Retail Comm.	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Commission	84.00	.00	84.00	.00	.00
Reported Tips	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
<div> Fed/State Other Deducts Reimburse Cancel Accept </div>					

2 Select employee for which earnings you wish to see.

History Input

To enter an employee's payroll history:

- 1 Choose **History Input** from the **Employees** menu.
The Employee History Wages window appears.

EMPLOYEE HISTORY: WAGES					
EMPLOYEE	Year-to-Date	Qtr 1	Qtr 2	Qtr 3	Qtr 4
Greene, Rachel					
Gross	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Gross Wages	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Salary Hrs	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Other Pay	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Other Hrs	.000	.000	.000	.000	.000
Hours 1	.000	.000	.000	.000	.000
Hours 2	.000	.000	.000	.000	.000
Hours 3	.000	.000	.000	.000	.000
Gross Comm.	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Serv. Comm.	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Retail Comm.	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Commission	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Reported Tips	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00
Fed/State	Other	Deducts	Reimburse	Cancel	Accept

- 2 Select employee for which pay history is to be entered.
- 3 Enter appropriate pay history for the selected employee.

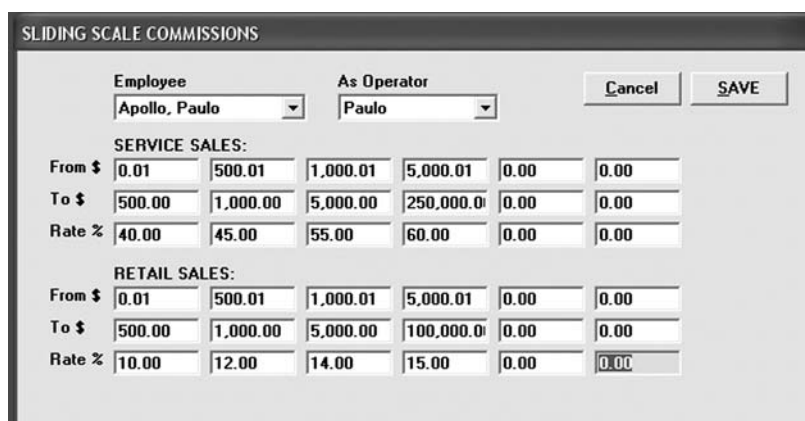
Commission Schedules

This section describes how to setup an employee's commission structure.

To set up sliding commission:

- 1 Choose **Commission Schedules** from the **Employees** menu.
- 2 Choose **Sliding Commissions [Add/Modify Tables]**

The Sliding Scale Commissions window appear.



SLIDING SCALE COMMISSIONS

Employee: Apollo, Paulo As Operator: Paulo

SERVICE SALES:

From \$	0.01	500.01	1,000.01	5,000.01	0.00	0.00
To \$	500.00	1,000.00	5,000.00	250,000.00	0.00	0.00
Rate %	40.00	45.00	55.00	60.00	0.00	0.00

RETAIL SALES:

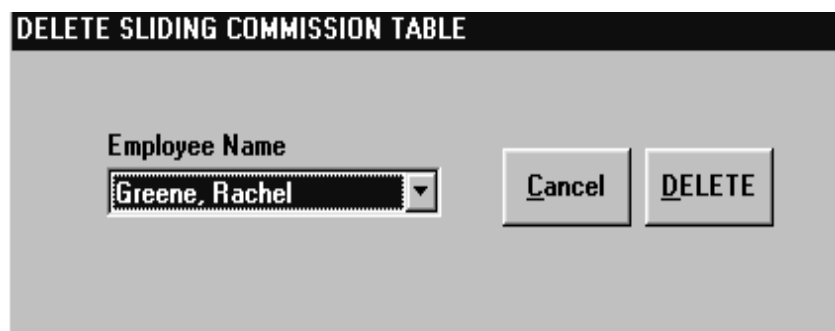
From \$	0.01	500.01	1,000.01	5,000.01	0.00	0.00
To \$	500.00	1,000.00	5,000.00	100,000.00	0.00	0.00
Rate %	10.00	12.00	14.00	15.00	0.00	0.00

- Match the appropriate "Operator ID" to the correct employee.
There are six available sliding commission levels available for both service and retail.
- Enter the dollar amounts in the **From** and **To** fields to indicate the commission amount. **Note: The From field must be different than the To:**
- Enter the **Percentage Rate** in the **Rate%** field.
- Click **Save**.

Deleting Commission Tables:

To delete an employee's commission table:

- Choose **Commission Schedule** from the **Employees** menu.
- Choose **Sliding Commissions [Delete Tables]**.
The Delete Sliding Commission Table appears.



DELETE SLIDING COMMISSION TABLE

Employee Name:

- Select the **Employee** from the **Employee Name** list box.
- Click **Delete**

Percent of Retail to Service Sales

- From the Employees Menu select **[Sliding Commission Rates] [Percent of Retail to Service]**

The Percent of Retail to Service Sales window appears:

% of Retail to Service Sales	Commission Rate
10	10
20	15

Operator Name: **Chandler**

Buttons: **Delete**, **Cancel**, **Accept**

- 2 From the **Operator Name** List box, select the operator you wish to adjust.
- 3 Set the Percentage of Retail to Service and the rates that correspond to your settings.
- 4 Choose **Cancel** to start over, choose **Delete** to clear and choose **Accept** to save your changes.

Commission Rates

To set service commission rates:

- 1 Choose **Commission Rates** from the **Employee** menu.
- 2 Choose **Set Service Rates**.

The Service Commission Rates window appears.

Esthetician: **Paulo**

Service: **All Services**

Rate %: **50**

Make same as this Esthetician: **Do not make same**

Buttons: **Exit**, **Accept**

- 3 Select an **Operator** from the **Operator** list box.
- 4 Select the **Service** you want to set a commission rate for from the **Services** list box.
- 5 Enter the **Commission Rate** in the **Rate%** field.

To set retail commission rates:

- 1 Choose **Commission Rates** from the **Employee** menu.
- 2 Choose **Set Retail Rates**.

The Service Commission Rates window appears.

- 3 Select an **Operator** from the **Operator** list box.
- 4 Select the **Product Catagory** you want to set a commission rate for from the **Catagory** list box.
- 5 Enter the **Commission Rate** in the **Rate%** field.

To set back bar charges:

- 1 Choose **Commission Rates** from the **Employees** menu.
- 2 Choose **Back Bar Charges**.

- 3 Select an **Operator** from the **Operator** list box.
- 4 Select the **Service** you want to set a back bar charge for from the **Ser-vices** list box.
- 5 Enter the **Back Bar Charge** in the **Charges** field. (You can Enter a dollar amount or a percentage.)
- 6 Click **Accept**.

To set cashier commissions

- 1 Choose **Commission Rates** from the **Employees** menu.
- 2 Choose **Cashier Rates**. The Cashier Commission window appears

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASHIER COMMISSIONS". It has a light gray background. At the top, there is a black header bar with the title in white. Below the header, there are two labels: "Employee Name" and "Rate". Under "Employee Name" is a list box with a downward arrow. Under "Rate" is a text input field. To the right of these fields are two buttons: "Exit" and "Accept".

- 3 Select an **Operator** from the **Operator** list box.
- 4 Enter the **Rate of Commission** in the **Rate** field.
- 5 Click **Accept**.

Time Clock

This section describes how to clock in and clock out using the Time Clock feature. ***Important! The Clock In and Clock Out features of the Time Clock are only accessible through the MAIN MENU of ProSolutions, not the Payroll Menu.***

To Clock In:

- 1 Choose **Time Clock** from the MAIN MENU of ProSolutions (Not in Payroll!).

The Clock In window appears. The current date and time is displayed at the top.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "TIME CLOCK". It has a light gray background. At the top, there is a black header bar with the title in white. Below the header, the name "RACHEL GREENE" is displayed. Below the name is the label "Enter Employee No." followed by a text input field containing the number "4". To the right of the input field is a checkbox labeled "Print ticket". Below the input field is the time "10:42 AM". To the right of the time are two buttons: "CLOCK" and "Cancel". The text "Clock In" is displayed in a large, light gray font at the bottom right.

- 2 Select the **Employee Number** of the person clocking in.
- 3 Click the **Clock** button.

The selected employee will be clocked in at the time displayed at the top

of the window, rounded or not rounded based on the setting made when setting up the time clock. Setting up the Time Clock is described earlier in this chapter.

To Clock Out:

- 1 Choose **Time Clock** from the main menu (If you have already clocked in, then it will automatically default to Clock Out.

- 2 Select the **Employee Number** of the person clocking out.
- 3 Click the **Clock** button.

The selected operator will be clocked out at the time displayed at the top of the window, rounded or not rounded based on the setting made when setting up the time clock. Setting up the Time Clock is described earlier in this chapter.

Adjust Employee

The Time Clock allows you to adjust an employee's hours or void a day.

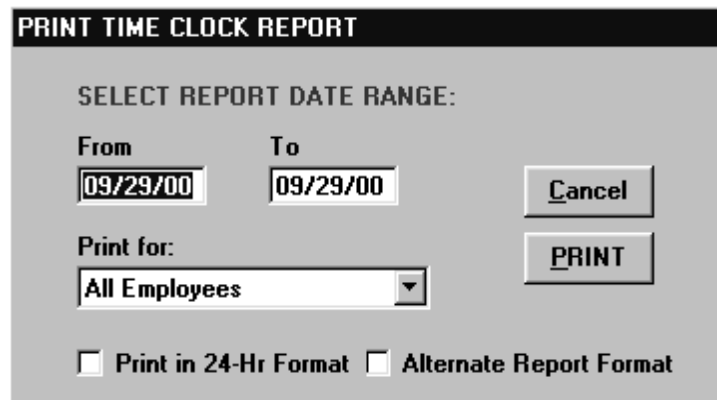
To adjust or void an employee's hours for a day:

- 1 Choose **Adjust Employee** from the **Time Clock** window.
The Adjust Employee Time Clock window appears.

- 2 Select an **Employee**.
- 3 Select the **Date** you want to modify.
- 4 Select the **Time In\Out**.
- 5 Enter the **New Clock In** time and/or the **New Clock Out** time. **Note:** *Adjustments must be entered in the following format: HH:MM AM eg, 11:30 AM then press Enter to continue.*
- 6 To add a clock in/out for a day with no time clock activity, click the “New” button.
- 7 To void click the **Void** button.
- 8 When you have made your modifications, click **Accept**.

To print the Time Clock report:

- 1 Choose **Print Report** from the **Time Clock** menu.
- 1 The Print Time Clock Report window appears.



- 2 Select the date range for the report.
- 3 Select All Employees or use the List Box to select just one.
- 4 Click **Print**.

Payroll

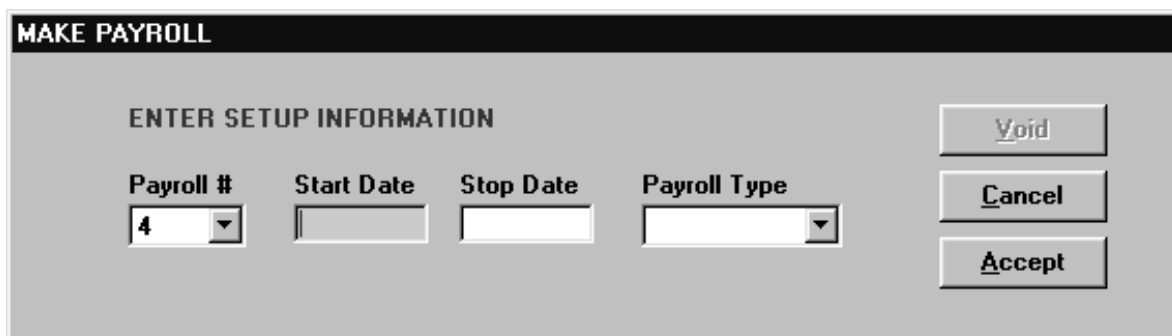
This section describes how to make and process a payroll.

Make Payroll

This is the first step in generating a payroll.

To make a payroll:

- 1 Choose **Make Payroll** from the **Payroll** menu.
The Make Payroll window appears.



MAKE PAYROLL

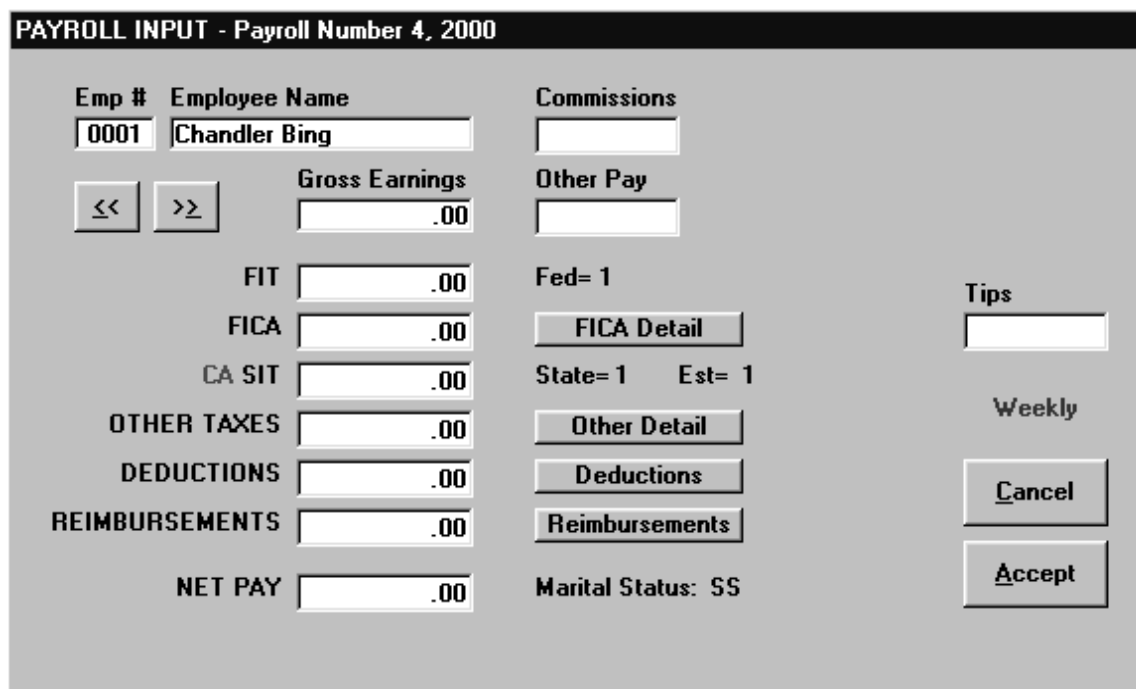
ENTER SETUP INFORMATION

Payroll # Start Date Stop Date Payroll Type

4 [] [] []

Void Cancel Accept

- 2 Select the **Payroll #**.
All payrolls are identified and referred to by number. They will remain on the list until they are either "processed" or "voided".
- 3 Enter in a **Date Range**.
- 4 Select a **Payroll Type**.
To void a payroll, select a previous payroll and click the Void button.
- 5 When you are ready to make payroll click, **Accept**.
The Make Payroll window appears.



PAYROLL INPUT - Payroll Number 4, 2000

Emp #	Employee Name	Commissions	
0001	Chandler Bing	[]	
<<	>>	Gross Earnings	Other Pay
		[] .00	[]
FIT	[] .00	Fed= 1	Tips
FICA	[] .00	FICA Detail	[]
CA SIT	[] .00	State= 1 Est= 1	Weekly
OTHER TAXES	[] .00	Other Detail	
DEDUCTIONS	[] .00	Deductions	Cancel
REIMBURSEMENTS	[] .00	Reimbursements	Accept
NET PAY	[] .00	Marital Status: SS	

All employees with the selected payroll type will be displayed in Employee # order.

The Payroll Input window will vary depending on whether the employee is salaried, commissioned, hourly, etc.

- 6 Enter the **Commission** if employee is commissioned. *This info is calculated by the program and may be found at [Main Menu] [Reports] [Sales] [Operator Reports] [Commission Reports.]* Although this information is

calculated in these reports, it still must be entered manually into this payroll function.

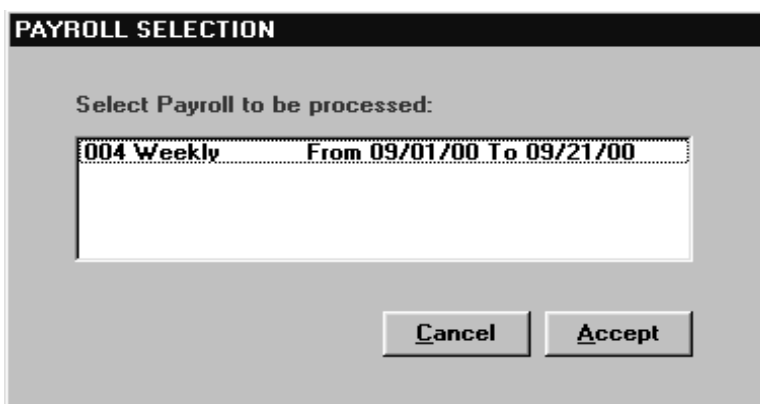
- 7 Make any other necessary modifications.
- 8 If you wish "Tips" to be calculated with regard to taxes, they must be entered into the "Other Pay" field. For clarity you may also choose to place the "tips" number in the "Tips" field. *The "tips" field does NOT replace the "Other Pay" and tips MUST be entered into "Other Pay" if you wish to have taxes applied to them.*
- 9 Click **Accept** to make payroll.

Process Payroll

To process manual checks:

- 1 Choose **Process Payroll** from the **Payroll** menu.
- 2 Choose **Manual Checks**:

The Payroll Selection window appears.



PAYROLL SELECTION

Select Payroll to be processed:

004 Weekly From 09/01/00 To 09/21/00

Cancel Accept

- 3 Select the **Payroll** to be processed.
The Manual Check Processing window appears.
- 4 Enter or verify the correct check date and check # for each employee.
Use the scroll buttons to view each employee.

MANUAL CHECK PROCESSING

Payroll # **4** Check Date **09/29/00**

NO EMPLOYEES TO PROCESS

Cancel

PROCESS

- 5 After reviewing all employees, click **Process** to complete this payroll.

Align Checks

By selecting Align Checks, you will automatically begin the print process.

Federal Tax Deposits

To Post Federal Tax Deposits:

- 1 Choose **Fed. Tax Deposits** from the **Payroll** menu.
The Federal Tax Deposits window appears.

FEDERAL TAX DEPOSIT

POST FEDERAL TAX DEPOSITS

Chk Date:

Chk No:

Paid To:

Chk Amount:

Cancel

ACCEPT

- 2 Enter the information in the appropriate text boxes.
- 3 Click, **Accept**.

Reports

This section describes the various payroll reports.

Payroll Register report

- Prints the payroll register for each employee.

Employee List

- Prints out a list of Employees

Employee Name and Address

- Prints out a list of all employees with their addresses, ss#, tele #, etc.

Employee Phone List

- Prints out a list of all employees and their telephone #s.

Employee Earnings report

- Prints out all employee's YTD totals.

Employee Detail Earnings

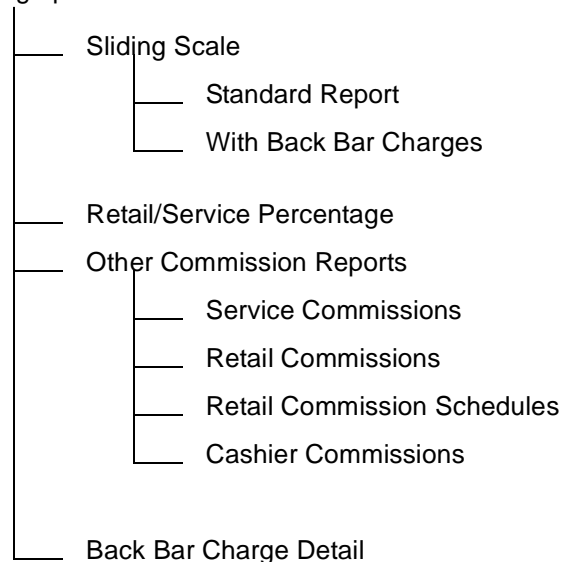
- Prints out earnings totals for a particular employee with detail.

Detail Pay Register

- This report prints out a Pay Register Report including Employee #, Gross Pay, FIT, FICA, SIT, SDI and Net

Commission reports

- Prints each operators total commissions for a a pay period with the following options



About the Federal Tax Deposit report

- Prints all federal taxes for an employee.

Quarterly Reports

State Quarterly Reports

Utilities

It is a good idea to contact ProSolutions before running any utilities in the Payroll Module.

Chapter 10 - Passwords

What you'll do in this chapter

- Setup Program Passwords
- Setup Biometric Scanning

Setting Program Passwords

This section explains how to password protect certain areas of *ProSolutions*.

This password system enables you to set up a password for any one in your salon regardless if they accept appointments or not. As the owner or manager you decide where in the program you want to require a password and which passwords gain access to a particular area and which do not. Once a section of the program has been password protected it will always require a valid password to be entered in order for access to be allowed.

Another element of the password feature is the ability to set a time duration for that password. The easiest way to explain a time duration is as follows: Say, for example, that you have a receptionist at a single register. You have many of the "sales" buttons password protected. She would have to keep entering her password everytime she wanted to do any sales task if you did not assign a time duration. If YOU DID assign a time duration, she would only have to enter her password once for however long that duration was set for, up to one full hour. Every transaction performed during that time, will be assigned to her password. However, if she were to leave the computer for any reason during that time, she could select "clear passwords" which would require the entry of a password in order to continue, so that her time would have to start over when she came back. This way she protects against somebody else using the register under her password.

First Things First:

The first thing to do if you are going to use the password feature is to set up a master password. The master password, unlike other passwords, is "Case Sensitive." The master password is not a password for you to use to gain access to password protected areas. Rather, it is the password you use to allow you to create or modify other passwords. It will also be the only password that can turn on or off the password protect preference setting

that enables or disables password protection.

To set up a master password.

- 1 From the main menu click **[Setup] [Configuration] [General] [Passwords]**.

One of two windows will appear. If you have never been to this feature, The **Set Master Password** Input window appears. Remember the Master password is case sensitive.

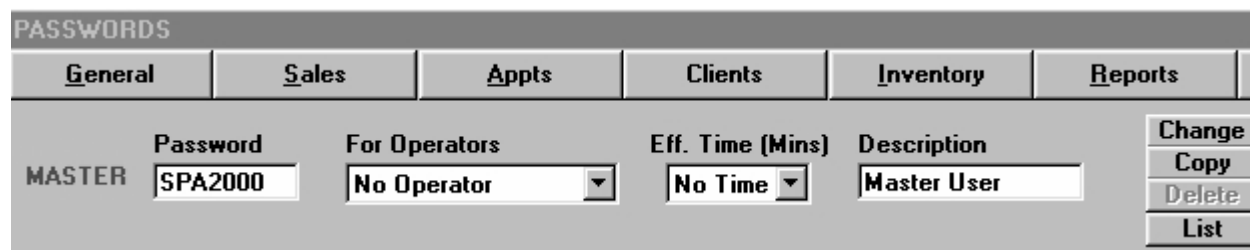
A screenshot of a software window titled "PROGRAM PASSWORD". Inside the window, the text "Set MASTER password" is displayed above a text input field. The input field contains six asterisks (*****).

If you have already been here, the **Enter Password** Input window appears.

A screenshot of a software window titled "PROGRAM PASSWORD". Inside the window, the text "Enter password" is displayed above a text input field. The input field contains six asterisks (*****).

- 2 Type in your master password. The password can be anything you want up to eight characters long.

This will bring up the **Passwords** window.

A screenshot of a software window titled "PASSWORDS". The window has a tabbed interface with tabs for "General", "Sales", "Appts", "Clients", "Inventory", and "Reports". The "General" tab is selected. Below the tabs, there are several fields: "Password" (containing "SPA2000"), "For Operators" (a dropdown menu showing "No Operator"), "Eff. Time (Mins)" (a dropdown menu showing "No Time"), and "Description" (containing "Master User"). To the left of the "Password" field, the word "MASTER" is displayed in red. On the right side of the window, there are four buttons: "Change", "Copy", "Delete", and "List".

- 3 In the "Password" field, type in your master password again. If you like you can change the master password later.
- 4 Press the enter key on your keyboard.
- 5 You will see the word "**Master**" appear in red to the left of the **Password** field.
- 6 Click **Accept**, to save your master password.

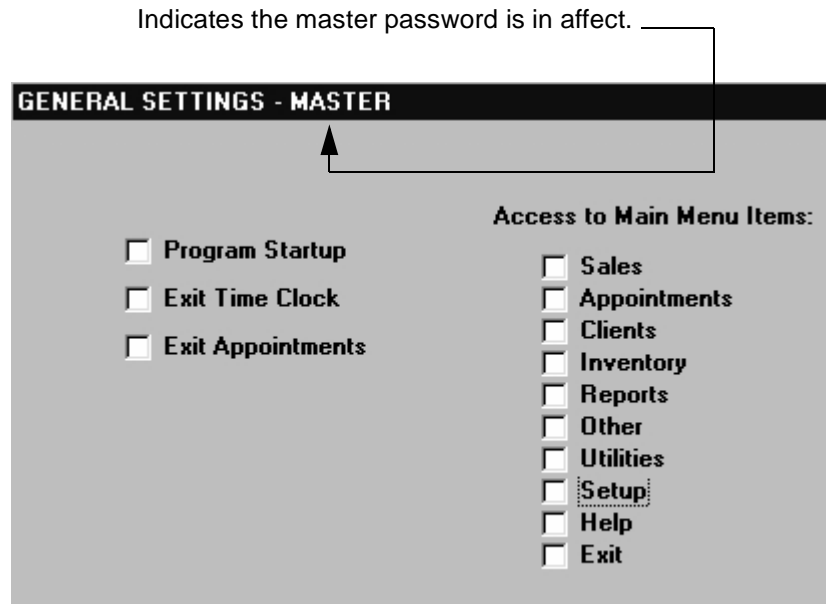
Be sure to remember the master password. If you forget this password you will have to contact ProSolutions Software technical support.

Now we are ready to determine which areas of the program are to be password protected.

To set general password settings in *ProSolutions*:

- 1 Click the **General** button.

The **General Settings** window appears.



Any check boxes you set here will require a password.

- 2 Check the general areas of the program you want to password protect.

Each setting that you check will turn color to blue and have a check mark next to it.

- 3 Click **Accept**.

To set sales password settings in *ProSolutions*:

- 1 Click the **Sales** button.

The **Sales Settings** window appears.

Indicates the master password is in affect.

SALES REGISTER SETTINGS - MASTER

Access to Menu Items:

☐ Register

☐ Close

☐ Rollback

☐ End-of-Day Report

☐ Service Sales Report

☐ Retail Sales Report

☐ Deposits

☐ In-Salon Use

☐ Merchandise Returns

☐ Paid Ins/Outs

☐ On-Account

☐ Void Transactions

☐ Duplicate Receipt

☐ No Sale

☐ Clear Password

☐ Clear FILEBUSY

☐ Gift Cert Modify

☐ Void Gift Cert

☐ Print Gift Cert

☐ View

☐ Transactions

☐ Prior Closings

☐ Appt Waiting List

☐ Service Price List

☐ On Account Status

☐ Client Series Status

☐ Gift Cert Status

☐ Client Phonetic Search

☐ Appt Schedule

☐ Printer Setup

☐ Tanning

☐ Book Appts

☐ Time Clock

Allow Users to:

☐ Modify Prices

☐ Apply Discounts

☐ Enter Cashier Number

Cancel

Accept

Any check boxes you set here will require a password.

- 2 Check the sales settings you wish to restrict access to.

Each setting that you check will turn color to blue and have a check mark next to it.

- 3 Click **Accept**.

Appointment book password settings in *ProSolutions*:

- 1 Click the **Appts** button.

The **Appts Settings** window appears.

Indicates the master password is in affect.

APPOINTMENT SETTINGS - MASTER

Access to Menu Items:	Can Perform Following Operations:
<input type="checkbox"/> AutoBook	<input type="checkbox"/> Book Appointment
<input type="checkbox"/> Day/Week View	<input type="checkbox"/> Unbook Appointment
<input type="checkbox"/> Pending List	<input type="checkbox"/> Reschedule Appt
<input type="checkbox"/> Operator Appointments	<input type="checkbox"/> View Appt Info
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Pricelist	<input type="checkbox"/> Check-In Client
<input type="checkbox"/> Appt Confirmations	<input type="checkbox"/> Add/Remove on Appt Wait List
<input type="checkbox"/> Appt Waiting List	<input type="checkbox"/> Confirm Appointment
<input type="checkbox"/> Client Appt Listing	<input type="checkbox"/> Book Blockout
<input type="checkbox"/> Multi-Appt Delete	<input type="checkbox"/> View Operator's Schedules
	<input type="checkbox"/> Only View Own Appointments in Week View

Cancel

Accept

Any check boxes you set here will require a password.

- 2 Check the appointment settings you wish to restrict access to.

Each setting that you check will turn color to blue and have a check mark next to it.

- 3 Click **Accept**.

Client information password settings in *ProSolutions*:

- 1 Click the **Clients** button.

The **Client Settings** window appears.

Indicates the master password is in effect.

CLIENT SETTINGS - MASTER

Access to Menu Items:

- ☐ Add New
- ☐ View, Change
- ☐ Quick Lookup
- ☐ Phonetic Search
- ☐ Waiting List
- ☐ TravelCard
- ☐ Print Formulas
- ☐ Set Pop-up
- ☐ Set Referred Count
- ☐ Delete a Client
- ☐ Multi-delete a Client

Can Perform the Following Operations:

- ☐ View Client File
- ☐ View Address and Phone Numbers
- ☐ Modify Client File
- ☐ View Clients of Other Operators
- ☐ View History
- ☐ View Formulas
- ☐ View Notes
- ☐ View Tracking
- ☐ View In-Take
- ☐ View Client Discounts
- ☐ Print Client Info
- ☐ Show Client Appts

Cancel

Accept

Any check boxes you set here will require a password.

- 2 Check the client settings you wish to restrict access to.

Each setting that you check will turn color to blue and have a check mark next to it.

- 3 Click **Accept**.

Inventory password settings in *ProSolutions*:

- 1 Click the **Inventory** button.

The **Inventory Settings** window appears.

Indicates the master password is in affect.

INVENTORY SETTINGS - MASTER

Access to Menu Items:

<input type="checkbox"/> Products	<input type="checkbox"/> Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/> Labels
<input type="checkbox"/> Add New	<input type="checkbox"/> Create	<input type="checkbox"/> From Inventory Counts
<input type="checkbox"/> Modify	<input type="checkbox"/> Receive	<input type="checkbox"/> User Defined
<input type="checkbox"/> Delete	<input type="checkbox"/> View	
<input type="checkbox"/> Move	<input type="checkbox"/> Print	
<input type="checkbox"/> Physical Count	<input type="checkbox"/> Void	
<input type="checkbox"/> View Products		

☐ **Indexes**

<input type="checkbox"/> Vendors	<input type="checkbox"/> View Costs on any Screen
<input type="checkbox"/> Manufacturers	<input type="checkbox"/> View Inventory but NO Modify
<input type="checkbox"/> Categories	

Any check boxes you set here will require a password.

- 2 Check the inventory settings you wish to restrict access to.

Each setting that you check will turn color to blue and have a check mark next to it.

- 3 Click **Accept**.

Reports password settings in *ProSolutions*:

- 1 Click the **Reports** button.

The **Reports Settings** window appears.

Indicates the master password is in affect.

REPORT SETTINGS - MASTER

Access to Menu Items:

<input type="checkbox"/> Sales	<input type="checkbox"/> Inventory	<input type="checkbox"/> Marketing
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Sales	<input type="checkbox"/> All Products	<input type="checkbox"/> Create a List
<input type="checkbox"/> Only Their Operator	<input type="checkbox"/> Retail Inventory	<input type="checkbox"/> Print Lists
<input type="checkbox"/> Retail Sales	<input type="checkbox"/> Professional Inventory	<input type="checkbox"/> Export File
<input type="checkbox"/> Only Their Operator	<input type="checkbox"/> Pricing By Mfg.	<input type="checkbox"/> Form Letters
<input type="checkbox"/> Operator Reports	<input type="checkbox"/> Vendor Listings	<input type="checkbox"/> Client Reports
<input type="checkbox"/> Commission Reports	<input type="checkbox"/> Manufacturer Listings	<input type="checkbox"/> Client Count/Type
<input type="checkbox"/> Transactions	<input type="checkbox"/> Category Listings	<input type="checkbox"/> Client Ranking
<input type="checkbox"/> Sales Tax Report	<input type="checkbox"/> In-Salon Reports	<input type="checkbox"/> Other Client Reports
<input type="checkbox"/> Coupon Reports	<input type="checkbox"/> Price Lists	<input type="checkbox"/> On Account Status
<input type="checkbox"/> Series	<input type="checkbox"/> Purchase Orders	<input type="checkbox"/> Export Name and Address
<input type="checkbox"/> Gift Certificates	<input type="checkbox"/> Receiving Transacts.	<input type="checkbox"/> Day Runner
<input type="checkbox"/> Misc	<input type="checkbox"/> Worksheets	<input type="checkbox"/> Appointments
<input type="checkbox"/> Appointments	<input type="checkbox"/> Graphs	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone Book
<input type="checkbox"/> Business Cards	<input type="checkbox"/> Printer Setup	<input type="checkbox"/> Client History

Cancel Accept

Any check boxes you set here will require a password.

- 2 Check the reports settings you wish to restrict access to.

Each setting that you check will turn color to blue and have a check mark next to it.

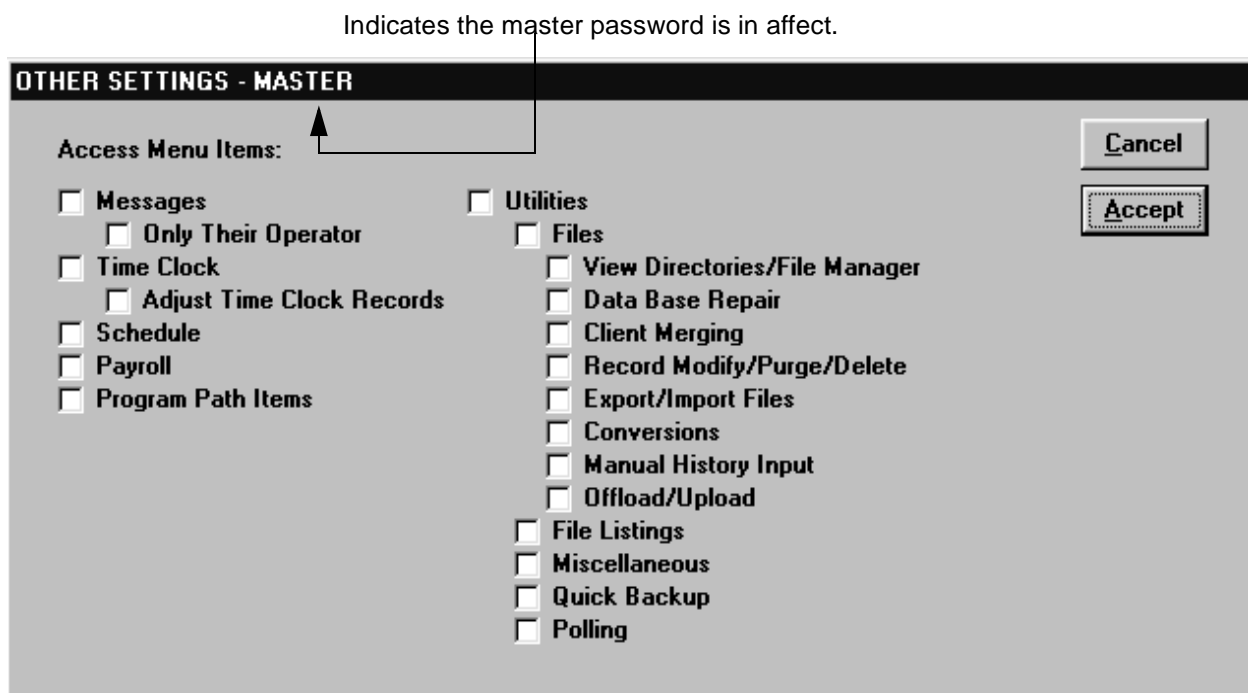
All of the above settings are menu items. By checking any one of the setting will require a password if someone wants to access, print or view any of these items.

- 3 Click **Accept**.

Other menu password settings in *ProSolutions*:

- 1 Click the **Other** button.

The **Other Settings** window appears.



Any check boxes you set here will require a password.

- 2 Check the other menu settings you wish to restrict access too.

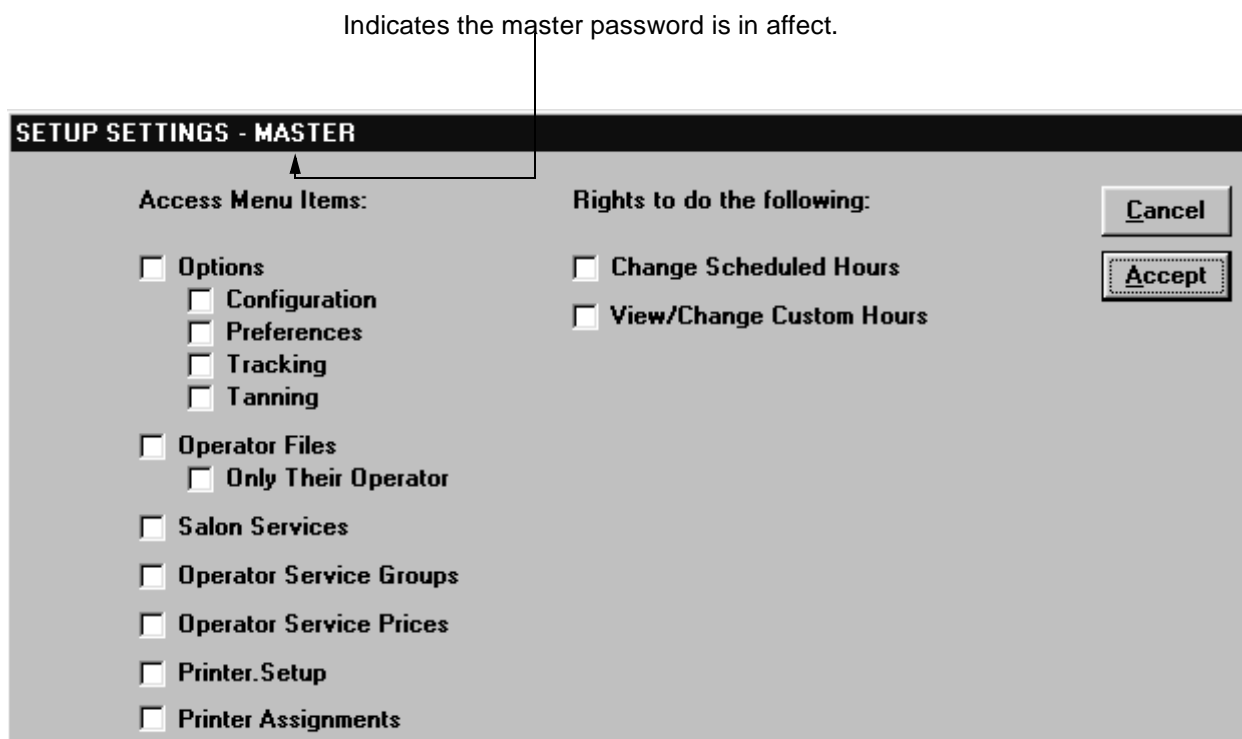
Each setting that you check will turn color to blue and have a check mark next to it.

- 3 Click **Accept**.

To set Setup password settings in *ProSolutions*:

- 1 Click the setup button.

The **Setup Settings** window appears.



Any check boxes you set here will require a password.

- 2 Check the setup settings you wish to restrict access to.

Each setting that you check will turn color to blue and have a check mark next to it.

- 3 Click **Accept**.

The next thing to do after you set your master password is to set up individual passwords for each employee you wish to limit.

To setup passwords for operators and employees:

- 1 If you haven't already added operators the "For Operator" list box will be empty. For instructions on entering operators: See "About Adding Operators" in Chapter 2.
- 2 From the main menu click **[Setup] [Configuration] [General] [Passwords]**
- 3 Enter your master password, see the preceding section for instructions if you do not already have a master password setup.
- 4 Type in the new password in the **Password** field.
- 5 From the **Operator** list window select the operator this password will be associated with. This is an option. We recommend this if this operator will be booking appointments or ringing up sales and you want to track these activities by operator.
- 6 Select a time duration for the **Time Duration** list window. This is an option. It will determine how long the password is to remain in effect from last activity.

-
- 7 Click **Accept**.

Assigning areas of the program an operator/employee has access to:

- 1 Click each of the following buttons that the program has required passwords for.



Each button will bring up a window of check boxes colored in blue indicating the areas of ProSolutions that have been activated to require a password. Items that are not activated will not require a password and will be grayed out.

- 2 Check the settings that this password will allow access to.
- 3 Click **Accept**.
- 4 Before entering another password or leaving this screen you must click the **Accept** button located on the upper right hand corner in order for the new settings to be saved.

To turn on the password protect preference setting:

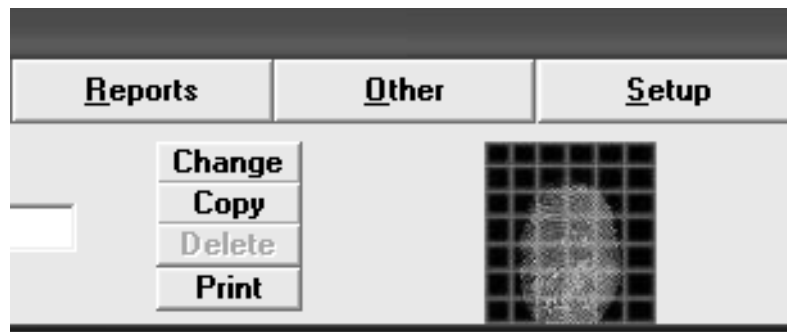
You must turn on the this preference setting in order for the password setting to be in effect.

- 1 From the main menu click, **[Setup] [Preferences] [General]**
- 2 Click the checkbox labeled **Password Protect**.
- 3 You will be required to enter in the master password to turn on or off this preference setting.

ProSolutions will now require passwords for the areas of the program that were restricted in the password module.

Setting up Biometric Fingerprint Scanning.

- 1 From the main menu select, **[Setup] [Preferences] [General]**
- 2 Place a check in the box next to "Enable Biometric Passwords"
- 3 Because you have already set up passwords (earlier in this chapter) you do not need to set them up again. However, **YOUR EMPLOYEES SHOULD NOT KNOW WHAT THEIR PASSWORD IS OR IT DEFEATS THE PURPOSE OF THE FINGERPRINT SCANNER!**
- 4 Enter the employees password into the password field of the Password Setup Window and select "Enter" this will pull up the employee and their rights. Click on the green "Fingerprint"



- 5 After clicking on the green fingerprint the fingerprint scanner screen will appear and ask your employee to place his/her index finger or thumb onto the pad until it is read then lift it off. You will repeat this step 2 TWO more times. Than the system will tell you that the fingerprint has been recorded. Press ACCEPT and from that time on that employees finger-print will be able to be used rather than typing in their password. Be sure that they cannot see their password when performing this function. There is no reason that your employee has to see the screen at all in order for you to perform this task!

Index

Numerics

40 Column Report Preferences 91

A

Accepting a Sale 228

Account Status 133

add or modify a Series 64

Adding a Vendor 150

Adding Manufacturers 151

Adding Operators 46

Adding Services 52

All Po's 265

All Products Summary Totals By Vendor, Mfg. & Category 263

All Transactions 260

Alternate Schedule 49

Amount Per Hour 295

Amount Per Pay Period 295

Anniversary 122

Annotations 143

Appointment Backlog 272

Appointment Confirmation 194

Appointment Log File 286

Appointment Logging 96

Appointment Options 191

Appointment Preferences 85

Appointments 278

Appointments by Client 272

Appointments Inquiry 276

Appointments Waiting List 272

Area Code 69

ASCII 282

Assigning Operators 57

Assigning Rooms 183

Attribute Deletions 98

Attribute Present at POS 216

Attributes 97

Auto Order 169

AutoDial 102

Average Ticket 258

B

Back Bar Charges 307

Back Orders 170
Back-up 288
Backup
 Why it's important 94
Bank Deposits 232, 241
Barcode Labels 176
barcode scanner xxi
Batch File 162
Begin xix
Begin Register 240
Biometric Fingerprint Scanning 327
Birthday 122
Birthday cards 129
Block-Out 79
Blockout Summary 258
Book Next Appointment 245
BookAppts from the Sales Window 246
Booking 179
Booking Comparison 272
Booking Types 55
Business Cards 272
By Client 261
By Operator 262
By Register & Drawer 261
By Transaction # Range 260

C

Cash Receipts 240
Cash Register 210
Cash Register Audit by Cashier 261
Cash Register Float 241
Cash Register Prompt Options 245
Cash Register Settings 82
Cash Transactions 261
Cash Type 229
cashier commissions 307
Categories Listing 264
Category Groups 77
Change Due 246
Chapter 5 - Appointments 317
Check Format 297
Check Layout 297
Check Type 230
Checking In 185
Clear File Busy 239
Clear Operator XRefs 302
Clicking xxi

Client 255
Client Count 132
Client count 120
Client File 280
Client History 104, 244, 267
Client Lists 120, 265
Client on Hold 214
Client Ranking 120, 132
Client Referral 133
Client Referral Detail 120
Client Referrals 122
Client Retention 120
Client Retention Report 132
Client Selection 109
Client Service Formulas 104
Client Type 120, 132
client's history 112
Client's Referral Count 117
Clients 279
Clients by Referral 120
Clients Preferences 89
Clock In 308
Clock Out 309
Close 241
Close Register #, Drawer # 241
Close Wizard 241
Closing the Register 240
Commission Rates 306
Commission Reports 259
Commission Schedules 304
Conditions 139
Configuration Code 30, 40
Configuration Settings 66
Confirm Appointments using Televox 194
Consolidated Closing Report 260
Consolidated Totals 258
Contours 140
Coupon Codes 65
Coupon Reports 262
Coupons 65
Create List 122
Create Lists with Customized Tracking 120
Creation Criteria 121
Credit Card 71
Credit Card name 71
Credit Card Service Sales 258

Credit Card Type 230

D

Daily Activity by Client 262

daily hours 49

Daily Schedule 48

Database Repairs 277

Date Range 265

Date Range transaction reports 261

Day Runner 255

Dayrunner 265

Dayrunner Forms Layout Options 267

Deduction 296

Deduction Descriptions 296

delete a formula 105

Delete a Series 281

delete multiple clients 119

delete notes 106

Delete Transactions 281

Deleting an Employee from Payrol 300

Deleting an Operator 50

Deleting Clients 118

Deleting Commission Tables 305

departmentalize product categories with retail groups 78

departmentalize product categories with service groups 77

Deposits 261

Detail Pay Register 314

Discount 226

Double Book 55

Double-clicking xxi

Duplicate Receipts 238

E

Editing the Package Manager 190

Email support 37

Employee Detail Earnings 314

Employee Earnings report 314

Employee List 314

Employee Name and Address 314

Employee Phone List 314

Employee Year to Date Earnings 302

Employees 298

End of Day Report 258

End-of-Day Report 232

Equipment 60

existing clients 101

Exiting ProSalon 36

Expand Group Limits 280

Expand Service Limits 280
Expanded Service Descriptions 80
Expected Total 240
Export a file 133
Export Name and Address 133
Extension Numbers 100

F

Federal Filing Status 300
Federal Tax Deposits 313
File Busy 239
File Deletions 281
File Export 284
File Import 282
Final Register Total 240
First Visit 122
Formula 227
Formula History 227
Foto-File 136
Friend Referral 101

G

Gender 122
general notes 105
Gift Card 231, 263
Gift Card Sales 263
Gift Cards 247
Gift Certificate Packages 63
Gift Certificate Reports 263
Gift Certificates 62, 221, 230, 279
Gift Certificates Preferences 90
Goals 255
Graphs 255, 270
Group 51
Group Mem 58
Group Sales Breakdown 256
Groups and Services 280

H

History Input 303
Hold 214
Hotel charge 230
hourly work schedule 48
Hours of Operation 69

I

Import 283
import ASCII comma delimited client records xxiv
Importing CLIENT files xxiv

Initialize 31
In-Salon Use 233
In-Salon Use & Expense 264
Installing ProSalon 27
Inventory 164, 165, 279
Inventory Export 284
Inventory Import 283
Inventory Indexes 149
Inventory Preferences 86
Inventory Reports 252, 263
Inventory worksheet for a manufacturer 265
Inventory Worksheet Reports 265

L

LABELS 177
Labels 174
Last Visit 122
List Files 124
List Templates 124
ListFile 123
Logo Name 285
lookup clients by phone number 111
Loyalty 135

M

Mailing Labels 120, 126
Mailing Salutation 100
Main Operator 100
Manual Checks 312
Manual History Input 285
Manufacturers Listing 264
Mark as Package 196
Marketing 120
Marketing Print Options 126
Marketing Reports 132, 254
master password 318
Membership Program 134
Merchandise Exchange 234
Messages xxii
Miscellaneous 256
Miscellaneous Reports 271
Miscellaneous skin care 147
Missed cycle 120
Modem Settings 81
Modified Price Report 262
modify 51
modify a service 52
Modify Client Series Record 281

Modify Group Name 51
Modify Group Service Table 280
Modify Transaction Record 280
Month View 204
Most Common Repairs 278
Mouse xxi
Multi-Client Delete 119
Multiple Service Appointment 186
Multiple Services 187

N

Networking 37
New Client 98
New client 213
No Checks 102
No Sale 239
No Show Report 272
Non Check-In report 272
Non Check-Out report 272
Not in since 122
Notes 105
Number of Drawers 83
Number Range 265

O

On Account 236
On Account type 230
One Time 214
Op Groups 59
Operator Comparison Report 258
Operator Files 45
Operator Names 258
Operator Order 77
Operator Prices and Times Report 259
Operator Sales 261
Operator Sales Reports 258
Operator Sales Summary 258
Operator Service Prices and Times 60
Operator Tips Report 258
Operator/Room 45
Operators ID 50
Other 231
Other Transactions 240
Over/Short 240

P

Package Manager 189
Packages 186, 187

Paid Ins 235
Paid Outs 235, 261
Part Name 75
password protect 327
Passwords 286, 317
Pay Rate Descriptions 293
Pay State Code 300
Payroll 291, 310
Payroll Register report 314
Percent of Earning 295
Percent of SIT 295
Phone Book 266
Phone Listing 120, 131
picture paths 138
PO Info 83
Point of Sale Reports 263
Pointing xxi
Pop-up Messages 116
POS Type 84
Post Cards 120, 129
Preference Settings 84
Price List Reports 264
prices 53
Prices and Times 279
Pricing By Manufacturer 264
Print Group Service Table 280
Print Service Names 280
Printer/Cash Drawer Preferences 88
Printing Client Formulas 116
Prior Closings 244
Process Payroll 312
Processing Sales 211
Product Sales 257
Product Sales by Category. 257
Product Sales by Department 257
Product Sales by Manufacturer 257
Product Sales by Vendor 257
Productivity Reports 259
Products 142
Professional by Category 264
Professional By Manufacturer 264
Professional By Product Number 264
Professional By Vendor 264
Professional Products 217
Program Registration 36
Purchase Order Report 265

Purchase Orders 167, 170
Purchases Greater Than 122

Q

Quantity of Services 257
Quantity On Hand 164
Quarterly Reports 315
Quick Back-up 288
Quick Look-Up 106

R

Recap 262
Receipt Layout 70
Receipts 232
Receiving Order Transaction Reports 265
Receiving Orders 172
Recommendations 146
Redeeming a gift certificate 224
Referral Type 94
Referred By 93, 100, 117
Register 36
Register Options 232
Reimburse Descriptions 296
Rendered Services By 122
Reports 249, 314
Reschedule 197
Restoring 289
Retail By Category 264
Retail By Manufacturer 263
Retail By Product Number 263
Retail By Vendor 263
Retail Gross Margins 257
Retail Sales 232
Retrieve Messages xxiii
Return mailing labels 128
Reversing 227
Rewards 135
Right Clicking xxi
Roll Back 232
Rooms 59

S

Salary Amount 299
Sales breakdown for All Groups 256
Sales breakdown for All Services 256
Sales Breakdown for Selected Operators 256
Sales by Marketing Group 262
Sales Detail w/Client Names 258

Sales Discount Report 258
Sales Items 225
Sales Register Preferences 87
Sales Reports 249, 256
Sales Tax Flag 286
Sales Tax Rates 72
Sales Tax Report 262
Sales Window 209
Salon Sales 257
Salon's or Spa's 51
Sample Data xx, 31
Save to File 122
Screen Colors 67
Selections 121
Selling a Gift Card 247
Selling Retail 215
serial number 30, 40
Series 64, 218, 230
Series Sales Reports 263
Series Status 219
Service Count by Sub Catagory 258
Service Detail w/Client Names 258
Service Formulas 53
Service PriceList 259
Service Prices & Times 53
Service Sales 232, 256
Service Sales reports 257
Service vs. Retail Client Count 257
Services 51
Services vs. Retail by Operator 257
Services With Rooms 59, 60
set a time for a service 55
Set Calculations 299
Settings
 No checks
 Inactive 102
Setup for New Year 298
Show Ignored 122
Show Qualified 122
Shrinkage Report 163
Single PO 265
Skin Care In-Take 138
Sliding Commissions 304
sort 111
Sorts 125
Special Sales 262, 281

Special Sales Detail 262
Special Sales Summary 262
Standard Formulas 53
Standard Hours 291
Standard mailing labels 127
Standard Tax Calculations 300
Standing Appointments by Client 272
Starting ProSalon 29, 39
State Exemptions 300
State Quarterly Reports 315
Status, Active/Inactive 121
Suggestions xix
Suggestions on Implementing Prosolutions 8.0 42
Support xix

T

Tax Calculations 294
Tax Description 294
Tax Table Calculations 295
Tax Tables 293
Tax Type 294
Tax Year 291
Technical Support 36
Template 122
Time 61
Time Cells 181
Time Clock 279, 292, 308
times 53
Tips 217
Today's Transactions 260
Total Deposits 240
Tracking 91
Tracking Items 103
Training xix
Transaction 218, 242
Transaction Detail Reports 259
Transactions 279
Travel Card Audit 272
TravelCard 115
Travellers Checks Type 231
Treatments 141
Twin Book 55, 186

U

Unbook 197
Unbook All This Day 198
Units of Measure 74
Upload 283

Users Manual xxv

Uses Formula 53

Utilities 275

Utility Functions 276

V

Value Added Tax 73, 157

Value Added Tax for Services "VAT" 54

VAT 73

VAT for Inventory 157

VAT Rate for Inventory 158

Vendors Index Listing 264

Vendors Name and Address 264

view a transaction 114

View Directories 276

View Options 242

View,Change 109

View/Modify An Employee 301

Voiding 171, 238, 239

Voiding a Gift Certificate 239

Voiding a Transaction 238

W

Waiting List 107, 108

Week View 205

Weekly Reports 257

Workstation 37

Z

Zip Codes 76, 122

Zip Codes at POS 123